
Virtel Administration Guide

Release 4.99

Syspertec Communications

Oct 19, 2020

TABLE OF CONTENTS:

1	VIRTEL administration modes	3
1.1	Accessing the real time configuration manager	3
1.1.1	Virtel 3270 Application	3
1.1.2	THe Web Portal (3270)	6
1.1.3	The Web Portal (GUI)	7
1.2	Using the batch mode configuration manager	8
1.3	Configurable Elements	10
1.3.1	Line Element	14
1.3.2	Entry Point Element	16
1.3.3	Transaction Element	18
1.3.4	Terminal Elements	20
1.3.5	Adding new configurable elements	24
1.4	Administration	28
1.4.1	Virtel 3270 Application	28
1.4.2	THe Web Portal (3270)	30
1.4.3	The Web Portal (GUI)	31
1.4.4	Configuration Menu	32
1.4.5	Sub-Application Menu	33
1.4.6	Screen Navigation	33
2	Lines	35
2.1	Introduction	35
2.2	Line Management Sub-Applications	35
2.2.1	Security	35
2.2.2	Summary Display	35
2.2.3	Detail Display	37
2.2.4	Parameters	37
2.3	Line Overview Sub-Application	42
2.4	HTTP Inbound line	44
2.4.1	Terminal Definitions	45
2.4.2	VTAM Terminal Definitions	49
2.4.3	CICS Definitions	49
2.5	HTTP Outbound line	51
2.5.1	Parameters	51
2.6	HTTP Inbound or Outbound SMTP line	52
2.6.1	Parameters	52
2.6.2	Terminal Definitions	54
2.6.3	VTAM Terminal Definitions	54
2.6.4	CICS Definitions	55
2.7	IMS Connect Inbound line	56

2.7.1	Parameters	56
2.7.2	Terminals Definitions	57
2.7.3	Entry Point	57
2.7.4	Transactions	58
2.7.5	Scenarios	59
2.7.6	Message format	60
2.8	MQ line	61
2.8.1	Parameters	61
2.8.2	Terminal Parameters	62
2.9	Inbound Batch line	63
2.9.1	Parameters	63
2.9.2	Terminal Definitions	64
2.10	Native TCP/IP Gateway line	65
2.10.1	Parameters	65
2.10.2	Line Terminals	66
2.10.3	Terminal Parameters	66
2.10.4	Relay Pool	67
2.10.5	VTAM terminals definitions	67
2.10.6	CICS Definitions	67
2.10.7	Message format	68
2.11	VIRPASS TCP line (VIRKIX)	69
2.11.1	Parameters	69
2.11.2	Terminal Definitions	70
2.12	VIRPASS TCP line (VIRNT)	71
2.13	VIRPASS XM line (VIRKIX)	72
2.13.1	Parameters	72
2.13.2	Terminal Definitions	73
2.14	X25 XOT line	75
2.15	X25 VIRPESIT line	75
2.16	X25 VIRNEOX line	75
2.17	X25 GATE Non Fast-Connect (NFC) line	75
2.18	X25 GATE Fast-Connect (FastC) line	75
2.19	X25 AntiGATE line	75
2.20	X25 AntiPCNE line	75
3	Virtel Rules	77
3.1	Introduction	77
3.2	Management	77
3.2.1	Summary Display	77
3.2.2	Detail Display	79
3.2.3	Parameters	79
3.3	Samples	82
3.3.1	Rule for a specific IP address	82
3.3.2	Rule for a IP address range	82
3.3.3	Rule for a proxy server	83
3.3.4	Rule for an URL userdata parameter	84
3.3.5	Rejection rule	85
4	Terminals	89
4.1	Introduction	89
4.2	Terminal Management Sub-Application	89
4.2.1	Security	89
4.2.2	Summary Display	90
4.2.3	Navigation	91

4.2.4	Detail Display	91
4.2.5	Parameters	94
4.3	Connection Modes	97
4.3.1	WELCOME mode	97
4.3.2	RELAY mode	98
4.4	Terminal definition types	98
4.4.1	Terminal Fixed entries	99
4.4.2	Physical pool of relay	100
4.4.3	Logical pool of relay	104
4.4.4	Repetition and Pattern Characters	107
4.4.5	Physical pool or logical pool	111
4.4.6	Terminal Pool Selection	111
4.5	VTAM application programs definitions	112
4.6	Terminal troubleshooting	112
5	Controlling LUNAMES	113
5.1	Introduction	113
5.2	LU Nailing By URL parameter	117
5.2.1	LU attribution if no specification in URL	118
5.2.2	LU Nailing using a constant name as UserData	118
5.2.3	LU Nailing using a workstation name as UserData	124
5.2.4	LU Nailing passing an LU Name in the URL	126
5.2.5	ForceLUNAME Example	127
5.3	LU Nailing by cookie	130
5.4	LU Nailing by IP address	131
5.5	Comparison Table	133
6	Transactions	135
6.1	Introduction	135
6.1.1	Summary Display	135
6.1.2	Detail Display	137
6.1.3	Parameters	139
6.1.4	LOGMODE precedence	142
7	Entry Points	143
7.1	Introduction	143
7.1.1	Entry Point Management Sub-Application	143
7.1.2	Security	143
7.1.3	Selecting an Entry Point	143
7.1.4	Summary Display	144
7.1.5	Transaction Display	145
7.1.6	Detail Display	145
7.1.7	Parameters	145
7.1.8	Signon Programs	147
7.1.9	Menu Programs	148
8	Connection / Disconnection Scripts	149
8.1	Script Programming Language	149
8.1.1	Transmission and filter commands	149
8.1.2	System variables	149
8.1.3	Orders	150
8.1.4	Method of operation	151
8.2	Script Examples	152
8.2.1	Connect to CICS (no sign-on) with automatic start of a transaction	152
8.2.2	Connect to CICS and start transaction CESN with transmission of credentials	152

8.2.3	Connect to CICS VSE with ICCF sign-on and start transaction CEMT	153
8.2.4	Connect to TSO with USER and PASSWORD and await start of ISPF	153
8.2.5	Connect to CICS and navigate a user application	153
8.2.6	Service Transaction	154
9	External Servers	155
9.1	Introduction	155
9.1.1	External Server Management Sub-Application	155
9.1.2	Security	155
9.1.3	Summary Display	155
9.1.4	Detail Display	156
9.1.5	Parameters	157
10	AT-TLS Secure Session	161
10.1	Introduction	161
10.2	Installation	161
10.2.1	Install Policy Agent procedure	161
10.2.2	Create the Policy Agent configuration file	161
10.2.3	Allow the Policy Agent to run during TCP/IP initialization	162
10.2.4	Create the server certificate	162
10.2.5	Add the certificate to the keyring	162
10.2.6	Allow VIRTEL to access its own certificate	162
10.2.7	Activate AT-TLS	162
10.3	Operations	163
10.3.1	Starting the Policy Agent	163
10.3.2	Altering the Policy Agent configuration	163
10.3.3	Logon to VIRTEL using secure session	163
10.4	Problem determination	164
10.4.1	Policy Agent log file	164
10.4.2	Common error messages	164
10.4.3	Verifying AT-TLS is active	165
10.5	The Cipher suites	166
10.6	Client certificates	166
10.7	Resources	167
10.7.1	IBM Manuals	167
10.7.2	Virtel Material	167
11	SSO, PassTickets and Proxy Servers	169
11.1	Introduction	169
11.2	Adding headers to the HTTP request	171
11.3	RACF Passtickets	173
11.3.1	Define Pass Ticket RACF profiles	173
11.3.2	RACF Profiles related to Virtel and Pass Tickets	174
11.4	Virtel Requirements	177
11.4.1	Transaction requirements	177
11.4.2	Identification Scenario	178
11.4.3	TCT Considerations	179
11.4.4	Line Rules	180
11.5	Common Errors	183
11.6	Related material	184
12	Running multiple instances of Virtel	185
12.1	Introduction	185
12.1.1	VIRTEL TCT Settings	186
12.1.2	SYSPLEX definitions	186

12.1.3	Workload balancing in a SYSPLEX environment	188
12.1.4	Sharing the ARBO and other VSAM files	189
12.1.5	READ ONLY Restrictions	189
12.1.6	Virtel naming conventions	190
12.1.7	TCT definition	190
12.2	Using a Distributed VIPA to load balance	192
12.2.1	Session Affinity	192
12.3	Using an Apache Proxy to load balance	193
13	VIRPLEX	195
13.1	Setting up a Virplex	196
13.2	TCT definitions	196
13.2.1	TCT for 'READER' tasks.	196
13.2.2	TCT for 'WRITER' task	197
13.3	ARBO definitions	197
14	Protecting business assets with Virtel Rules	209
14.1	Introduction	209
14.2	Virtel Setup	211
14.2.1	Virtel Rules	211
14.2.2	Default Rule Template	212
15	Appendix	215
15.1	Trademarks	215



VIRTEL Administration Guide

Warning: This is a draft version of the document.

Version : 4.99 Draft

Release Date : 12 July 2020. Publication Date : 12/07/2020

Syspertec Communication

196, Bureaux de la Colline 92213 Saint-Cloud Cedex Tél. : +33 (0) 1 46 02 60 42

www.syspertec.com

Note: Reproduction, transfer, distribution, or storage, in any form, of all or any part of the contents of this document, except by prior authorization of SysperTec Communication, is prohibited.

Every possible effort has been made by SysperTec Communication to ensure that this document is complete and relevant. In no case can SysperTec Communication be held responsible for any damages, direct or indirect, caused by errors or omissions in this document.

As SysperTec Communication uses a continuous development methodology; the information contained in this document may be subject to change without notice. Nothing in this document should be construed in any manner as conferring a right to use, in whole or in part, the products or trademarks quoted herein.

“SysperTec Communication” and “VIRTEL” are registered trademarks. Names of other products and companies mentioned in this document may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

**CHAPTER
ONE**

VIRTEL ADMINISTRATION MODES

The VIRTEL configuration is stored in a VSAM file called the “ARBO file” (VIRARBO) which can be administered in real time or in batch mode.

1. Real-time administration allows modifications to be taken into account immediately,
2. Batch mode requires system shutdown / restart.

Batch mode is the easiest method for cloning a configuration. This mode will also be preferred for mass modifications.

1.1 Accessing the real time configuration manager

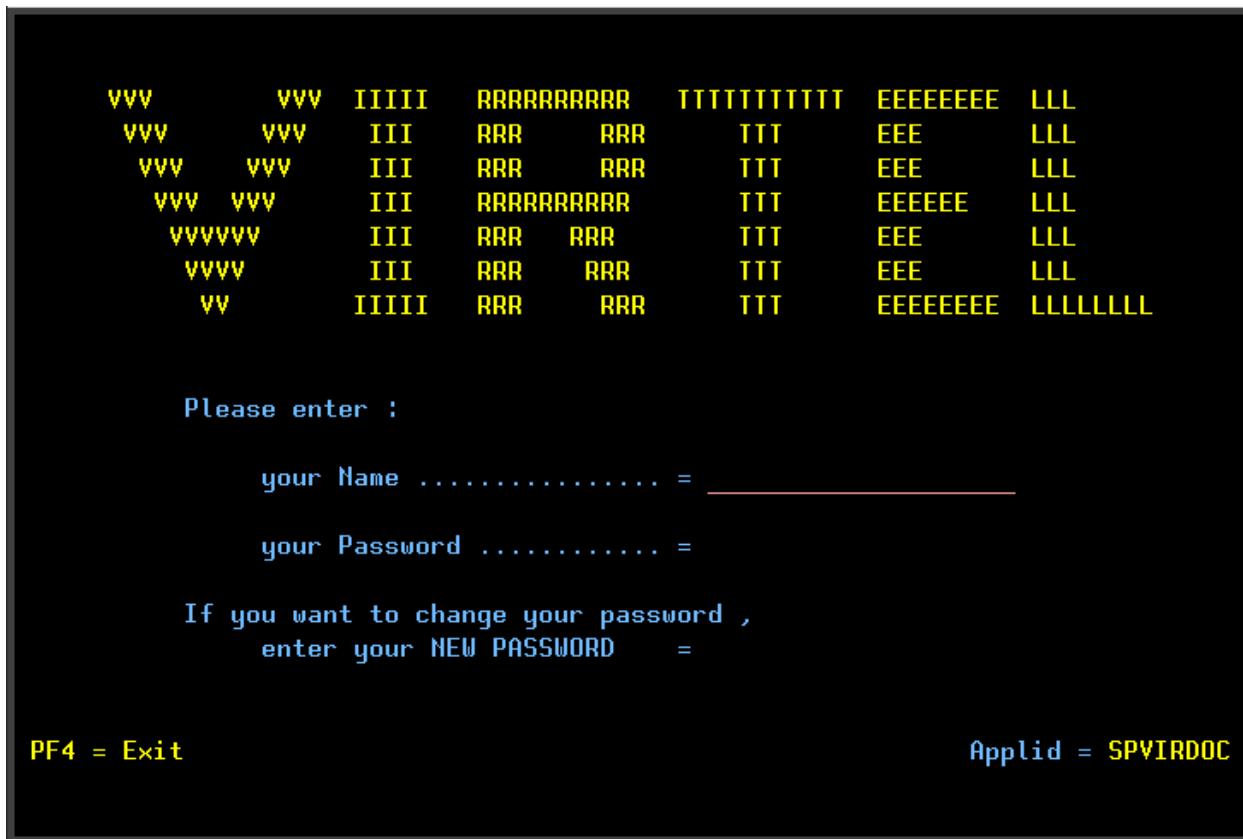
The configuration manager can be accessed in three ways.

1.1.1 Virtel 3270 Application

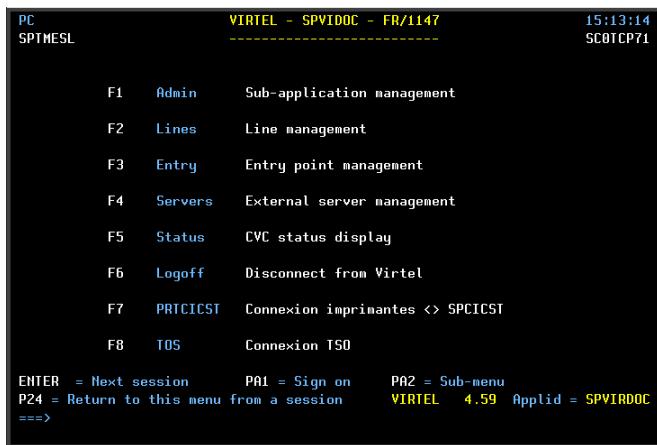
1. By logging into the Virtel application as defined by the APPLNAME in the TCT or at start up in the Virtel JCL parameters.

```
LOGON APPLID=VIRTEL
```

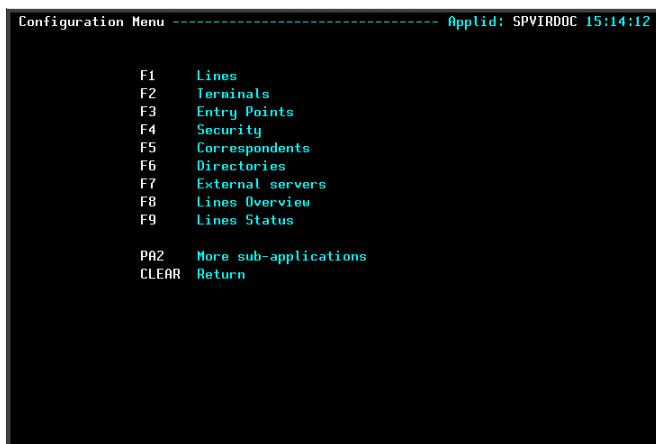
The following main menu will appear:



Enter your security credentials and the primary menu will appear.



Enter F1 to enter the configuration menu of the configuration manager.

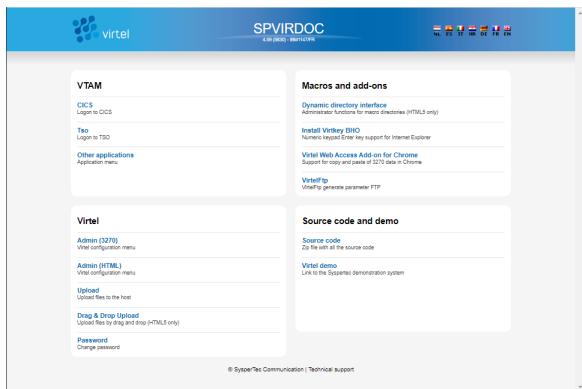


1.1.2 THe Web Portal (3270)

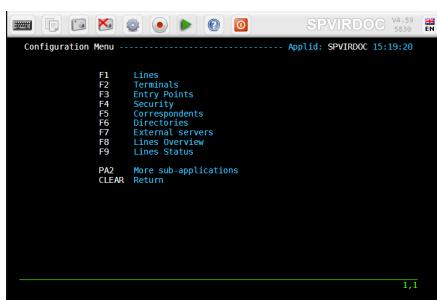
2. Access Virtel through the administration port 41001.

```
http://192.168.170.33:41001/
```

The following page will be displayed:-

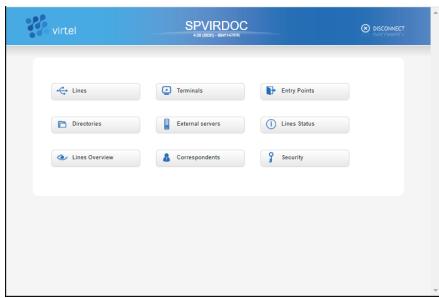


Click the Admin (3270) link and the configuration menu will appear.



1.1.3 The Web Portal (GUI)

3. Access the Virtel administration port (41001) just as for the Web Portal (3270) but instead of clicking Admin (3270) click Admin (GUI). You will be presented with a GUI view of the 3270 configuration screens.



1.2 Using the batch mode configuration manager

The Virtel program VIRCONF can be used to LOAD or UNLOAD the ARBO VSAM file which contains the configurable elements. The default statements that are used to build the initial ARBO VSAM file are contained in the CNTL library member ARBOLOAD. This member contains every statement that can potentially be used when defining the Virtel ARBO VSAM file, including optional statements which may not be applicable to your configuration. To unload the default ARBO VSAM file run the following JCL:-

```
//VIRARBOU JOB 1,ARBOUNLD,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X,NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//-----
//** This jobs unload an ARBO file using the VIRCONF program      *
//-----
//*
//** Note : Replace yourqual.VIRTnnn by by the appropriate values
//*
//-----
//      SET LOAD=yourqual.VIRTnnn.LOADLIB
//      SET ARBO=yourqual.VIRTnnn.ARBO
//-----
//UNLOAD EXEC PGM=VIRCONF,PARM=UNLOAD
//STEPLIB  DD DSN=&LOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRARBO  DD DSN=&ARBO,DISP=SHR,AMP= ('RMODE31=NONE')
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=&SYSUID..VIRCONF.SYSIN,DISP=(,CATLG),
//              UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=??????,SPACE=(TRK,(5,1)),
//              DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=6080)
```

The ARBO UNLOAD Job - See \$ARBUNLD in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES

The UNLOAD command outputs an 80 column text file containing all the definitions in the VIRARBO file, that make up the configurable Virtel elements.

The LOAD command, on the other hand, will accept an 80 column input text file, containing all the definitions to be uploaded into the VIRARBO file:

```
//VIRARBOU JOB 1,ARBOUNLD,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X,NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//-----
//** This jobs load the contant of an input file into ARBO file      *
//** using the VIRCONF program                                         *
//-----
//*
//** Note : Replace yourqual.VIRTnnn by by the appropriate values
//*
//-----
//      SET LOAD=yourqual.VIRTnnn.LOADLIB
//      SET ARBO=yourqual.VIRTnnn.ARBO
//-----
//VIRLOAD1 EXEC PGM=VIRCONF,PARM='LOAD,NOREPL',REGION=2M
//STEPLIB  DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
//VIRARBO  DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&ARBO
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN    DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&SYSUID..VIRCONF.SYSIN
//* OR
//** SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=yourqual.VIRTnnn.VIRCONF.SYSIN(memname)
//
```

The ARBO LOAD Job - See \$ARBLOAD in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES

The VIRCONF utility cannot be run when Virtel is active. In this situation however, you can still UNLOAD the ARBO file by using the following command:

```
/F virtel_acbname,UNLOAD
```

See VIRCONF section for more details on this utility.

1.3 Configurable Elements

The VIRTEL configuration is stored in a VSAM file called the “ARBO file” (VIRARBO). The ARBO file contains various types of elements, which are described in this chapter:

LINES

A line (also sometimes called a link) represents a communication channel between a remote physical device (client or server) and VIRTEL. The parameters for defining a line are used to specify:

- The communication protocol used,
- The set of associated terminals,
- The type of calls supported, (incoming, outgoing or mixed),
- The entry point to which incoming calls should be directed when this mode is supported.

RULES

- A rule is a set of conditions which are applied to incoming calls in order to establish the appropriate entry point for the call. These can be used to filter incoming calls.

TRANSACTION

A transaction represents a communication channel between VIRTEL and one of the following partners:

- A VTAM application, such as, for example, TSO, IMS or CICS,
- A VIRTEL management module such as for example the 3270 general administration menu,
- A VSAM directory containing WEB components (HTML, Javascript, Images ..) or a VIRTEL Scenario,
- A VIRTEL line.

ENTRY POINT

An entry point defines how the call is processed by VIRTEL and brings together all the transactions required for an external partner to access one or several central site applications. The parameters for defining an entry point are used to specify:

- The type of emulation supported,
- The possible mode of identification of “incoming” users,
- The list of available transactions,
- Various environment parameters.

TERMINALS

A terminal is a component that controls the link and integrity of exchanges between a user session located on the LINE side and a TRANSACTION. There are 2 types of terminals:

- The so-called LOCAL terminals used for transactions associated with VIRTEL modules, or to access a directory hosted within a VSAM file.
- The so-called RELAY terminals used for communications between VIRTEL and a VTAM application. Each “relay” is represented by a VTAM definition of type APPL.

DIRECTORIES

»»» TO BE WRITTEN ««<

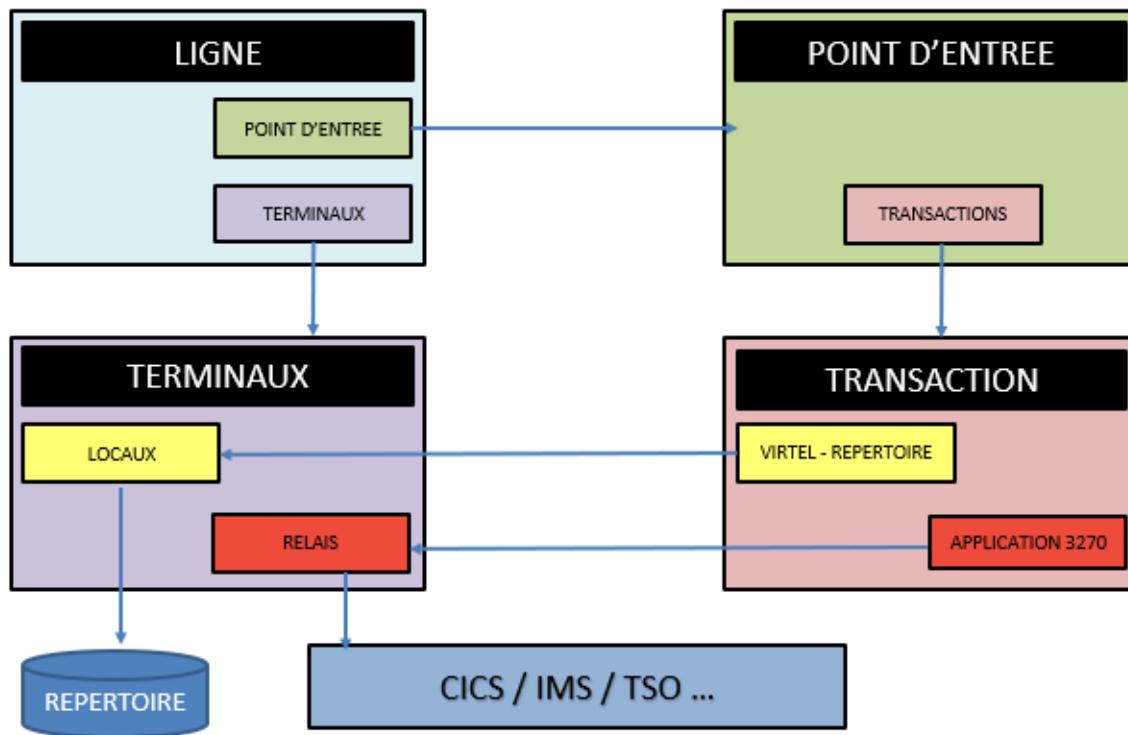
EXTERNAL SERVERS

- External servers, which define the connection parameters used by VIRTEL to connect outgoing calls to other network components.

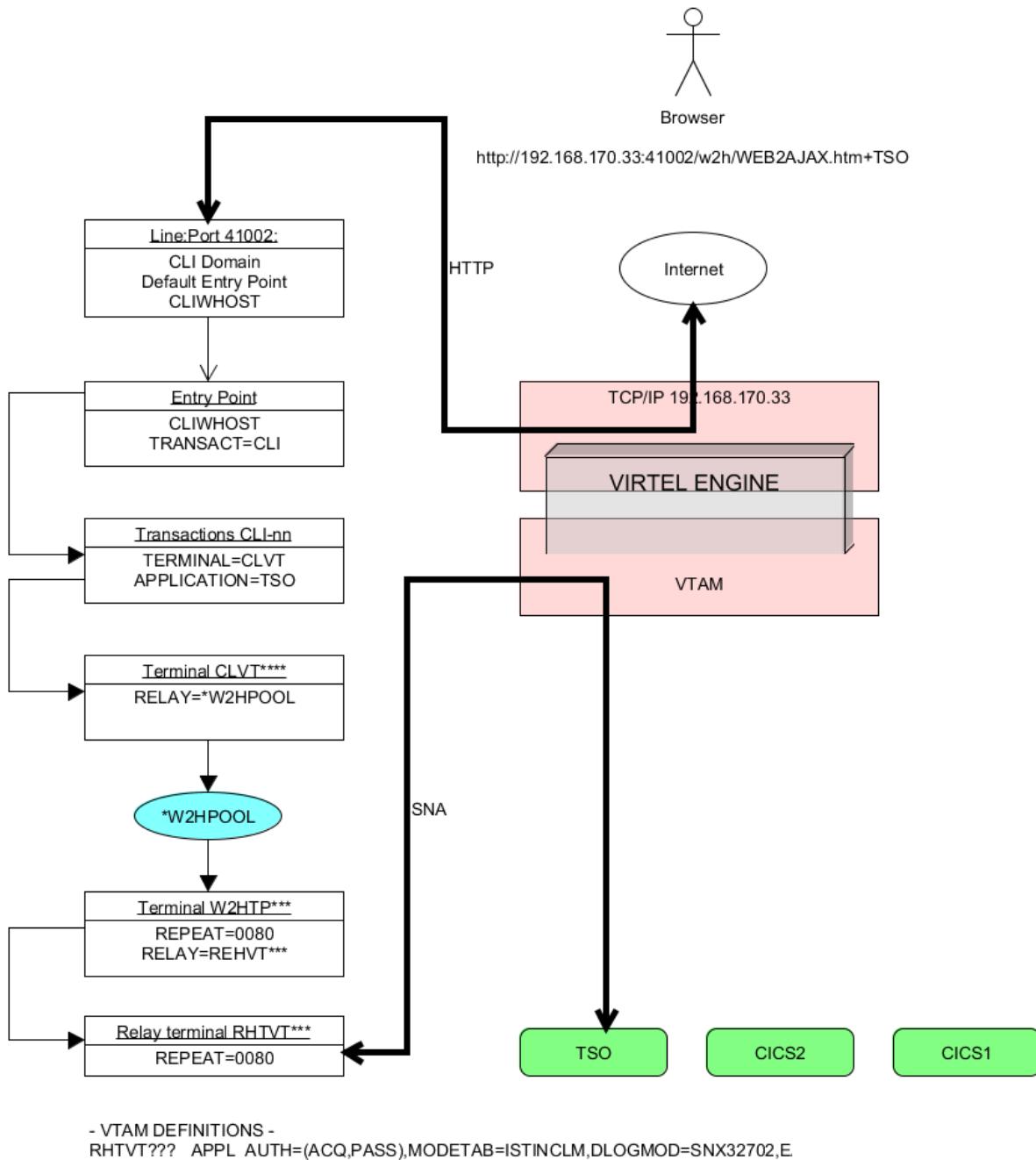
Note: (This part is removed from the current documentation. Please refer to a previous version of the VIRTEL CONNECTIVITY GUIDE for more details on this subject)

Composants d'architecture

Schéma d'ensemble



Configurable elements of Virtel



Configurable elements of Virtel

The diagram above describes the data flow between a TSO user accessing TSO on the mainframe. To support this session, Virtel relies on several configurable elements, that are maintained in the ARBO file. The Virtel **line** definition represents an open port in TCP/IP which is the target of the browser's URL. The Virtel line is associated with a Virtel **entry point** which in turn is associated with a list of Virtel **transactions**. One of these transactions is a VTAM application definition representing TSO. The incoming URL determines which transaction is to be associated with this session call.

In the above example the transaction TSO has been identified in the URL string as an HTTP parameter.

When the Virtel engine processes the incoming call it will establish a SNA session with the TSO VTAM application. From the TSO VTAM application perspective it will be as if a user had connected using a standard LU2 type terminal (3270). Virtel will convert datastreams between 3270 and HTML in support of the underlying session between the browser and TSO. This conversion process will use several Virtel **terminal** definitions; 1 or more to represent the browser and another to represent the VTAM interface with TSO. By convention “LOC” terminals reflect units of work in supporting the browser and “VTA” terminals represent the interface to the VTAM applications. Virtel terminal definitions are associated with a Virtel line.

1.3.1 Line Element

The Line element is the main control element in the definition hierarchy.

When Virtel receives a call in from a user, via their browser, it is targeted towards a particular IP port which is associated with a Line element. The Line element points to the default entry point and also identifies the listening port.

```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 13:07:58

Internal name ===> C-HTTP           1st character is line code
External name ===> HTTP-CLI          External entity name
Remote ident ===>                   Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> :41002             Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> HTTP line (entry point CLIHOST)
Prefix ===> CL                      Prefix for terminals
Pool ===>                          Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===> CLIHOST           Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set ===> C-HTTP              Rules to choose an entry point
Line type ===> TCP1                eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 1        0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program    ===> VIRHTTP   Dialog manager
Security program    ===>          Non standard security
Time out ===> 0000                Action ===> 0     Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window   ===> 0000                Packet ===> 0000  eventual protocol parameters
Pad      ===>                   Tran   ===>      PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries  ===> 0010                Delay   ===>      Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update           P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add           P5=Rules

```

11,21

Line Detail Definition

It is also defined in the batch LINE statements:

```

LINE      ID=C-HTTP,
          NAME=HTTP-CLI,
          LOCADDR=:41002,
          DESC='HTTP line (entry point CLIHOST)',
          TERMINAL=CL,
          ENTRY=CLIHOST,
          RULESET=C-HTTP,
          TYPE=TCP1,
          INOUT=1,
          PROTOCOL=VIRHTTP,
          TIMEOUT=0000,
          ACTION=0,
          WINSZ=0000,
          PKTSZ=0000,
          RETRY=0010

```

The batch statements are used to build the ARBO VSAM file which the Virtel Sub Applications access to display, modify and delete configuration elements.

In the example shown above, the prefix CL means that this line will only use terminals beginning with "CL".

By default, Virtel delivers two HTTP line elements in its default configuration. Line W-HTTP, associated with port 41001 and line C-HTTP, associated with port 41002.

- Line W-HTTP(41001) is usually associated with administration functions and should be secured for administration use only.
- Line C-HTTP(41002) is an example of a line for client applications. It is not advisable to use 41001 as your client port. Use 41002 or set-up another line using 41002 as a template, for example 41003.

Another key item in the line definition is the **TERMINAL prefix**. This prefix is used to associate a line with the terminal definitions. **Each Line must have its own prefix and a same prefix cannot be shared between multiple lines.**

1.3.2 Entry Point Element

The Entry point element is associated with a group of transactions.

Transactions are the interface to external components such as VTAM applications (CICS, TSO, IMS etc.) or external servers. Transactions are also used to define internal Virtel tasks and configuration elements such as directory entries, upload programs, menu programs, signon programs.

```

ENTRY POINT DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 14:54:32

Name      ===> CLIWHOST           Name this ENTRY POINT (LOGON DATA)
Description ===> HTTP entry point (CLIENT application)
Transactions ===> CLI             Prefix for associated transactions
Last page   ===>
Transparency ===>
Time out    ===> 0720      minutes Maximum inactive time
Do if timeout ===> 0
Emulation   ===> HTML            Type of terminal:
HOST4WEB   : program driven
SCENARIO   : script driven
Directory for scenarios ===>
Signon program        ===> VIR0020H Controls user name and password
Menu program          ===> VIR0021A List of transactions
Identification scenario ===> SCENLOGM eg XML identification
Type 3 compression    ===>
Mandatory identification ===>
3270 swap key         ===> eg P24
Extended colors       ===> E      E: extended X: extended + DBCS

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Transactions
Enter=Add

```

3,21

Entry Point Definition

It can also be defined with the batch ENTRY statement:

```

ENTRY ID=CLIWHOST,
DESC='HTTP entry point (CLIENT application)',
TRANSACT=CLI,
TIMEOUT=0720,
ACTION=0,
EMUL=HTML,
SIGNON=VIR0020H,
MENU=VIR0021A,
IDENT=SCENLOGM,
EXTCOLOR=E

```

The salient point in the Entry Point element is the TRANSACT prefix. This associates transactions with a particular Entry point. In the sample above, transactions that begin with CLI will be associated with entry point CLIWHOST, which is the default entry point for line C-HTTP(41002).

An example of using an Entry point is that you might want to associate production users with line 41004 and other users with line 41005. In this example you would define two new lines, set default entry points PRODHOST and USERHOST. In those entry point definitions the prefix for production transactions would PRD and for user transactions USR.

Every line must have a default entry point and Virtel Rule definitions can be used to assign a different Entry point to a call-in request, based upon a range of criteria - incoming IP Address, Work Station Name, Userid etc.

To associate an Entry Point to a Line, either by the default Entry Point field or by using a Rule, you must ensure that **the terminal prefix** used by the transactions attached to the Entry Point **is compatible with the terminal prefix associated with the Line**.

1.3.3 Transaction Element

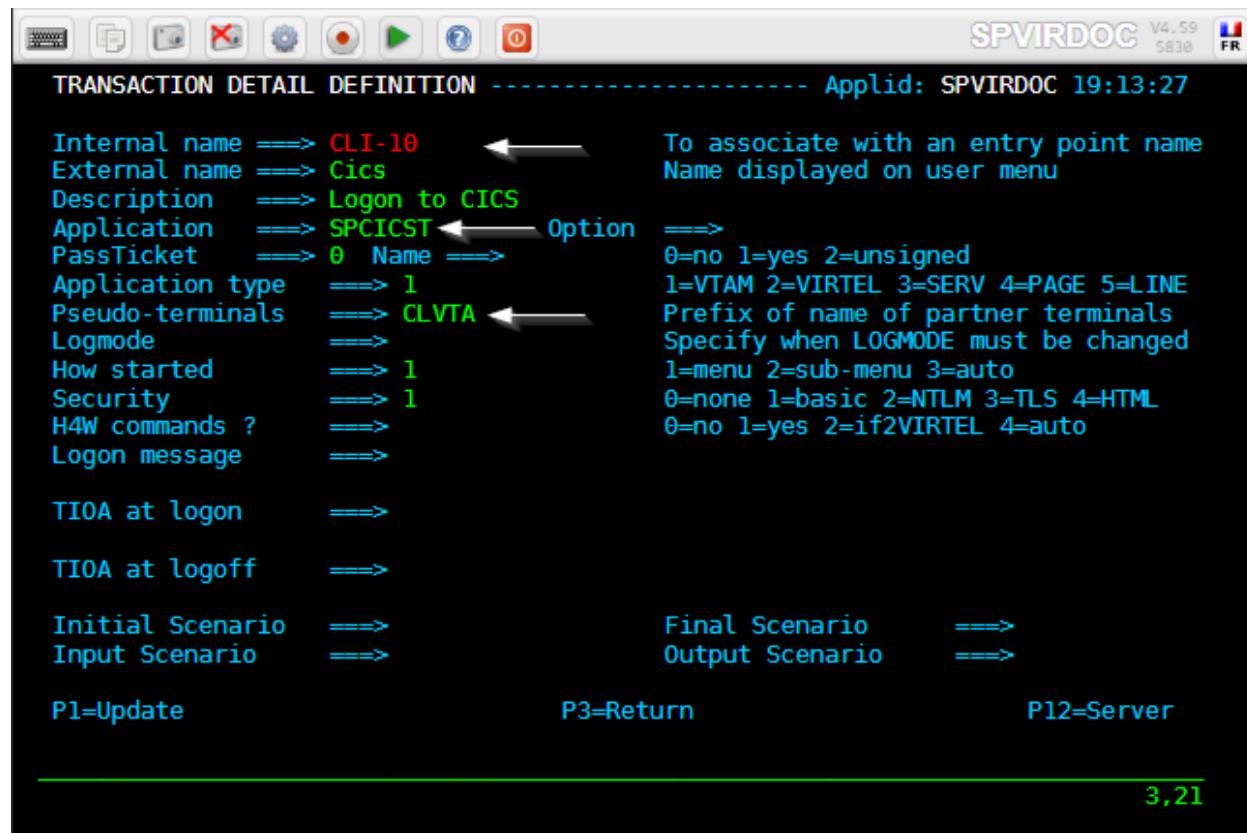
Transactions define either:

- A program that Virtel will run in order to support a session requirement.
- A VSAM directory containing WEB components such as HTML pages, Javascript, Images, or a VIRTEL Scenario

Transactions that refer to programs are normally identified within the incoming URL. For example the following URL requests that Virtel start a Virtel transaction called CICS:

```
http://192.168.170.33:41002/w2h/WEB2AJAX.htm+Cics
```

When the Virtel Engine receives this call-in, it directs to line C-HTTP(41002) and established a session with the user's browser. Session initiation begins with the downloading of various Virtel web elements such as templates, JavaScript and CSS pages. The line will invoke a transaction called CICS which will be associated with the entry point defined for the call-in. This normally would be a transaction associated with the default entry point CLIHOST. However, Virtel Rules may well associate a different entry point depending on call-in criteria. The transaction CICS is an external name, the Virtel Internal name for this transaction is CLI-10. It is the internal name that is related to the transaction prefix defined in the Entry Point.



Transaction Definition

It can also be defined with the TRANSACT statement:

```
TRANSACT ID=CLI-10,
  NAME='Cics',
  DESC='Logon to CICS',
  APPL=SPCICST,
```

```
TYPE=1,  
TERMINAL=CLVTA,  
STARTUP=1,  
SECURITY=1
```

The salient points here are the internal name or ID, CLI-10 which ties up with the Entry Point transaction prefix of transactions beginning with “CLI”. The external name “CICS” relates to the transaction name identified in the call-in URL. The APPL keyword identifies a name that will be used depending on the transaction type. The transaction type for this particular transaction definition is a VTAM transaction, TYPE=1. Virtel will attempt to logon to VTAM application identified by the VTAM APPL name SPCICST. The final point is the terminal prefix which identifies what Virtel terminals should be used to support this connection. In this instance the terminals must be prefixed with the characters “CLVTA”.

You must ensure that **the terminal prefix used by the transactions attached to the Entry Point is compatible with the terminal prefix associated with the Line you will be connecting to.**

1.3.4 Terminal Elements

Terminal elements are used to support units of work within Virtel such as running a program, transmitting data to a browser, representing a VTAM LU to a VTAM APPLICATION. These are just a few examples. Terminal elements are defined to Virtel as either dynamic, static or pool. The following Summary Display lists the terminals delivered in the default installation.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "LIST of TERMINALS" with the application ID "SPVIRDOC 15:31:31". The window contains a table of terminal definitions:

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
CLLOC000	0050			3	3		
CLVTA000	0080		*W2HPOOL	3	3		
DELOC000	0050			3	3		
DEVTA000	0016		*W2HPOOL	3	3		
TKLOC000	0010			3	3		
TKVTA000	0016		*W2HPOOL	3	3		
VPLOC000	0050			3	3		
WZHIM000	0080		RHTIM000	S	1		
WZHIP000	0080		RHTIP000	P	1		
W2HTP000	0080		RHTVT000	3	3	*W2HPOOL RHTIM000	

At the bottom of the screen, there are several function keys and a page number:

- P1=Update
- P2=Delete
- P3=Return
- P6=1st Page
- P7=Page -1
- P8=Page+1
- P12=Details

9,2

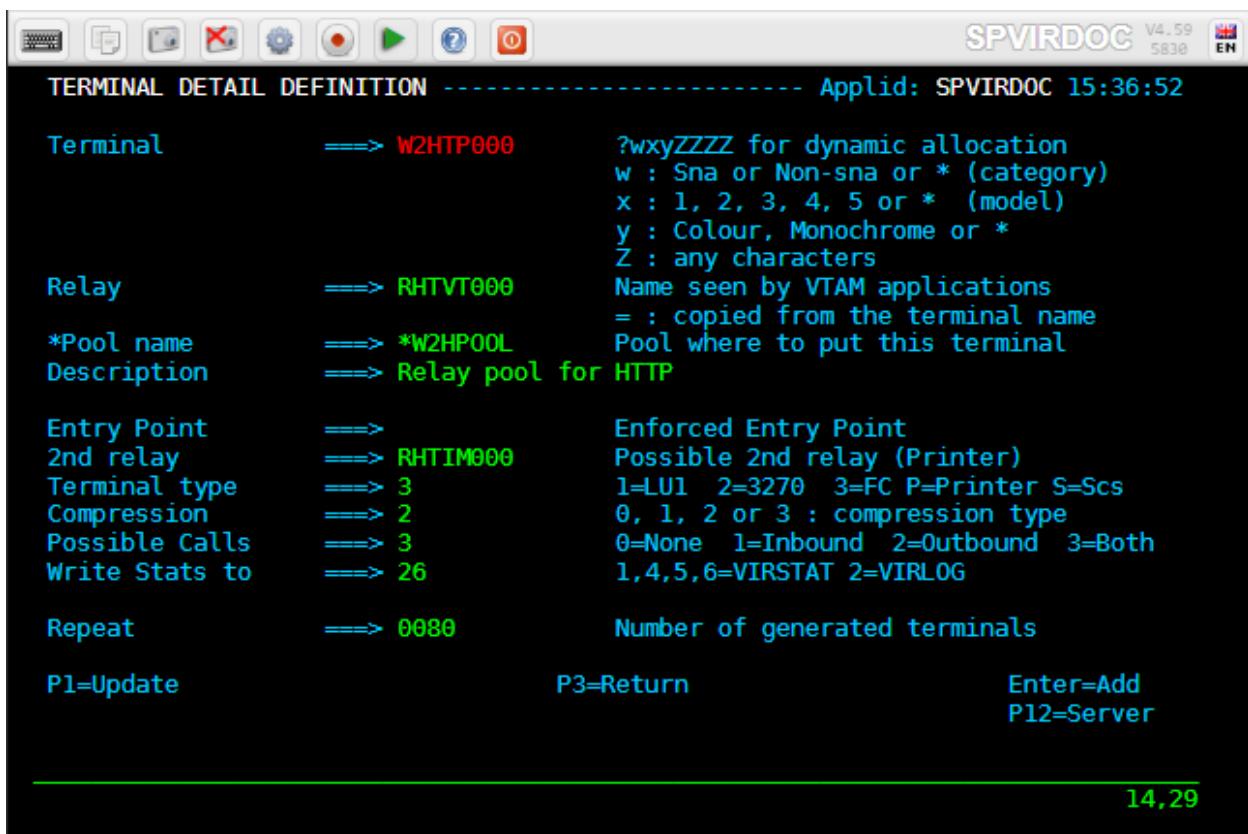
Terminal Definitions

The terminal name is used to associate terminals with lines and transactions.

In the example for the line C-HTTP(41002) we have a terminal prefix of **CL**. So terminals **CLLOC000-CLLOC079** and **CLVTA000-CLVTA079** will be associated with this line.

Our Transaction CLI-10 requires a terminal whose prefix is **CLVTA**. CL terminals are allocated top down, meaning that the terminal allocated to the transaction will be the highest CLVTA079.

The display shows that CLLOC000-CLLOC079 are static terminal entries. CLVTA000-CLVTA079 are dynamic entries and point to a pool called *W2HPOOL. Whenever a terminal is required from a pool the terminal name returned will be the first free terminal within the pool. Defining pool terminals is through the use of the Pool name in the terminal definition. So in the pool *W2HPOOL, terminals whose names begin with W2HTP000-W2HTP079 have been defined. So when the TSO transaction is started, Virtel will request a terminal whose name begins with CLVTA, CLVTA079 will be assigned. This will take the first available terminal in the *W2HPOOL, as that is where CLVTA points to. The first available terminal in the pool will be W2HTP000. Virtel always works from the lowest free name entry upwards when returning pool entries.



Terminal Pool definition

Terminal Definitions are defined with TERMINAL statements:-

```

TERMINAL ID=CLLOC000,           Static Definition      -
  DESC='HTTP terminals (no relay)',      -
  TYPE=3,                                -
  COMPRESS=2,                            -
  INOUT=3,                                -
  STATS=26,                                -
  REPEAT=0050                               -
```



```

TERMINAL ID=CLVTA000,           Dynamic Definition   -
  RELAY=\*W2HPOOL,          <---- Use this pool   -
  DESC='HTTP terminals (with relay)',      -
  TYPE=3,                                -
  COMPRESS=2,                            -
  INOUT=3,                                -
  STATS=26,                                -
  REPEAT=0080                               -
```



```

TERMINAL ID=W2HTTP000,          Pool definition     -
  RELAY=RHTVT000,                    -
  POOL=\*W2HPOOL,          <---- Defines which pool, -
  DESC='Relay pool for HTTP',        -
  RELAY2=RHTIM000,                  -
  TYPE=3,                                -
  COMPRESS=2,                            -
  INOUT=3,                                -
  STATS=26,                                -
```

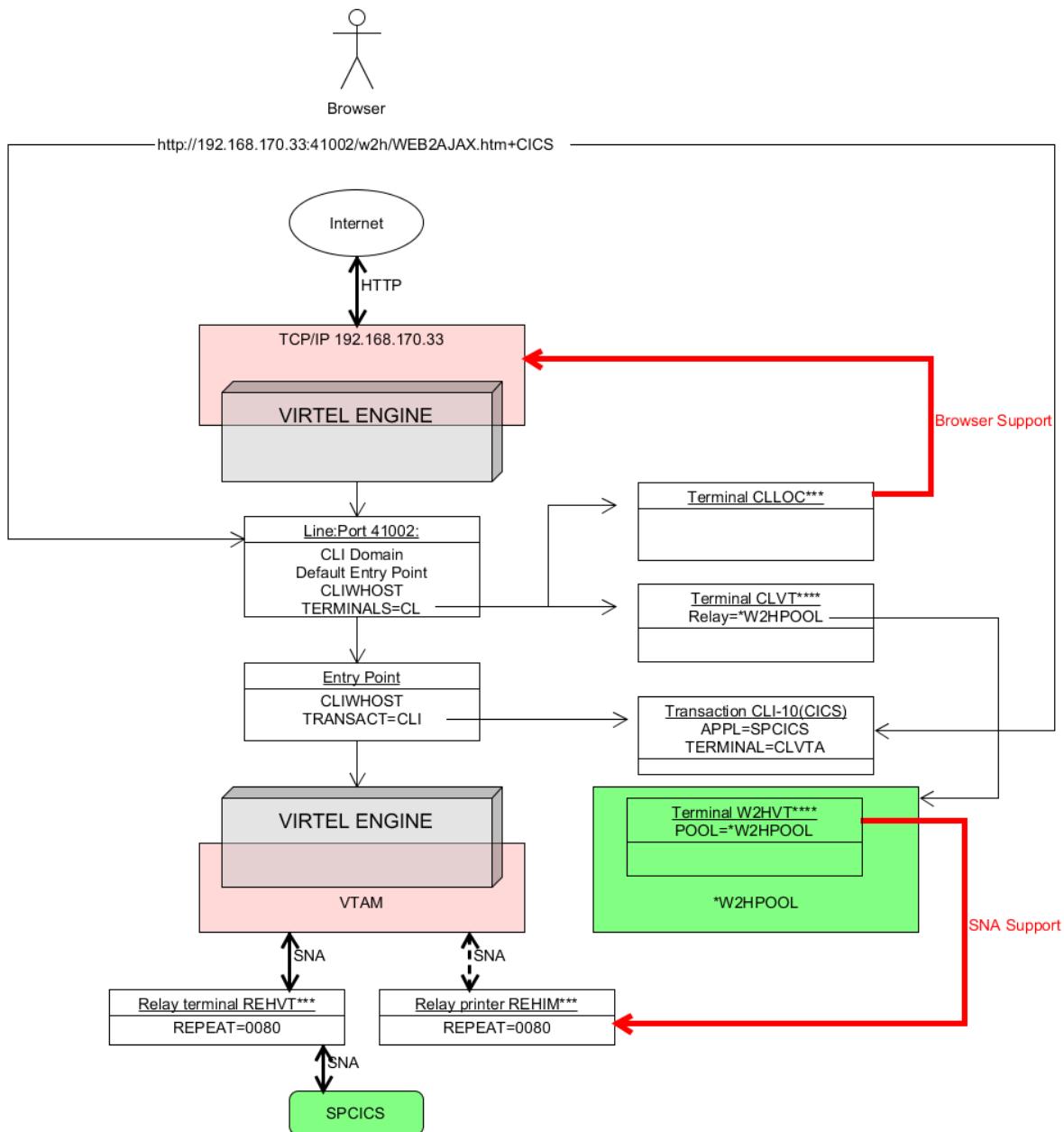
REPEAT=0080

In the case of logging into CICS, the VirTEL transaction will request a CLVTA terminal(CLVTA079) and terminal WH2TP000 will be returned from *W2HPOOL. This terminal has an association with a relay name represented by a VTAM terminal definition - in this case RHTVT000. This relay name should be defined to VTAM. Also, this terminal definition has a 2nd relay called RHTIM000. Again, this is a VTAM APPL definition which represents a SNA printer associated with the screen LU RHTVT000. This name must also be defined to VTAM. RHTIM000 is a relay name associated with the static terminal definitions beginning with W2HIM000. In the logon to CICS we have three terminal names associated with the VTAM interface - CLVTA079, W2HTP000(RHTVT000) and W2HIM000(RHTIM000).

Here are the VTAM definitions:

```
VIRTAPPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* Product      : VIRTEL
* Description  : Main ACB for VIRTEL application
*
VIRTEL APPL EAS=160,AUTH=(ACQ,BLOCK,PASS,SPO),ACBNAME=SPVIRDOC
*
* -----
* RHTVTxxx    : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access
*
RHTVT??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
*
* -----
* RHTIMxxx    : Printer SCS   relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals
* RHTIPxxx    : Printer 3270 relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals
*
RHTIM??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SCS,EAS=1
RHTIP??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=DSILGMOD,EAS=1
```

Example of configurable Elements



1.3.5 Adding new configurable elements

Adding new configurable elements can be online, through the Virtel Portal (Port 41001), or in batch using the VIRCONF util. The following is an example of adding a new interface to Virtel. The interface is line E-HTTP(41003) which uses entry point EDSHOST. Entry point EDSHOST has the following transactions:-

EDS-00 Transaction to support the Entry Point. Must have an external name that is the same as the Entry Point, in this case EDSHOST. This also identifies the default transaction, that is the transaction that will be initiated if none is specified in the URL.

EDS-03W Point to the w2h directory where all the Virtel web artifacts are maintained. In this case the W2H directory.

EDS-03X Point to the directory that is associated with this line. This would contain customized web elements such as a company image or logo. The directory is EDS-DIR which has a pathname of /eds.

EDS-04 Vtam transaction identifying SPCICST

EDS-90 Application menu transaction used as the default transaction and identified in the TIOA string in transaction EDS-00

W2H-80S A transaction that must be added to the **W2H** Entry point to support uploading web artifacts to the EDS-DIR. When adding a new diorectory to Virtel you must also add a new upload transaction to the W2H transaction group. The external name and logmsg of the transaction should identify the directory. For example in this case name = upleds and logmsg = EDS-DIR. If you do not specify this "upload" transaction the new directory will not appear in the administration portal display of in the directory summary display.

Apart from the LINE, Entry Point and Transaction there is one other configurable element which must also be added to support a new interface. This is the SUBDIR element. The SUBDIR element identifies a new directory.

Another key item in the line definition is the **TERMINAL prefix**. This prefix is used to associate a line with the terminal definitions. **Each Line must have its own prefix and a same prefix cannot be shared between multiple lines.**

```

//SPTNEW01 JOB 1,ARBOLOAD,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X,NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//-----*
//*
//** Arbo Migration. Upadate ARBO file to ADD
//**   - A line
//**   - Associated set of terminals
//**   - An entry point
//**   - Associated set of transactions
//*
//** Change      Description          Release  *
//**           Create directory for poc test    V459   *
//*
//-----*
//*
// SET LOAD=yourqual.VIRT459.LOADLIB
// SET ARBO=yourqual.VIRT459.ARBO
//*
//CONFIG EXEC PGM=VIRCONF,PARM='LOAD,NOREPL',REGION=2M
//STEPLIB DD DSN=&LOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRARBO DD DSN=&ARBO,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN     DD *
TERMINAL ID=EHLOC000,
DESC='Pseudo Terminals',
TYPE=3,
COMPRESS=2,
INOUT=3,
REPEAT=0016
TERMINAL ID=EHVTA000,
RELAY=*W2HPOOL,
DESC='HTTP terminals (with relay)',
TYPE=3,
COMPRESS=2,
INOUT=3,
STATS=26,
REPEAT=0016
SUBDIR ID=EDS-DIR,
DESC='EDS directory',
DDNAME=HTMLTRSF,
KEY=EDS-KEY,
NAMELEN=0064,
AUTHUP=X,
AUTHDOWN=X,
AUTHDEL=X
ENTRY ID=EDSHOST,
DESC='HTTP entry point (EDS application)',
TRANSACT=EDS,
TIMEOUT=0720,
ACTION=0,
EMUL=HTML,
SIGNON=VIR0020H,
MENU=VIR0021A,
IDENT=SCENLOGM,
SCENDIR=SCE-DIR,
EXTCOLOR=E
TRANSACT ID=EDS-00,
NAME=EDSHOST,

```

```

DESC='Default Directory',
APPL=EDS-DIR,
TYPE=4,
TERMINAL=EHLOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=0,
TIOASTA='/w2h/appmenu.htm+applist'
TRANSACT ID=EDS-03W,
NAME='w2h',
DESC='W2H toolkit directory (/w2h)',
APPL=W2H-DIR,
TYPE=4,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=EDS-03X,
NAME='eds',
DESC='EDS directory (/eds)',
APPL=EDS-DIR,
TYPE=4,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=EDS-04,
NAME='CICS',
DESC='CICS',
APPL=SPCICST,
TYPE=1,
TERMINAL=EHVTA,
STARTUP=1,
SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=EDS-90,
NAME='applist',
DESC='List of applications for appmenu.htm',
APPL=VIR0021S,
TYPE=2,
TERMINAL=EHLOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=1
TRANSACT ID=W2H-80S,
NAME='upleds',
DESC='Upload macros (EDS-DIR directory)',
APPL=VIR0041C,
TYPE=2,
TERMINAL=DELOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=1,
LOGMSG=EDS-DIR
LINE ID=E-HTTP,
NAME=HTTP-EDS,
LOCADDR=:41003,
DESC='HTTP line (entry point EDSSHOST)',
TERMINAL=EH,
ENTRY=EDSSHOST,
TYPE=TCP1,
INOUT=1,
PROTOCOL=VIRHTTP,
TIMEOUT=0000,
ACTION=0,
WINSZ=0000,

```

```
PKTSZ=0000,  
RETRY=0010
```

Configuration statements to add a new interface

After running the VIRCONF utility check to make sure that the condition code is zero and that all elements have been added.

1.4 Administration

The VIRTEL system administrator uses a set of programs called sub-applications to display and update the various elements in the VIRTEL configuration. The sub-applications are invoked via the Configuration Menu symbolized in the menu below by the application associated with the PF1 function key.

The Configuration Menu, introduced in VIRTEL version 4.27, provides access to the most commonly used sub-applications required for VIRTEL Web Access. It is invoked from the VIRTEL Multi-Session menu via a transaction which calls module VIR0022. The Configuration Menu, gives access to all of the sub-applications, including those rarely used today.

If you log on to VIRTEL in 3270 mode using the default entry point ("PC"), the VIRTEL Multi-Session menu offers the choice F1 – Admin to invoke the Configuration Menu.

The first screen you will see is the Multi-Session menu:

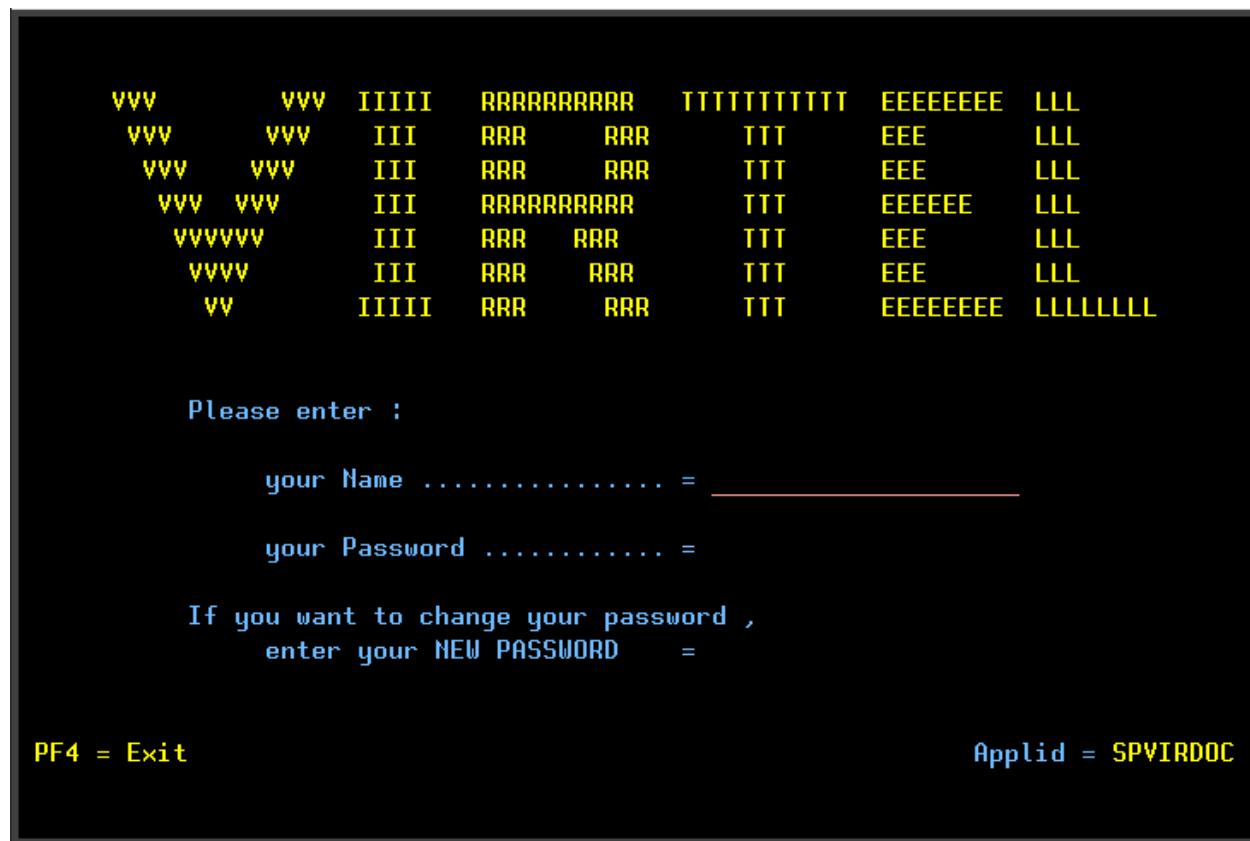
Real time configuration manager can be accessed in one of two ways.

1.4.1 Virtel 3270 Application

1. By logging onto the Virtel application as defined by the APPLNAME in the TCT or at startup in the Virtel JCL parameters.

```
LOGON APPLID=VIRTEL
```

The following main menu will appear:



Enter your security credentials and the primary menu will appear.



Enter F1 to enter the configuration menu of the configuration manager.

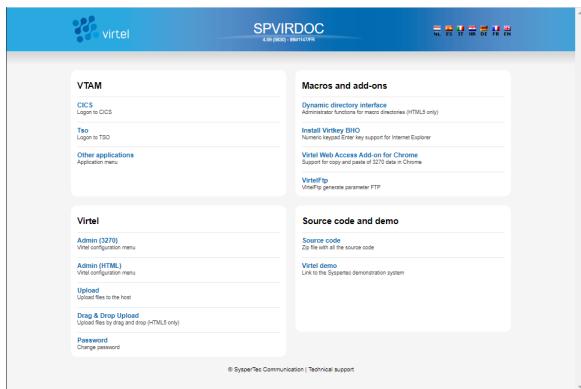


1.4.2 THe Web Portal (3270)

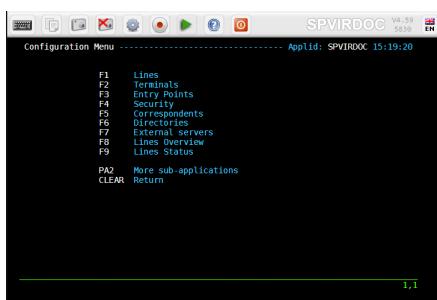
2. Access Virtel through the administration port 41001.

```
http://192.168.170.33:41001/
```

The following page will be displayed:-

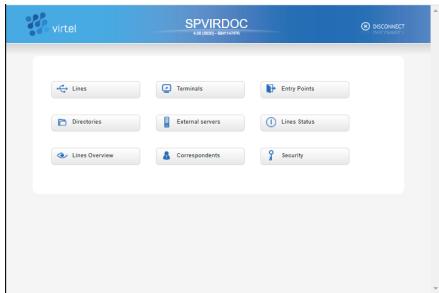


Click the Admin (3270) link and the configuration menu will appear.



1.4.3 The Web Portal (GUI)

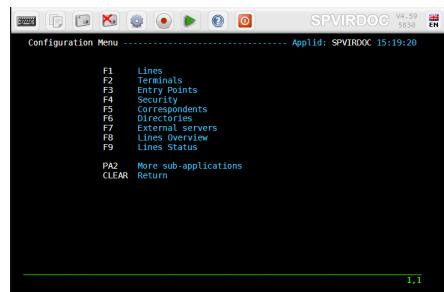
3. Access the Virtel administration port (41001) just as for the Web Portal (3270) but instead of clicking Admin (3270) click Admin (GUI). You will be presented with a GUI view of the 3270 configuration screens.



Only the 3270 screen modes are documented, the GUI mode is not.

1.4.4 Configuration Menu

The configuration Menu presents a list of sub applications which can be invoked to manage various Virtel components such as lines, terminals, entry points etc.



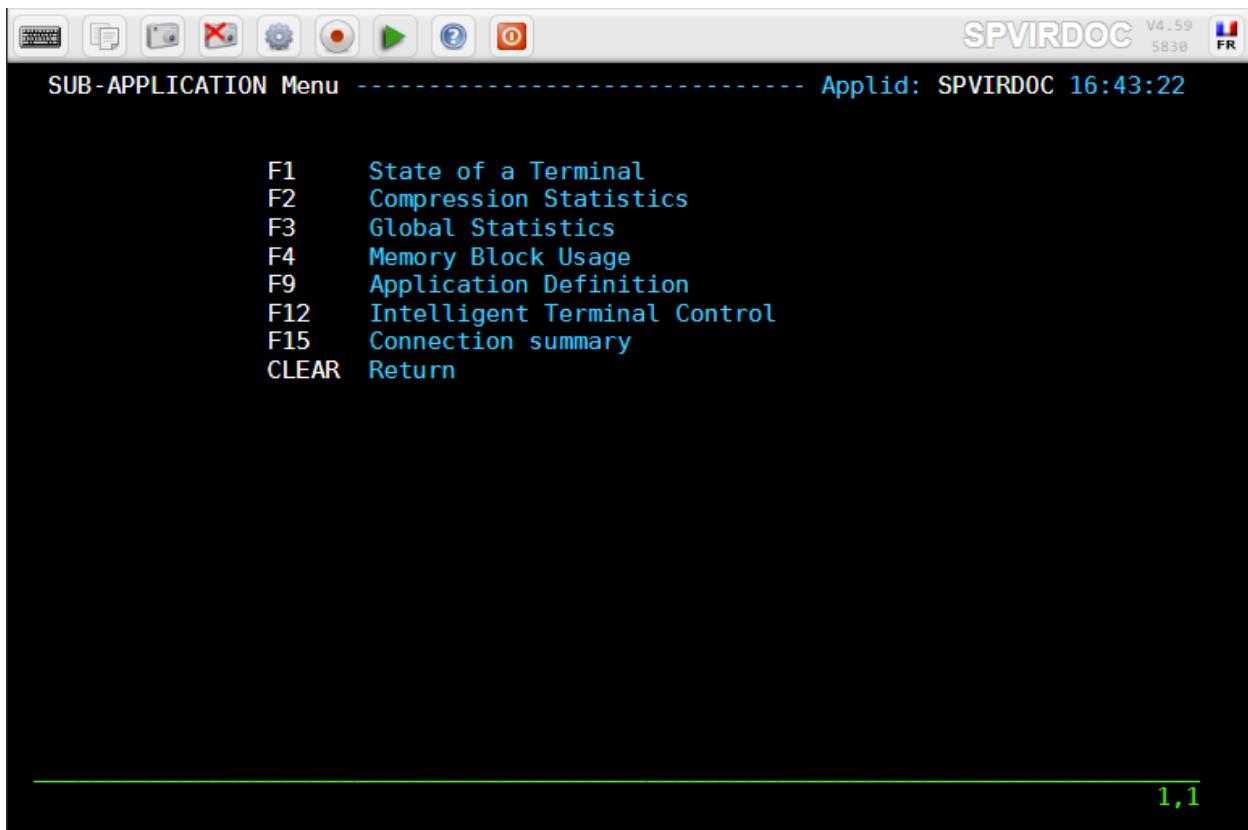
Configuration Menu

To invoke a sub-application, press one of the function keys shown in the menu (for example, F1 – Lines). To exit from the Configuration Menu and return to the Multi-Session menu, press CLEAR.

From within the configuration Menu a further set of sub-applications can be accessed by pressing [PA2]

1.4.5 Sub-Application Menu

This menu presents a menu of additional sub-applications that can be used to manage Virtel.



Sub-Application Menu

To invoke a sub-application from this menu, press one of the function keys shown in the menu (for example, F15 – Connection summary). To exit from the Sub-Application Menu and return to the Configuration Menu, press CLEAR or PA2.

1.4.6 Screen Navigation

The sub-applications have certain common operational characteristics:

- Most of the sub-applications start by displaying a list of the elements currently defined in the configuration file.
- To scroll up or down the list, press [F7] or [F8].
- To find an element in the list, overtype the name of the first element displayed with the first few characters of the element name you are looking for, then press [ENTER].
- To display the detail screen for a particular element, place the cursor on the element name in the list and press [F12].
- To alter the definition of an element, type the desired changes into the appropriate fields in the list and press [F1]. VIRTEL recognizes the changes only when you press [F1]. **If you change a transaction you must also press [F1] on ALL of the entry points that the transaction belongs to.**
- To delete an element, place the cursor on the element name in the list and press [F2]. Then press [F2] again to confirm the deletion.

- To create a new element, place the cursor on a part of the screen outside the list, and press [F12]. A detail screen will be displayed with all fields blank. Fill in the fields and press [ENTER].
- To copy an existing element, first press [F12] to display the detail screen for the existing element, then overtype the element name with the desired name of the new element, and press [ENTER].
- To rename an element, first copy it to a new element as above, then delete the old element.
- To exit a sub-application, return to the previous menu, press [PF3]. To return to the Configuration Menu, press [Clear].

2.1 Introduction

The “Line” is one of the basic elements of the VIRTEL configuration. A line represents a connection between VIRTEL and another network element: an NPSI MCH, an X25 router, an X25 application (GATE, PCNE), a CICS system, a VIRNT server, an MQ-Series queue; alternatively, a line can represent a VIRTEL server (HTTP, SMTP) listening on a TCP/IP port. VIRTEL call routing is performed by sets of interrelated definitions. A call arriving on a line is processed by a set of rules which assign an entry point. The entry point contains a set of transactions which indicate the application or external server which will process the call. An external server refers to one or more lines on which the call may exit from VIRTEL. Each type of entity (lines, terminals, entry points, external servers) is defined by a separate sub-application but it is often useful to have an overall view of all the related definitions.

This chapter describes all the functions associated with the definition of lines using the Line Management sub-application. A detailed example will be presented later in this chapter for each type of line.

Note: Definition of NPSI MCH, X25 router, X25 application (GATE, PCNE), VIRNT server are no longer documented in this documentation. If you need information about one of these types of line, please refer to a previous version of the VIRTEL CONNECTIVITY GUIDE.

2.2 Line Management Sub-Applications

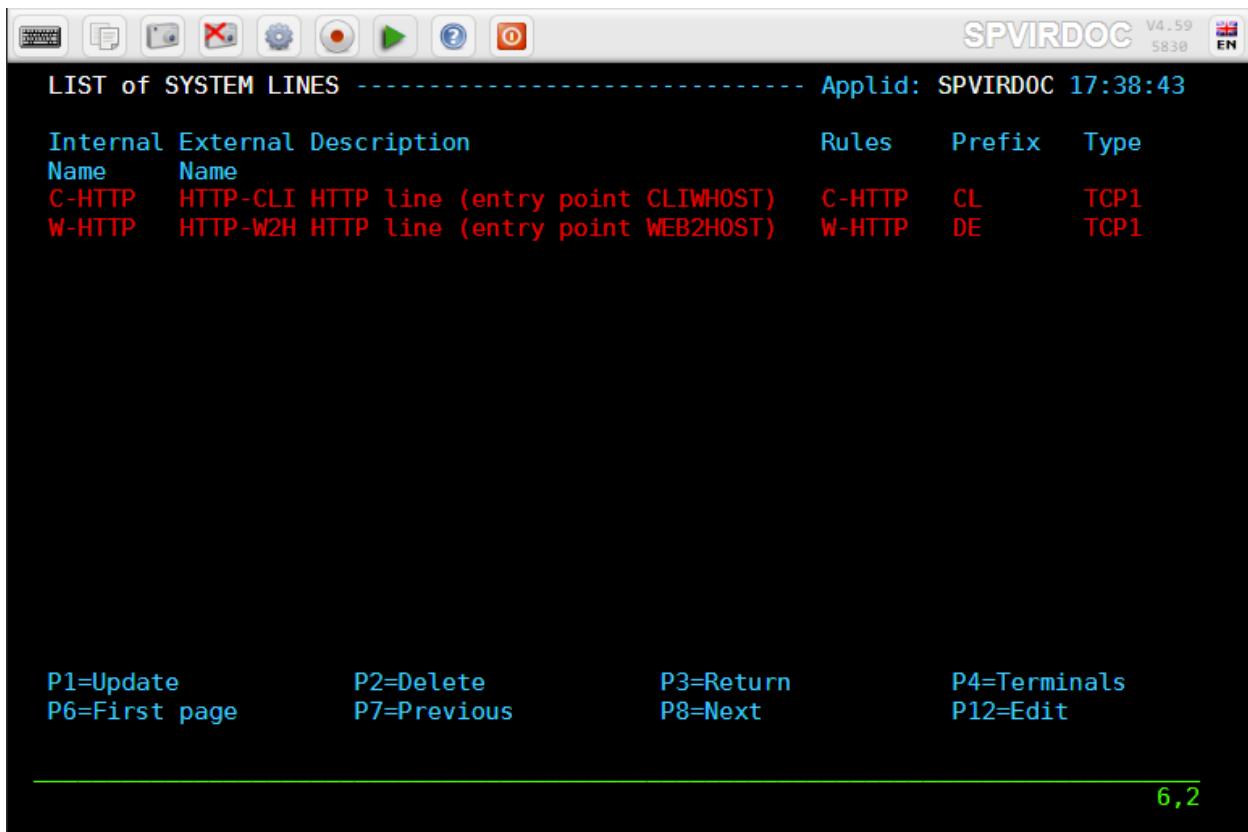
The Line Management sub-application is invoked by pressing [PF1] in the Configuration Menu or via the Multi-Session Menu using a transaction which calls module VIR0046. This sub-application allows the management of all the line parameters under VIRTEL control. When this sub-application is invoked, it first displays a summary of existing definitions in alphanumeric order.

2.2.1 Security

When the security subsystem is active, access to Line Management sub-application from the Configuration Menu or the Sub-Application Menu is controlled by the resource \$\$LINE\$\$. When accessed by a transaction, normal transaction security rules will apply. Security management and securing access to sub-applications is described in the VIRTEL Installation Guide.

2.2.2 Summary Display

The first screen shows a summary of existing line definitions in alphanumeric order:

*Line Summary Display*

Navigation

Search Type the name (or partial name) of the required entity on the first line under the heading “Internal Name”, then press [Enter].

[PF2] Delete Line under cursor position.

[PF3] Return to Configuration menu.

[PF4] List terminals associated with line.

[PF6] Return to the first page of the list.

[PF7] Display the previous page.

[PF8] Display the next page.

[PF12] Enter Line detail Screen for line under cursor position.

Modifying a line - In the summary screen position the cursor under the name of the entity to be modified. Press [PF12]. The line detail definition screen is displayed. Type the desired modifications into the appropriate fields then press [PF1]. Multiple definitions can be modified at the same time. Modifications are not recognized until you press the [PF1] key. Certain modifications require a restart of the VIRTEL system.

Deleting a line - In the summary screen position the cursor under the name of the entity to be deleted, then press [PF2]. The line associated with the entity to be deleted then appears highlighted, accompanied by the message CONFIRM DELETE. Then press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each entity to be deleted.

Adding a line - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition from a blank screen.

2.2.3 Detail Display

The Line detail display is accessed from the Line summary screen via PF12(EDIT) on a selected line identified by the cursor position. The screen shows a line detail display.

```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 11:07:14

Internal name ===> W-HTTP           1st character is line code
External name ===> HTTP-W2H        External entity name
Remote ident ===>                 Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> :41001            Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> HTTP line (entry point WEB2HOST)
Prefix ===> DE                  Prefix for terminals
Pool ===>                      Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===> WEB2HOST       Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set ===> W-HTTP            Rules to choose an entry point
Line type ===> TCP1              eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 1      0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & 0
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program   ===> VIRHTTP Dialog manager
Security program   ===>          Non standard security
Time out    ===> 0000     Action  ===> 0  Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window      ===> 0000     Packet  ===> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad         ===>          Tran    ===> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries     ===> 0010     Delay   ===> Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add          P5=Rules

```

3,21

Line Detail Display

Navigation

- [PF1] Update fields.
- [PF3] Return to Line Summary Display.
- [PF4] Display associated terminals.
- [PF5] Display associated rules.
- [ENTER] Add new line or update fields of current line.

2.2.4 Parameters

Internal name Internal name of the line. This is the name by which VIRTEL refers to the line internally. It must be unique within a VIRTEL instance.

External name External name of the line. This name appears in certain console messages. It can be used, for example, to display the real name of the line or link.

Remote ident This field contains the name or address of the remote partner. Usage depends on the line type and protocol. The contents of this field are described for each line type in the detailed examples which follow.

Local ident This field contains the name or address used by VIRTEL. Usage depends on the line type and protocol. The contents of this field are described for each line type in the detailed examples which follow.

For an IP connection, this field represents the listening port opened by VIRTEL. The port can be specified in any of the following forms:

: pppp VIRTEL opens port pppp on the default home IP address of the host TCP/IP or on the value passed in a parameter list in the started task JCL. For example, :2048

nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn: pppp VIRTEL opens port pppp on the indicated IP address. nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn must be a valid HOME address defined in the host TCP/IP. For example, 192.168.0.100:2048

0:pppp VIRTEL opens port pppp without associating itself with a particular IP address. VIRTEL can receive calls on any HOME address defined in the host TCP/IP. For example, 0:2048 (or 0.0.0.0:2048)

Note: The combination of IP address and port number must be unique. No two VIRTEL can contain a TCP/IP line with the same IP address and port number, except that:

- multiple VIRTELs can use a single distributed VIPA address, provided that the address is defined with a non-zero value for the TIMEDAFFINITY parameter.

Note that the use of port numbers less than 1024 may require authorization in the profile of the TCP/IP stack (see for example the RESTRICTLOWPORTS, PORT, and PORTRANGE parameters of the z/OS Communications Server). In general, port numbers 1024 and above do not require authorization.

Description Free-form description with no particular significance or syntax requirement, except for SMTP lines (see the detailed example of an SMTP line which follows).

Prefix Terminal prefix associated with the line. As a general rule, the terminal prefix is a required field. It allows VIRTEL to associate a series of terminals to a line. The particular details of this field are described for each line type in the detailed examples which follow.

Pool The name of a logical pool of terminals associated with the line. This pool is used for HTTP connections without predefined terminals (see “*HTTP connections with non-predefined LU names*”),. In all other cases this field can be left blank.

Entry Point Defines the default entry point used by the line. This is a required field for HTTP and SMTP lines. It is optional in all other cases.

Rule Set The name of the rule set used by this line. The same rule set can be used by more than one line. If this field is blank, no rules are used. Rules are described in detail in section .

For compatibility with VIRTEL versions prior to 4.26, the rule set name is usually the same as the internal name of the line.

Line type Defines the category to which the line belongs. VIRTEL supports the following categories of lines:

X25 lines No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

Reverse-X25 lines No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

APPc lines No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

TCP/IP lines Represented by the values TCP1 or TCP2.

Support for this type of line is governed by the presence of the parameter TCP1 or TCP2 in the VIRTCT. Used for HTTP, SMTP, ICONNECT, XOT, NATIVE, VIRPESIT, VIRNEOX, or VIRPASS TCP lines.

Cross-memory lines Represented by the values XM1 or XM2

Support for this type of line is governed by the presence of the parameter XM1 or XM2 in the VIRTCT. Used for VIRPASS XM lines.

MQSeries lines Represented by the values MQ1 or MQ2

Support for this type of line is governed by the presence of the parameter MQ1 or MQ2 in the VIRTCT.

Batch lines Represented by the values BATCH1 or BATCH2

Support for this type of line is governed by the presence of the parameter BATCH1 or BATCH2 in the VIRTCT.

Possible calls Determines which calls can be made on this line. Since the line management interface is common to all types of lines, all values between 0 and 3 are accepted.

In addition to being used to authorize incoming (1), outgoing (2), or both (3) incoming and outgoing calls, this parameter also has an effect during VIRTEL startup.

Note: Any line which has “Possible calls” set to 0 will not be activated at VIRTEL startup.

Also note the “Possible calls” field in the definition of the associated terminals.

Startup prerequisite Allows conditional startup of the line.

If this field is blank, VIRTEL starts the line automatically at system startup.

WAIT-LINE(n-xxxxxx) Waits for line n-xxxxxx to start. The name specified can be either the internal or external name of the other line.

WAIT-MINUTES(nn) Waits nn minutes after system startup before starting this line.

WAIT-COMMAND Waits for a console command LINE=linename,START (see “List of commands” in the VIRTEL Audit And Performance Guide)

WAIT-PARTNER Waits until VIRTEL receives an SNA BIND command from its partner LU.

MIMIC-LINE(n-xxxxxx) specifies that this line starts and stops in synchronisation with line n-xxxxxx. The name specified can be either the internal or external name of the other line.

Protocol program Indicates the protocol used for a TCP, XM, or MQ type line. The following values are valid for a TCP line:

HTTP or VIRHTTP For an HTTP line

NATIVE2(P) or NATIVE4(P) For a line in native TCP/IP mode

SMTP or VIRSMTP For an SMTP line

ICONNECT For a RESUME TPIPE connection with IMS Connect

VIRPASS For a VIRPASS TCP connection with an VIRNT or VIRKIX system

VIRPESIT For a TCP connection with a file transfer program such as CFT/IP. No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

VIRNEOX For a TCP connection with a remote program using the VIRNEOX protocol. No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

XOT or VIRXOT For an XOT line. No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

The following values are valid for an XM line:

VIRPASS For a VIRPASS XM connection with a VIRKIX system running on the same MVS

The following values are valid for an MQ line:

RAW For communication via an MQSeries message queue

PREFIXED or PREFIX12 For communication via an MQSeries message queue. This is similar to the RAW protocol except that VIRTEL adds 12 bytes of additional context information for the application program.

PREFIX20 For communication via an MQSeries message queue. This is similar to the RAW protocol except that VIRTEL adds 20 bytes of additional context information for the application program.

Security program Reserved for future use.

Time out Inactivity time in seconds after which the action specified in the following field will be taken. The value 0 inhibits the time out.

Action if T/O Action taken if a time out occurs. 0 = no action

1 = keepalive

KEEPALIVE is a message sent by the TCP/IP stack, during periods of inactivity, to check whether the connection has been broken. The value 1 is thus only valid for lines of type TCP. After a certain number of KEEPALIVE messages have been sent without being acknowledged by the partner (the number is determined by the TCP/IP stack), the session will be considered unusable and the connection will be terminated.

OS/390 and z/OS KEEPALIVE must also be activated in the PROFILE of the TCP/IP stack (refer to parameters KEEPALIVEOPTIONS or TCPCONFIG INTERVAL). For z/OS V1R7 and later, the time out value specified in the preceding field determines the interval between KEEPALIVE messages. If the time out value is zero then the default TCPCONFIG INTERVAL will be used. For OS/390 and z/OS prior to V1R7, the TCP/IP stack uses a single KEEPALIVE interval which applies to all sessions, and the time out value specified in the preceding field is ignored.

TCP/IP for VSE KEEPALIVE is managed globally by the TCP/IP command SET PULSE_TIME, and the parameters “Time Out” and “Action=1” are ignored.

Window Window size at the packet level. This parameter is meaningful only for X25 (GATE or FASTC) and XOT lines.

No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

Packet Packet size. Usually 128. This parameter is meaningful only for X25 and XOT lines.

No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

Pad This parameter is meaningful only for X25 GATE non Fast-Connect lines and AntiGATE lines.

No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

Tran This parameter is meaningful only for Reverse-X25 AntiPCNE lines.

No longer documented. Please refer to “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide.pdf” if necessary.

Retries Number of attempts to reacquire auto-activated terminals during VIRTEL startup. The delay between attempts is specified by the “Delay” parameter.

Delay Interval in seconds between attempts to reacquire terminals. The default delay is 2 seconds.

2.3 Line Overview Sub-Application

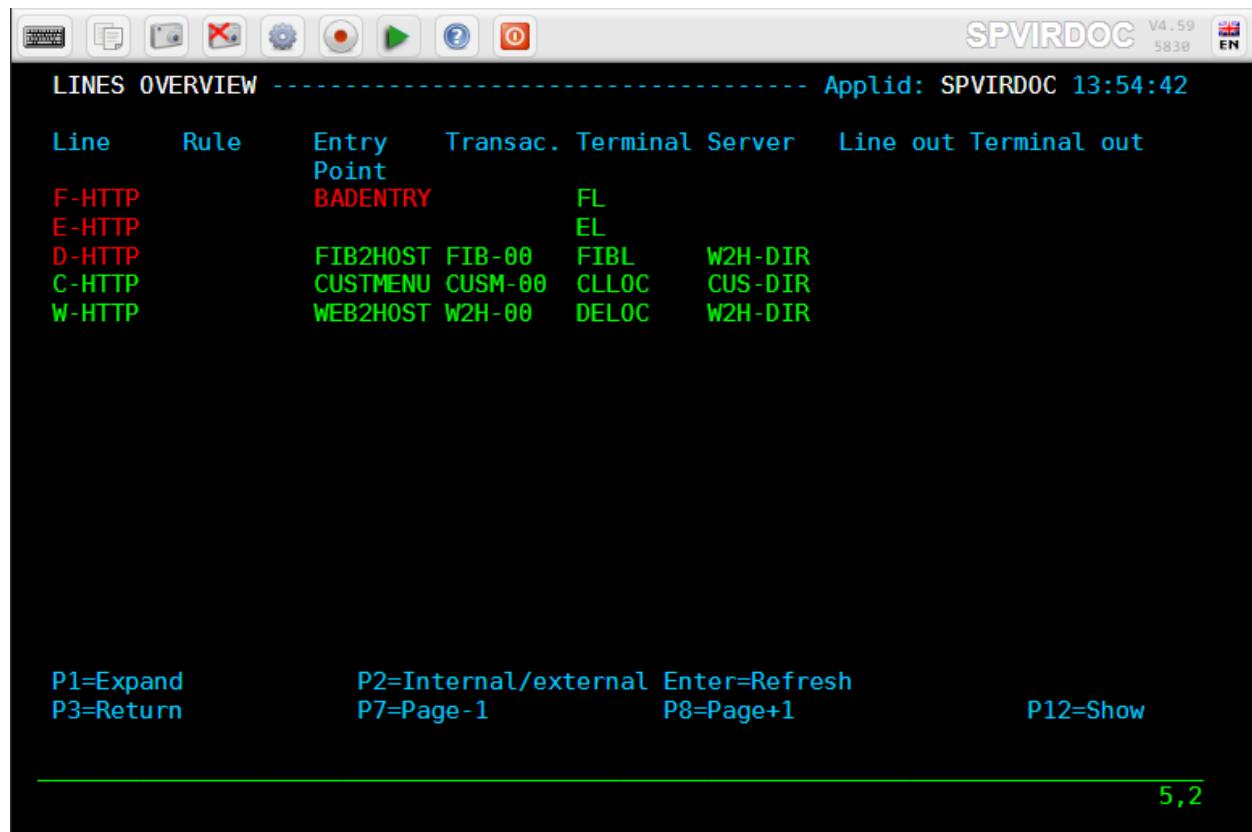
The Lines Overview sub-application is invoked:

- by pressing [PF8] at the Configuration Menu or
- by pressing [PF15] at the Sub-Application Menu or
- via the Multi-Session using a transaction which calls module VIR0049.

This sub-application presents an overall view of lines definition defined in the ARBO file and allows the administrator to zoom in on individual definitions to display and optionally modify the detailed definition.

Started lines and existing definitions are displayed in Green while missing definitions or not started lines are highlighted in Red. For example, in the following screenshot, we see that the C-HTTP and W-HTTP lines are well started while D-HTTP, E-HTTP and F-HTTP lines are not. That the definition of the “BADENTRY” entry point is missing from the configuration file and that the E-HTTP line does not have any default entry point.

This sub-application allows the administrator to display and optionally modify the various entities associated with each line defined in the VIRTEL configuration.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "LINES OVERVIEW". The top bar includes standard icons and the application name "SPVIRDOC V4.59 5830 EN". The main area displays a table of line definitions:

Line	Rule	Entry Point	Transac.	Terminal Server	Line out	Terminal out
F-HTTP		BADENTRY		FL		
E-HTTP				EL		
D-HTTP		FIB2HOST	FIB-00	FIBL	W2H-DIR	
C-HTTP		CUSTMENU	CUSM-00	CLLOC	CUS-DIR	
W-HTTP		WEB2HOST	W2H-00	DELOC	W2H-DIR	

At the bottom, function keys are mapped: P1=Expand, P3=Return, P2=Internal/external, P7=Page-1, Enter=Refresh, P8=Page+1, P12>Show, and a page number 5,2.

Lines overview summary display

[PF1] Provide the list of all terminals attached to the line if started, has no effect if the line is not started.

[PF2] Switch in the Line column between the Internal name and the External name of the line.

[PF3] Return to Configuration menu.

[PF7] Display the previous page.

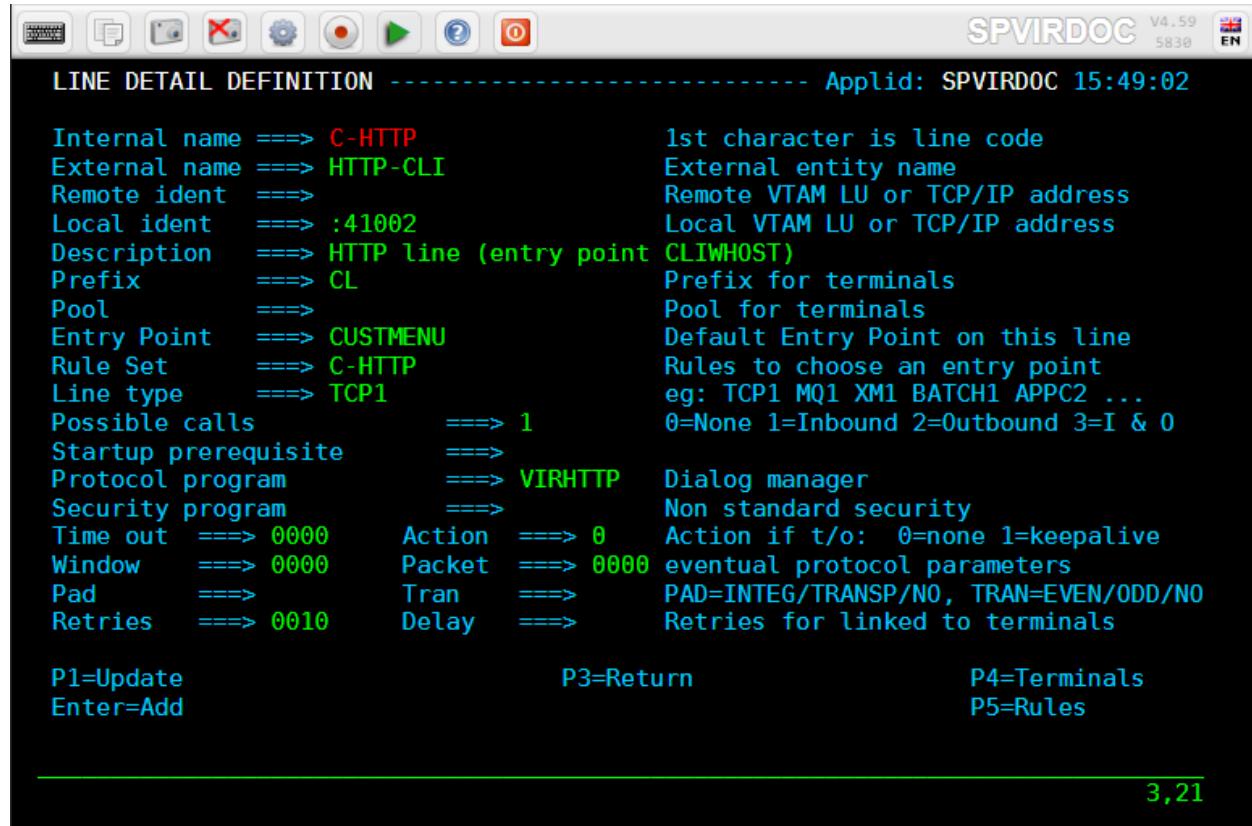
[PF8] Display the next page.

[PF12] Enter Line detail Screen for line under cursor position.

[ENTER] Refresh the display.

2.4 HTTP Inbound line

When an HTTP line is started, VIRTEL becomes an HTTP server, authorising connections from a web browser to applications at the host site. Activation of this type of line is subject to the presence of the TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT, as well as to a definition providing linkage to a file containing the HTML pages.



The screenshot shows the SPVIRDOC application interface with the title 'LINE DETAIL DEFINITION'. The application bar includes icons for file operations and help, and the status bar shows 'SPVIRDOC V4.59 5830 EN'. The main window displays the configuration details for an HTTP line:

```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:49:02

Internal name ===> C-HTTP           1st character is line code
External name ===> HTTP-CLI          External entity name
Remote ident ===>                   Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> :41002             Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> HTTP line (entry point CLIHOST)
Prefix ===> CL                      Prefix for terminals
Pool ===>                         Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===> CUSTMENU          Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set ===> C-HTTP               Rules to choose an entry point
Line type ===> TCP1                 eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls ===> 1              0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program ===> VIRHTTP    Dialog manager
Security program ===>             Non standard security
Time out ===> 0000     Action ===> 0  Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window ===> 0000      Packet ===> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad ===>                  Tran ===> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries ===> 0010     Delay ===>   Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update
Enter=Add
P3=Return
P4=Terminals
P5=Rules

```

3,21

Definition of an HTTP line

Internal name Internal name of the line. This is the name by which VIRTEL refers to the line internally. **It must be unique within a VIRTEL instance.**

External name External name of the line. This name appears in certain console messages. It can be used, for example, to display the real name of the line or link. **It must be unique within a VIRTEL instance.**

Remote ident Always blank.

Local ident This is the VIRTEL IP address and port number which browser users must specify in order to connect to VIRTEL. If the port number is omitted then the default is port 80. See the description of the “Local ident” field under the heading “*Line Parameters*”, for more details about how to code this field.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point When defining an HTTP line, it is obligatory to define a default entry point. This entry point will be used for all incoming calls which do not match any of the rules of the line. The entry point contains a list of transactions, and these transactions determine which directories are used to retrieve the HTML pages, and which 3270 applications are accessible to the user.

Note: According to the type of application accessed, each transaction must refer to one of the two

terminal sub-groups associated with the HTTP line (see "HTTP terminals" below).

For type 1 transactions (Application) The prefix will be that of the terminal sub-group with an associated relay.

For type 2 (Virtel) or type 4 (Page) transactions The prefix will be that of the terminal sub-group without an associated relay.

For type 3 transactions (Server) No terminal prefix is required.

Line type One of the TCP/IP protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example TCP1.

Possible calls Specify 1 (incoming calls only) to indicate that this line represents a listening port where VIRTEL is acting as an HTTP server.

For the case where VIRTEL acts as an HTTP requester, refer to the following section "*Definition of a HTTP Outbound line*".

Protocol VIRHTTP or HTTP.

Window Always 0.

Packet Always 0.

Pad Always blank.

Tran Always blank.

2.4.1 Terminal Definitions

An HTTP line uses sub-groups of two different sets of terminals having a common prefix.

A terminal is an essential element ensuring the link and the integrity of exchanges between a user session located on the LINE side and a TRANSACTION. They are described in detail in the "TERMINALS" chapter of this documentataion, but in order to understand their link with the Lines, it is necessary to assimilate the following concepts.

There are two categories of terminals:

- So-called **RELAY** terminals used **ONLY** by type-1 transactions associated with a VTAM application. Each terminal in this first sub-group represents one session between VIRTEL and a host application; in this sub-group, either a relay must be configured for each terminal, or the sub-group must refer to "logical pool of relays". Whichever method is chosen, each relay must be defined by an APPL statement in a VTAM node of type APPL. Either explicit or repeated terminal definitions may be used.
- So-called **LOCAL** terminals used by all non type-1 transactions, for example transaction associated with VIRTEL modules or to a directory hosted in a VSAM file.

By default, when installing the VIRTEL web access suite, two HTTP lines are predefined. Each of these lines uses its own subset of terminals. The terminals with prefix "CL" belong to line C-HTTP, while the terminals with prefix "DE" belong to line W-HTTP. Both RELAY groups share the same pool represented by the yellow square. This list was displayed by pressing [PF2] at the Configuration Menu.

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
CLLOC000	0050			3	3		
CLVTA000	0080	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
DELOC000	0050			3	3		
DEVTA000	0016	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
W2HIM000	0096	RHTIM000		S	1		
W2HIP000	0096	RHTIP000		P	1		
W2HTP000	0096	RHTVT000		3	3	*W2HPOOL RHTIM000	

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
 P7=Page -1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details
 DELETE OK

12,3

Terminals associated with HTTP lines

For line C-HTTP, the first sub-group consists of terminals CLLOC000-049 without a relay. The second sub-group consists of terminals CLVTA000-079 which refer to a logical pool of relays named *W2HPOOL.

For line W-HTTP, the first sub-group is DELOC000-009, and the second sub-group is DEVTA000-015 which also refers to the logical pool named *W2HPOOL.

The logical pool itself consists of terminals W2HTP000-095 whose relay LU names are RHTVT000-095. The logical pool also refers to a pool of associated printer LU's. The printers are defined with terminal names W2HIP000-095 and LU names RHTIP000-095. In each case, the terminal name is an internal name used only within VIRTEL, while the relay name is an LU name defined by a VTAM APPL statement. The relay LU name is the name by which the terminal is known to CICS or other VTAM applications.

Note: Pressing [PF4] from an HTTP line detail definition screen will display only the list of associated terminals whose prefix matches the prefix specified in the line definition. If the terminals refer to a logical pool, the pool itself may have a different prefix and will therefore not be displayed. In this case you can press [PF2] at the Configuration Menu to display a list of all terminals.

TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:54:05

Terminal	====> CLLOC000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	=====>	Name seen by VTAM applications
*Pool name	=====>	= copied from the terminal name
Description	=====> HTTP terminals (no relay)	Pool where to put this terminal
Entry Point	=====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	=====>	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	=====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	=====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	=====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	=====> 2	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	=====> 0050	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
		Enter=Add P12=Server

18,35

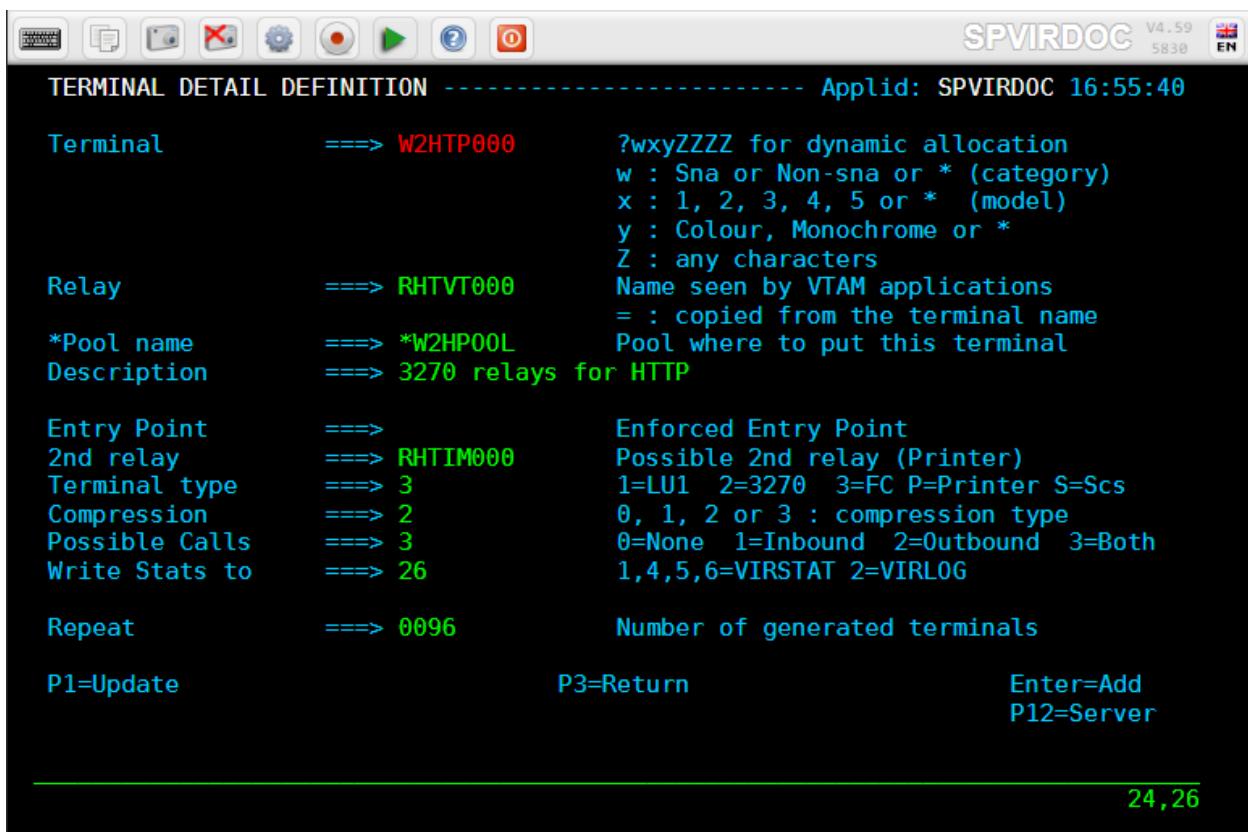
HTTP terminals without relay

TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:54:59

Terminal	====> CLVTA000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	=====> *W2HP00L	Name seen by VTAM applications = : copied from the terminal name
*Pool name	=====>	Pool where to put this terminal
Description	=====> HTTP terminals (with relay)	(with relay)
Entry Point	=====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	=====>	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	=====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	=====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	=====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	=====> 26	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	=====> 0080	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
		Enter=Add P12=Server

KEY IN DATA AND PRESS ENTER

3,26

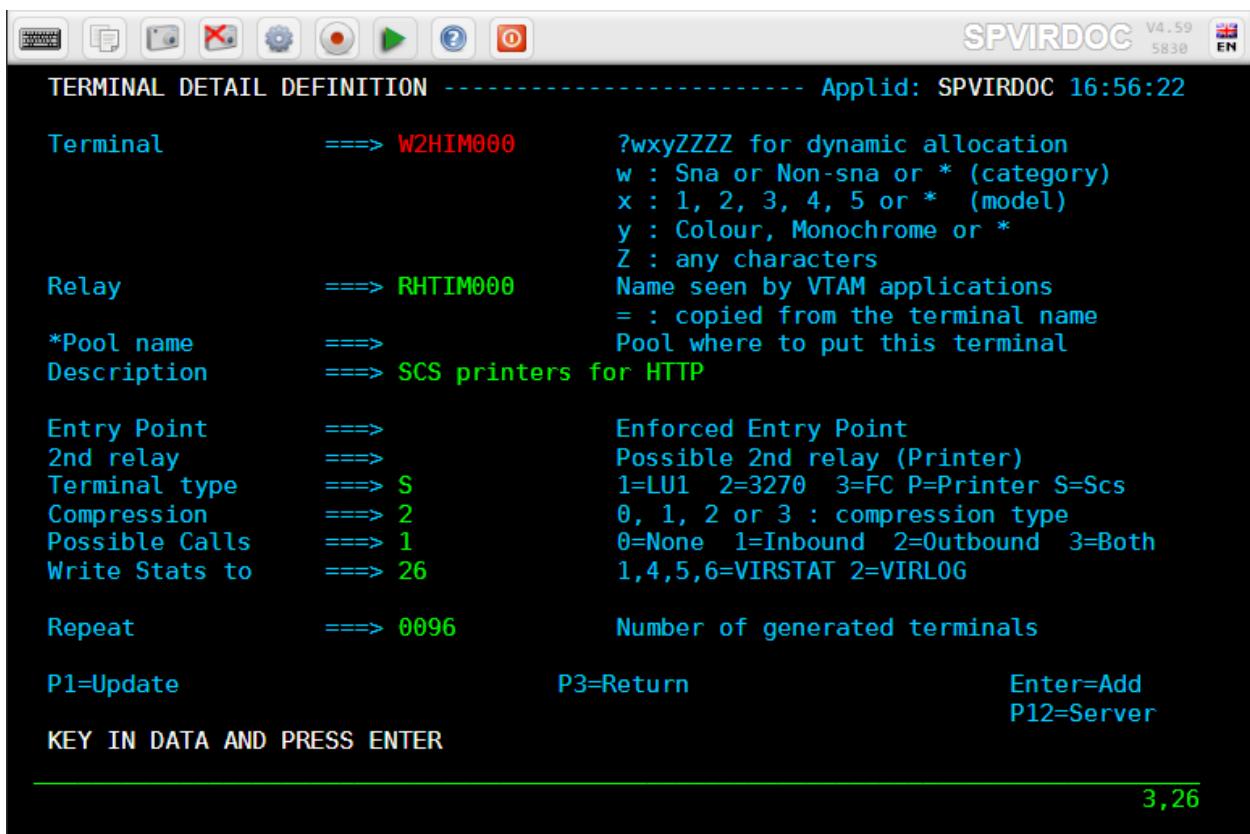
HTTP terminals with relay


TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:55:40

Terminal	====> W2HTP000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	====> RHTVT000	Name seen by VTAM applications
*Pool name	====> *W2HP00L	= : copied from the terminal name
Description	====> 3270 relays for HTTP	Pool where to put this terminal
Entry Point	====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	====> RHTIM000	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	====> 26	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	====> 0096	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update	P3=Return	Enter=Add P12=Server

24,26

logical pool of relays for HTTP



Associated printer relays for HTTP

Refer to the VIRTEL Web Access Guide for further information about printers.

2.4.2 VTAM Terminal Definitions

HTTP relay LU's must be defined to VTAM by means of APPL statements in an application major node, as shown in the following example:

```
APPLVIRT VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* RHTVTxxx : Relay for VTAM appl accessed by WEB to HOST *
* -----
RHTVT??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
* -----
* RHTIMxxx : Printer relays for WEB to HOST terminals *
* -----
RHTIM??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SCS,EAS=1
RHTIP??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=DSILGMOD,EAS=1
```

VTAM definitions for HTTP terminals

2.4.3 CICS Definitions

The HTTP relay LU's must also be defined to CICS, as shown in the following example:

```
* VIRTEL 3270 TERMINALS FOR WEB2HOST
* -----
DEFINE TERMINAL(Txxx) GROUP(VIRTEL) DESCRIPTION(VIRTEL - 3270 TERMINAL)
AUTINSTMODEL(NO) TYPETERM(DFHLU2E2) NETNAME(RHTVTxxx)
```

```
TASKLIMIT(NO) TERMPRIORITY(0) INSERVICE(YES) ATTACHSEC(LOCAL)
PRINTER(Sxxxx) <<< Or Lxxx depending on 2nd relay
* FOR EACH VIRTEL 3284 PRINTERS FOR WEB2HOST
* -----
DEFINE TERMINAL(Lxxx) GROUP(VIRTEL) DESCRIPTION(VIRTEL - 3284 PRINTER)
    AUTINSTMODEL(NO) TYPETERM(DFHLU3) NETNAME(RHTIPxxxx)
    INSERVICE(YES) ATTACHSEC(LOCAL)
* FOR EACH VIRTEL SCS PRINTERS FOR WEB2HOST
* -----
DEFINE TERMINAL(Sxxxx) GROUP(VIRTEL) DESCRIPTION(VIRTEL - SCS PRINTER)
    AUTINSTMODEL(NO) TYPETERM(SCS) NETNAME(RHTIMxxxx)
    INSERVICE(YES) ATTACHSEC(LOCAL)
```

A sample job is supplied in member CSDW2H of the VIRTEL SAMPLIB.

2.5 HTTP Outbound line

An HTTP Outbound line allows VIRTEL to act as an HTTP requester. Activation of this type of line is subject to the presence of the TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT.

By means of the OPTION\$ FOR-HTTP and SEND\$ TO-LINE instructions, a VIRTEL scenario can make requests to the remote HTTP server whose address is specified in the HTTP Outbound line definition. Multiple HTTP Outbound lines may be defined to allow requests to be sent to different HTTP servers. Refer to “VIRTEL Web Modernisation Scenarios” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide for examples of the OPTION\$ FOR-HTTP instruction. The \$SITE\$ defines the IP address of the outbound server. It is passed via a scenario. See the OPTION\$ FOR-HTTP scenario instruction.

```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 17:26:35

Internal name ===> 0-HTTP           1st character is line code
External name ===> WEBSERV1        External entity name
Remote ident ===> $SITE$          Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> $NONE$          Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> Outbound HTTP line for Web Services
Prefix      ===>                  Prefix for terminals
Pool        ===>                  Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===>                Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set    ===> 0-HTTP          Rules to choose an entry point
Line type   ===> TCP1            eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 2       0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & 0
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program   ===> VIRHTTP Dialog manager
Security program   ===>          Non standard security
Time out     ===> 0000          Action ===> 0  Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window       ===> 0000          Packet  ===> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad          ===>              Tran    ===> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries      ===> 0010          Delay   ===> Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add          P5=Rules

```

14.34

Definition of an HTTP Outbound line

2.5.1 Parameters

Internal name Must be unique.

External name Should be unique.

Note: Either the internal name or the external name may be specified in the SEND\$ TO-LINE instruction in the scenario.

Remote ident This is the IP address and port number of the remote HTTP server. The format is **nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:pppp** where nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn is the IP address and pppp is the port number. The port number (normally port 80) must be specified, there is no default.

The remote HTTP server may also be specified by its DNS name and port number, for example webservices.mycompany.com:80

The special value \$SITE\$ indicates that the name and port number of the remote HTTP server are specified in the SITE parameter of the OPTION\$ FOR-HTTP instruction.

Local ident \$NONE\$ indicates that VIRTEL will not open a listening port for this line.

Prefix Leave blank. No terminals are required for an HTTP Outbound line.

Line type One of the TCP/IP protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example TCP1.

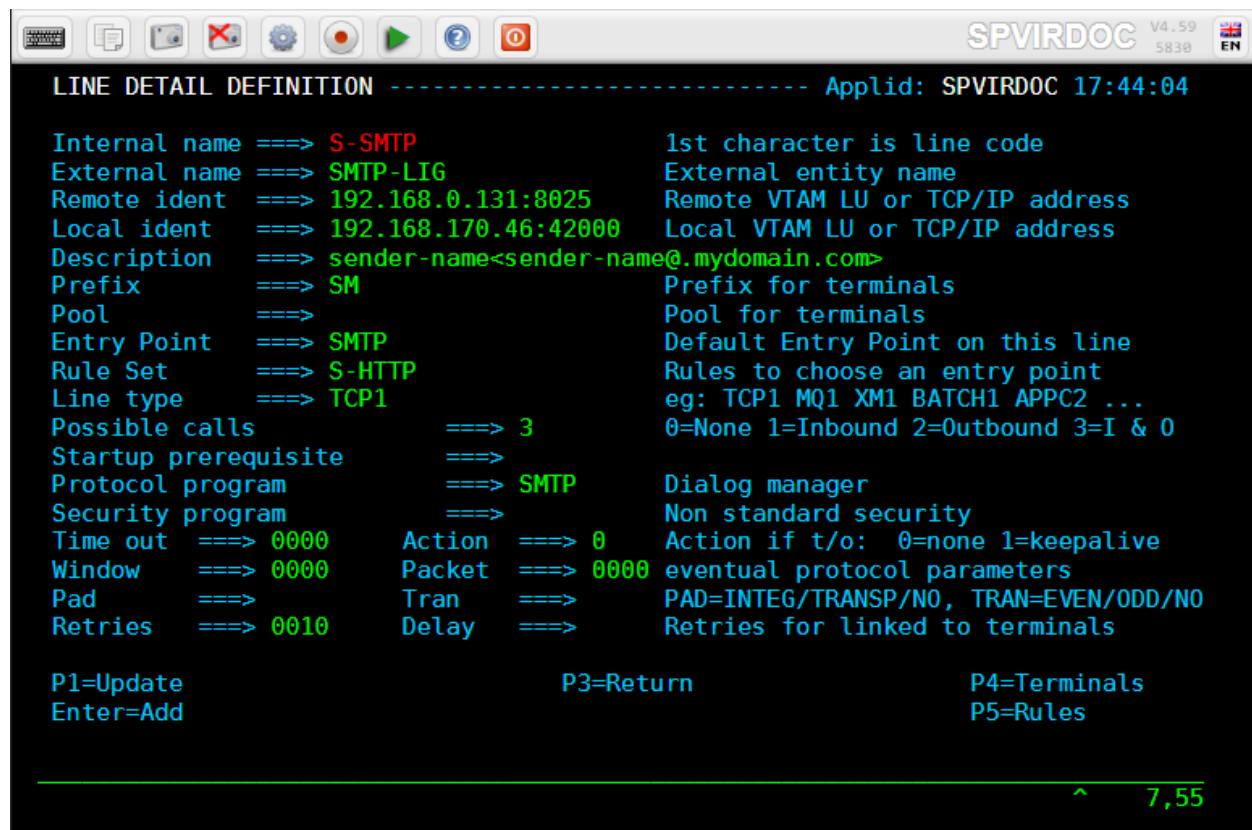
Possible calls Specify 2 to indicate that this line is used for outbound calls.

Protocol VIRHTTP or HTTP.

2.6 HTTP Inbound or Outbound SMTP line

An SMTP line establishes a TCP/IP link between VIRTEL and an external SMTP server. The external SMTP server receives outgoing mail from VIRTEL for distribution to users. The SMTP line also defines the characteristics of VIRTEL's internal SMTP server which receives incoming mail sent to VIRTEL. The activation of this type of line requires the presence of the TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT.

Note: In case of SMTP problems, use the command F VIRTEL,TRACE,L=S-SMTP to trace the dialog between VIRTEL and the SMTP server. The trace output is written to SYSPRINT or SYSLST.



```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 17:44:04

Internal name ===> S-SMTP           1st character is line code
External name ===> SMTP-LIG          External entity name
Remote ident ===> 192.168.0.131:8025  Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> 192.168.170.46:42000 Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> sender-name<sender-name@mydomain.com>
Prefix      ===> SM                Prefix for terminals
Pool        ===>                  Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===> SMTP              Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set    ===> S-HTTP             Rules to choose an entry point
Line type   ===> TCP1              eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 3          0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program   ===> SMTP              Dialog manager
Security program   ===>
Time out     ===> 0000             Action ===> 0          Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window       ===> 0000             Packet  ===> 0000    eventual protocol parameters
Pad          ===>
Retries      ===> 0010             Tran    ===>          PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
                                         Delay   ===>          Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add          P5=Rules

```

SMTP line definition

2.6.1 Parameters

Remote ident This field is required and represents the IP address and port number of the SMTP server to which VIRTEL sends outgoing mail.

Local ident The IP address and port number on which VIRTEL listens for incoming mail. For details of how to code this field, refer to “Local ident” under the heading “*Line Parameters*”,.

Description The sender name generated in outgoing e-mails. Not used for incoming e-mails.

Generally, the description field does not contain any significant information. However, in the case of an SMTP line, the contents of this field are used by VIRTEL.

The description field for an SMTP line must be in a specific format. It must contain a domain name, followed by an e-mail address enclosed in angle brackets (characters “<” and “>”). Everything up to the first angle bracket is the operand of the HELO command which VIRTEL sends to the SMTP server. The e-mail address in angle brackets is the default operand of the MAIL FROM command which VIRTEL sends to the SMTP server. This default e-mail address can optionally be overridden by the sending application by means of the FAD4 structured field. The e-mail address used will normally need to be defined to the SMTP server.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point When defining an SMTP line, it is obligatory to define a default entry point. This entry point will be used for all incoming calls which do not match any of the rules of the line.

Entry points for use with SMTP lines are described under the heading “Incoming E-mails” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

Line type One of the TCP/IP protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example TCP1.

Possible calls Direction of calls.

The value 3 must be used in order to allow exchanges in both directions between VIRTEL and the partner SMTP server.

Protocol Always SMTP.

Window Always 0.

Packet Always 0.

Pad Always blank.

Tran Always blank.

SMTP terminals

By pressing [PF4], the list of terminals associated with the SMTP line will be displayed. An SMTP line uses a single sub-group of type-3 terminals having a common prefix (in this case SM). The number of terminals defined determines the number of simultaneous SMTP sessions authorised. Either explicit or repeated Terminal Definitions may be used.

```

TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 18:07:34
Terminal      ===> SMTPT000 ?wxyZZZ for dynamic allocation
Relay          ===> see_note   w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category)
*Pool name    ===>           x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model)
Description    ===> SMTPTerminals y : Colour, Monochrome or *
                           Z : any characters
Entry Point    ===> SMTP      Name seen by VTAM applications
2nd relay      ===>           = : copied from the terminal name
Terminal type  ===> 3        Pool where to put this terminal
Compression    ===> 2        Enforced Entry Point
Possible Calls ===> 3        Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Write Stats to ===>           1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
                           0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
                           0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
                           1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat         ===> 0016     Number of generated terminals
P1=Update      P3=Return   Enter=Add
P12=Server
CREATION OK
10,26

```

SMTP Terminal Definitions

2.6.2 Terminal Definitions

Terminal The terminal name must match the prefix of the line.

Relay A relay LU must be specified if incoming e-mails are used to trigger the start of a CICS transaction (or another VTAM application). The relay LU's must be defined by APPL statements in a VTAM application major node, as described below.

Entry point Leave blank. The entry point is defined in the line (or in the rules of the line) for this type of terminal.

Terminal Type Always 3.

Compression Always 2.

Possible Calls Always 3.

Repeat The number of terminals defined.

2.6.3 VTAM Terminal Definitions

```

RSMTPT000 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
RSMTPT001 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
...
RSMTPT015 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL

```

VTAM definitions for SMTP relay LUs

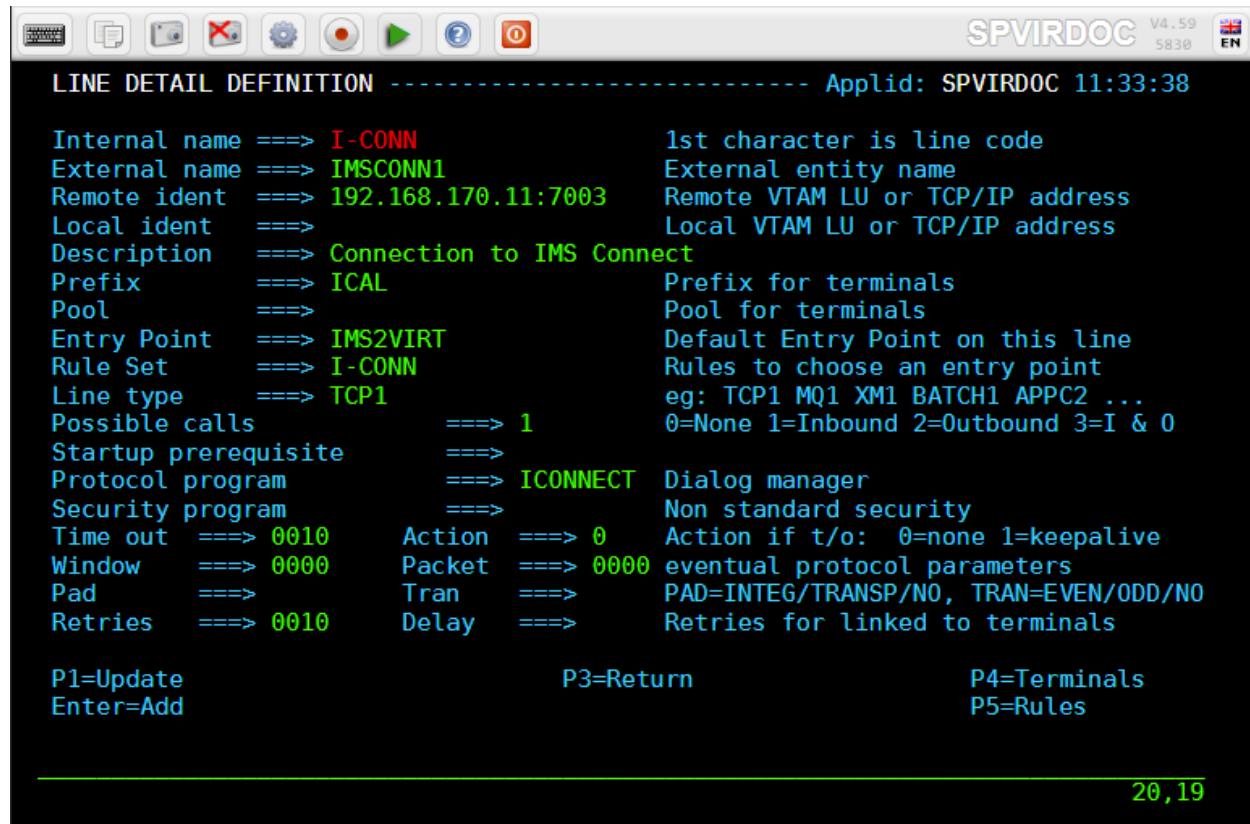
2.6.4 CICS Definitions

Where incoming e-mails are used to trigger a CICS transaction (or other VTAM application), the SMTP relay LU's must be defined by APPL statements in a VTAM application major node, as shown in this example:

```
* VIRTEL TERMINALS FOR SMTP
*-----
DEFINE TYPETERM(SMTP3270) GROUP(VIRTEL)
  DESCRIPTION(TYPETERM FOR SMTP PSEUDO-TERMINAL)
  DEVICE(3270) TERMMODEL(2) SHIPPABLE(YES) RECEIVESIZE(16384)
  PAGESIZE(24,80) DEFSCREEN(24,80) EXTENDEDSDS(YES) QUERY(ALL)
  TTI(YES) RELREQ(YES) DISCREQ(YES) LOGONMSG(NO) UCTRAN(NO)
DEFINE TERMINAL(SMXX) GROUP(VIRTEL) DESCRIPTION(VIRTEL - SMTP TERMINAL)
  TYPETERM(SMTP3270) NETNAME(RSMTPxxx) USERID(SPVIRSTC)
```

2.7 IMS Connect Inbound line

An IMS Connect line establishes a TCP/IP connection between VIRTEL and IMS Connect using the RESUME TPIPE protocol. Once the connection is established, IMS application programs running in an MPP or BMP region can send requests to VIRTEL using the ICAL DL/I call. VIRTEL processes these requests by launching a customer-written scenario. The scenario can perform actions such as making an outbound HTTP call to a web service before returning the result to the IMS application program. Activation of this type of line requires the presence of the TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT.



```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 11:33:38
Internal name ===> I-CONN           1st character is line code
External name ===> IMSCONN1         External entity name
Remote ident ===> 192.168.170.11:7003 Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===>                   Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> Connection to IMS Connect
Prefix ===> ICAL                  Prefix for terminals
Pool ===>                      Pool for terminals
Entry Point ===> IMS2VIRT          Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set ===> I-CONN              Rules to choose an entry point
Line type ===> TCP1                eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 1        0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program    ===> ICONNECT Dialog manager
Security program    ===>          Non standard security
Time out ===> 0010     Action ===> 0  Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window   ===> 0000     Packet ===> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad      ===>          Tran   ===> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/N0, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/N0
Retries  ===> 0010     Delay   ===> Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update           P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add           P5=Rules           20,19

```

Definition of an IMS Connect line

2.7.1 Parameters

Internal name The VIRTEL internal name for this connection.

External name Must match the IMS destination id (IRM_IMSDestId).

Remote ident IP address of IMS Connect followed by the port number.

Local ident Leave blank.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point The entry point name must match the IMS TPIPE name (IRM_CLIENTID).

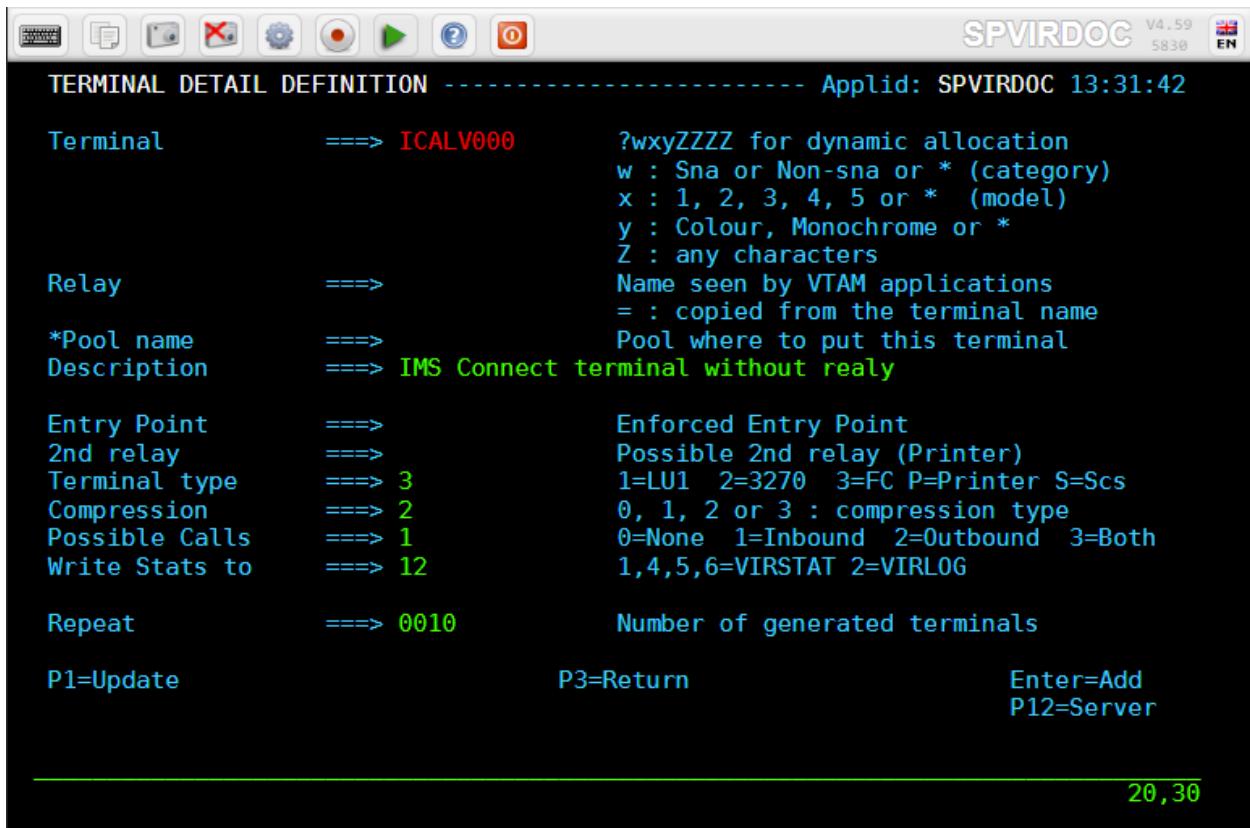
Line type One of the TCP/IP protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example TCP1.

Possible calls Always 1.

Protocol Always ICONNECT.

2.7.2 Terminals Definitions

Press [PF4] at the Line Detail Definition screen to display the list of terminals associated with an IMS Connect line. An IMS Connect line uses a single sub-group of type-3 terminals having a common prefix (ICAL in this example). No relays are defined for this type of line. The number of terminals defined determines the maximum number of simultaneous RESUME TPIPE sessions between VIRTEL and IMS Connect.



Definition of terminals associated with an IMS Connect line

Terminal The terminal name must match the prefix of the line.

Relais Leave blank.

Entry point Leave blank.

Terminal Type Always 3.

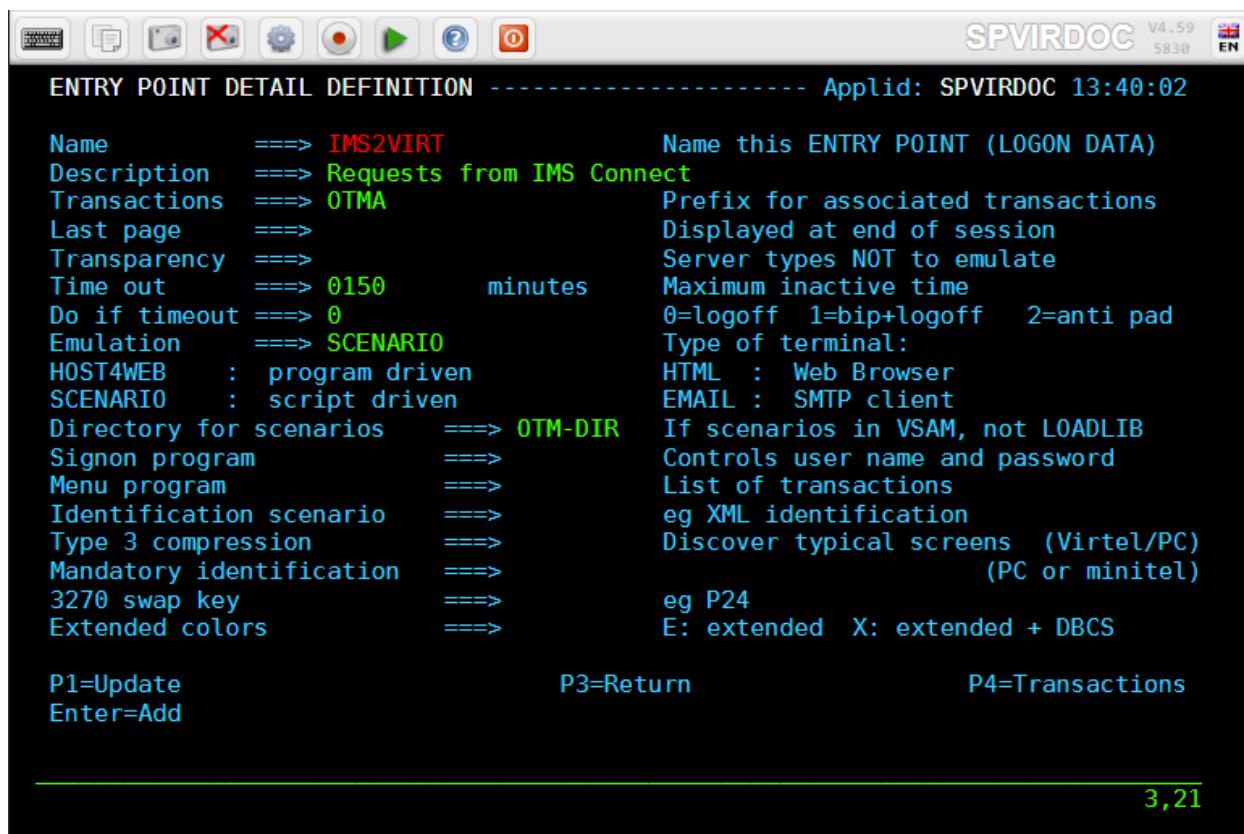
Compression Always 2.

Possible calls Always 1.

Repeat Number of terminals (RESUME TPIPE sessions) defined.

2.7.3 Entry Point

Each IMS Connect line must have an associated Entry Point whose name is specified in the line definition. An example is shown below:



```

ENTRY POINT DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 13:40:02
Name      ==> IMS2VIRT           Name this ENTRY POINT (LOGON DATA)
Description ==> Requests from IMS Connect
Transactions ==> OTMA          Prefix for associated transactions
Last page   ====
Transparency ====
Time out    ==> 0150      minutes Maximum inactive time
Do if timeout ==> 0           0=logoff  1=bip+logoff  2=anti pad
Emulation   ==> SCENARIO      Type of terminal:
HOST4WEB   : program driven
SCENARIO   : script driven
Directory for scenarios ==> OTM-DIR If scenarios in VSAM, not LOADLIB
Signon program      ====
Menu program        ====
Identification scenario ==> List of transactions
Type 3 compression   ==> eg XML identification
Mandatory identification ==> Discover typical screens (Virtel/PC)
3270 swap key       ==> (PC or minitel)
Extended colors     ==> eg P24
                           E: extended  X: extended + DBCS

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Transactions
Enter=Add

```

3,21

Definition of entry point associated with an IMS Connect line

Name The name of the entry point must match the IMS TPIPE name specified in the IRM_CLIENTID parameter of the IMS Connect definition.

Transactions Prefix of associated transaction names (see next section).

Emulation Always SCENARIO.

Directory for scenarios The name of the VIRTEL directory which contains the scenario(s) for processing requests from IMS.

2.7.4 Transactions

Each IMS Connect entry point must have one or more associated transactions. Press [PF4] at the Entry Point Detail Definition screen to display the list of transactions associated with an IMS Connect entry point. The transaction definition specifies the name of the scenario which will be invoked to process an incoming request from IMS. If the incoming request does not specify a transaction name, or if the specified transaction name is not defined in the entry point, then VIRTEL will invoke the transaction whose external name is the same as the entry point name. If there is no such default transaction, then the request is rejected and VIRTEL issues message VIRIC57E.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "TRANSACTION DETAIL DEFINITION" with the Applid: SPVIRDOC 13:35:50. The window displays various configuration parameters for a transaction:

Internal name	==> OTMA-000	To associate with an entry point name
External name	==> OTMAOUT1	Name displayed on user menu
Description	==> Call scenario OTMACL	
Application	==> \$NONE\$	Option
PassTicket	==> 0	Name ==>
Application type	==> 2	0=no 1=yes 2=unsigned 1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Pseudo-terminals	==>	Prefix of name of partner terminals
Logmode	==>	Specify when LOGMODE must be changed
How started	==> 1	1=menu 2=sub-menu 3=auto
Security	==> 0	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Translation(s)	==>	0=idem 1=8040 2=8080 3=4040 4=auto
Logon message	==>	
TIOA at logon	==> &/S	
TIOA at logoff	==>	
Initial Scenario	==> OTMACL	Final Scenario ==>
Input Scenario	==>	Output Scenario ==>
P1=Update		P3=Return
		P12=Server

20,32

Definition of a transaction associated with an IMS Connect entry point

Internal name Must match the transaction prefix specified in the entry point.

External name This is the transaction name specified by the IMS application in the message header. For the default transaction, the external name must be the same as the entry point name.

Application Always \$NONE\$.

Application type Always 2.

Pseudo-terminal Exceptionally, there is no terminal prefix associated with this type of transaction. Virtel decides which allocation and management is best suited for this type of application.

Security Always 0.

TIOA at logon Always &/S.

Initial scenario The name of the VIRTEL scenario which will process requests from IMS for this transaction.

2.7.5 Scenarios

When a scenario is invoked to process a request message from IMS connect, VIRTEL places the contents of the request message in the variable \$INFILE\$. After processing the message, the scenario returns a response message to IMS by means of the SEND\$ AS-ANSWER instruction. By way of illustration, the simple example shown below converts the request message to uppercase before sending it back as a response message to IMS:

```
OTMACL SCREENS APPL=OTMACL
*
* Scenario for testing an IMS CONNECT connection
```

```
*  
*-----  
* The scenario name is to be referenced in the INITIAL scenario  
* field of the Virtel transaction  
*  
* >>>> IMPORTANT : To be activated this scenario requires the  
* presence of the &/S command in the area  
* TIOA at LOGON  
* -----  
SCENARIO INITIAL  
*  
CONVERT$ EBCDIC-TO-UPPERCASE,VAR='$INFILE$'  
SEND$ AS-ANSWER,VAR='$INFILE$',TYPE='TEXT'  
*  
SCENARIO END  
*  
SCRNEND  
END
```

Example scenario for processing an IMS Connect request

Note: More complex scenarios may be constructed with the aid of VIRTEL Studio.

2.7.6 Message format

Messages sent from an IMS application to VIRTEL may be prefixed by a 12-byte header. The format of the header is shown in the figure below:

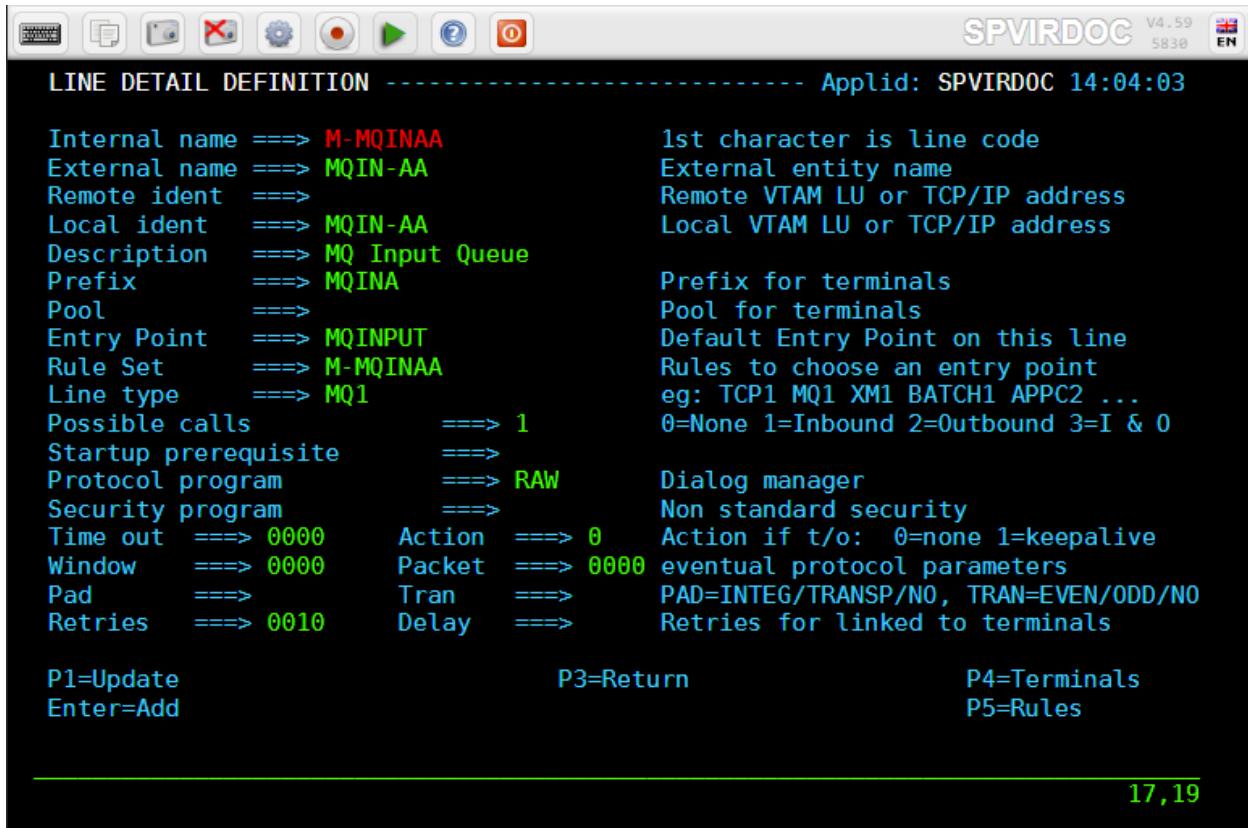
Bytes	Length	EBCDIC	Meaning
0 - 3	4	/V1/	Identifies type of prefix
4 - 11	8	xxxxxx	Externql transaction name. Left justified and padded with blanks

Format of an IMS Connect message header

All data following the header is treated as binary data which is passed to the scenario without translation in the \$INFILE\$ variable.

2.8 MQ line

An MQ line establishes a connection between VIRTEL and an MQSeries message queue. Each MQ line can receive messages from, or send messages to, one MQSeries message queue. Activation of this type of line requires the presence of the MQ1 or MQ2 parameter in the VIRTCT. The queue can be shared with another application (another VIRTEL for instance) or used in exclusive mode depending on its own definition.



2.8.1 Parameters

Remote ident For the RAW protocol: Leave blank.

For the PREFIXED, PREFIX12, and PREFIX20 protocols: The special value \$REPLYTOQ indicates that outbound messages are sent to the destination indicated by the REPLYTOQ and REPLYTOQMGR parameters taken from the inbound message and saved in the 12- or 20-byte header.

Local ident The name of the MQSeries message queue. The queue name prefix specified in the MQn parameter of the VIRTCT will be added to the front of this name. Refer to “Parameters of the VIRTCT” in the VIRTEL Installation Guide for details of the MQn parameter.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point Required for MQ input queue.

Line type One of the MQn protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example MQ1.

Possible calls Specify one of the following values:

1 = Input : VIRTEL receives messages from the MQSeries queue 2 = Output: VIRTEL writes messages to the MQSeries queue

Protocol RAW, PREFIXED, PREFIX12, or PREFIX20.

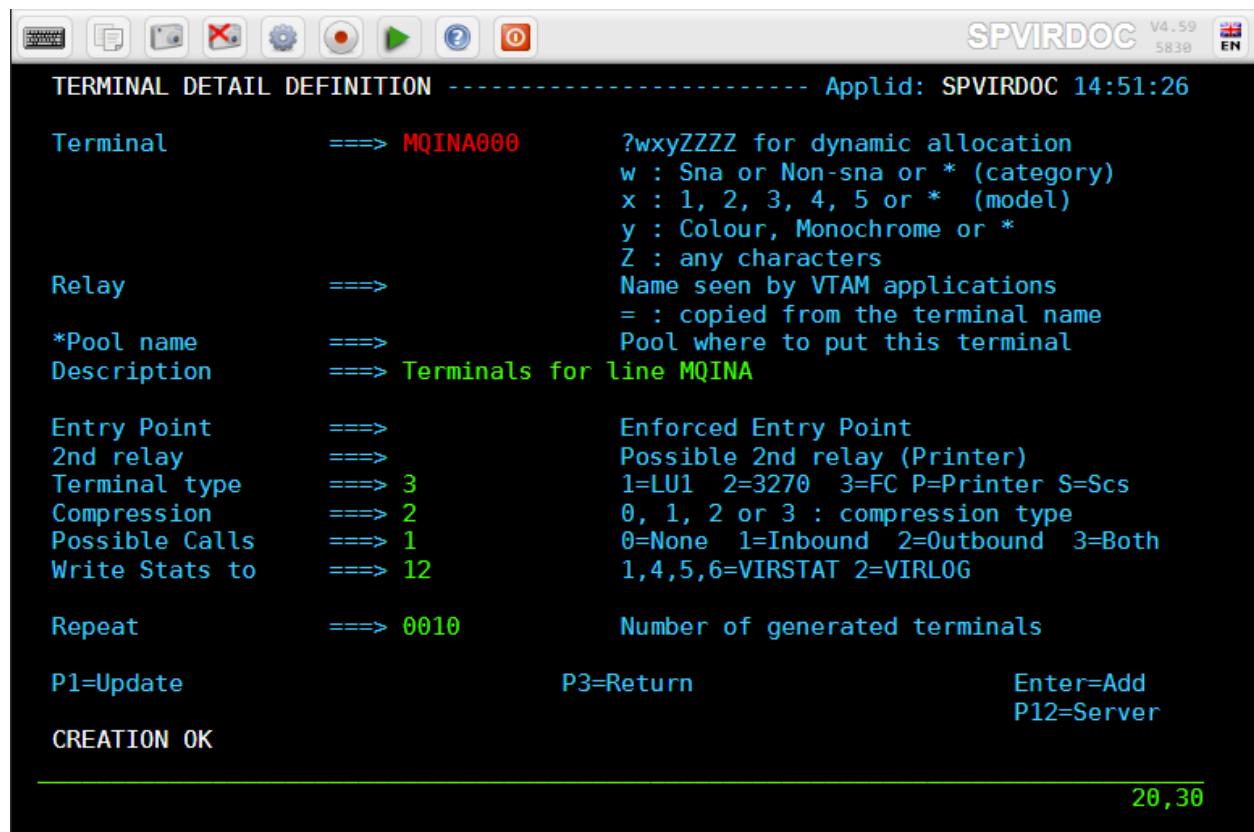
Tran

Specify the way in which messages are processed on the line.

- STR = The messages are processed as MQFMT_STRING formatted messages. This will allow MQ to perform the appropriate character set translations between the communicating systems. To support this feature, the PTF5135 must be applied on the system.
- no value = The messages are processed as MQFMT_NONE formatted messages.

Navigation

Press [PF4] at the line definition screen to display the list of terminals associated with an MQ line. An MQ line uses a single sub-group of type-3 terminals having a common prefix (MQINA in this example). The number of terminals defined determines the maximum number of messages which can be processed simultaneously by VIRTEL.



2.8.2 Terminal Parameters

Terminal The terminal name must match the prefix of the line.

Relais Leave blank.

Entry point Leave blank.

Terminal Type Always 3.

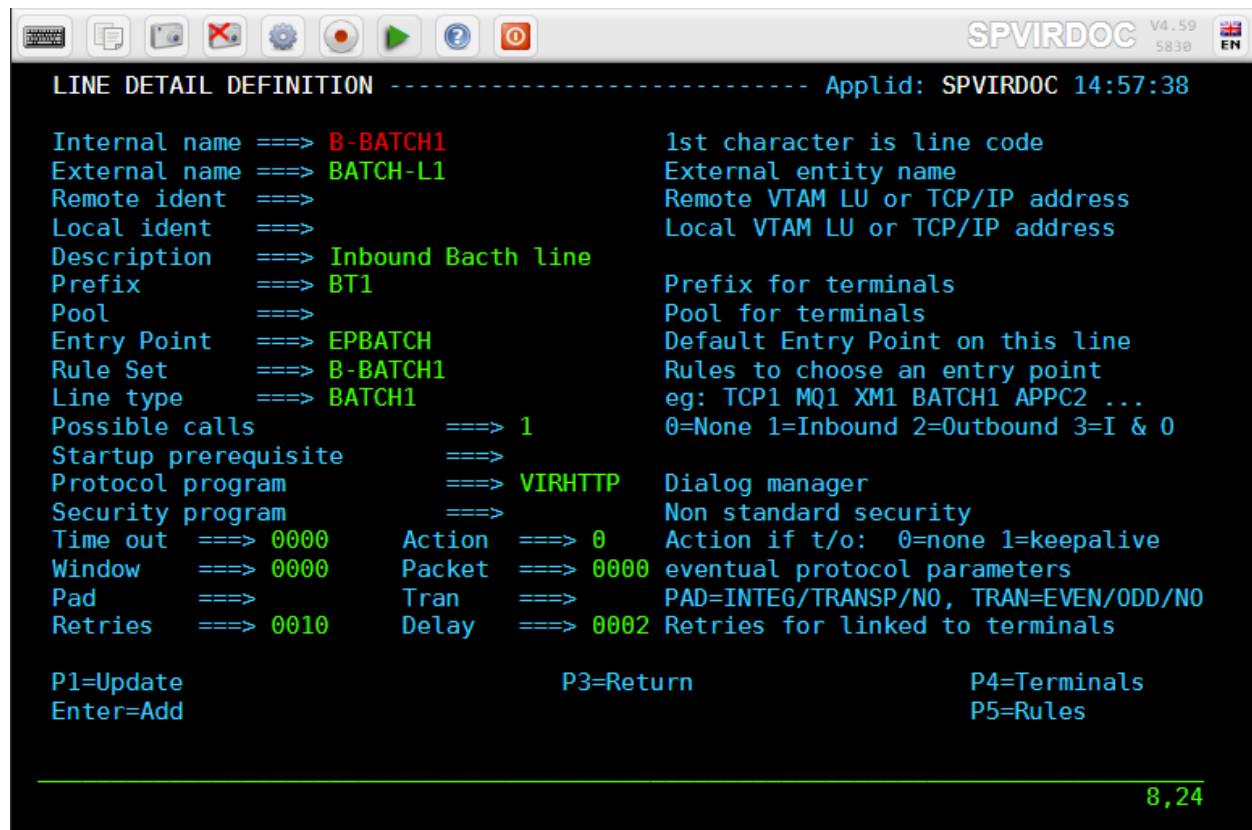
Compression Always 2.

Possible calls Always 3.

Repeat Number of terminals defined.

2.9 Inbound Batch line

A batch line allows VIRTEL to process HTTP requests in batch mode. When a batch line is defined in the VIRTEL configuration, VIRTEL reads HTTP requests from an input sequential file at startup, processes the requests, writes the responses to an output sequential file, and shuts down. Activation of this type of line is subject to the presence of the BATCHn parameter in the VIRTCT.



The screenshot shows the SPVIRDOC application interface with the title bar "SPVIRDOC V4.59 5830 EN". The main window displays the "LINE DETAIL DEFINITION" for an application with Applid: SPVIRDOC 14:57:38. The configuration details are as follows:

Internal name ==> B-BATCH1	1st character is line code
External name ==> BATCH-L1	External entity name
Remote ident ==>	Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ==>	Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ==> Inbound Bacth line	
Prefix ==> BT1	Prefix for terminals
Pool ==>	Pool for terminals
Entry Point ==> EPBATCH	Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set ==> B-BATCH1	Rules to choose an entry point eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Line type ==> BATCH1	
Possible calls ==> 1	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ==>	
Protocol program ==> VIRHTTP	Dialog manager
Security program ==>	Non standard security
Time out ==> 0000	Action ==> 0 Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window ==> 0000	Packet ==> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad ==>	Tran ==> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries ==> 0010	Delay ==> 0002 Retries for linked to terminals
P1=Update P3=Return P4=Terminals	
Enter=Add P5=Rules	

8,24

2.9.1 Parameters

Remote ident Always blank.

Local ident Always blank.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point When defining a batch line, it is required to define a default entry point. This entry point is similar to the entry point used for an HTTP line. The entry point contains a list of transactions, and these transactions determine which directories are used to retrieve page templates, and which 3270 applications are accessible to the batch requests.

Each transaction must refer to one of the terminal sub-groups associated with the batch line (see "Batch terminals" below).

For type 1 (Application) transactions: The prefix will be that of the terminal sub-group with an associated relay.

For type 2 (VirTEL) or type 4 (Page) transactions The prefix will be that of the terminal sub-group without an associated relay.

For type 3 (Server) transactions No terminal prefix is required.

Line type BATCH1 or BATCH2, corresponding to one of the BATCH parameters defined in the VIRTCT.

Possible calls Specify 1 (incoming calls only).

Protocol VIRHTTP or HTTP.

Window Always 0.

Packet Always 0.

Pad Always blank.

Tran Always blank.

2.9.2 Terminal Definitions

Like an HTTP line, a batch line uses up to two sub-groups of type-3 terminals having a common prefix (in this case BT1). Refer to “HTTP terminals” for further details. If the batch requests do not require connection to a host VTAM application, then it is only necessary to define the first terminal sub-group (the sub-group without relays).

Press [PF4] at the line detail definition screen to display the list of associated terminals whose prefix matches the prefix specified in the line definition. Then press [PF12] to display the terminal detail definition. The example below shows the terminals for a batch line without relays:

```

TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:13:09
SPVIRDOC V4.59
EN

Terminal      ===> BT1LOC00      ?wxyZZZ for dynamic allocation
                           w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category)
                           x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model)
                           y : Colour, Monochrome or *
                           Z : any characters
Relay          ===>           Name seen by VTAM applications
*Pool name    ===>           = : copied from the terminal name
Description   ===>           Pool where to put this terminal
                           Batch terminal (no relay)

Entry Point    ===>           Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay     ===>           Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type  ===> 3        1=LU1  2=3270  3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression   ===> 2        0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls ===> 3        0=None  1=Inbound  2=Outbound  3=Both
Write Stats to ===> 12       1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG

Repeat         ===> 0005      Number of generated terminals

P1=Update      P3=Return      Enter=Add
                           P12=Server

20,30

```

Definition of terminals without relay for a batch line

2.10 Native TCP/IP Gateway line

VIRTEL can act as an IP-to-SNA gateway allowing existing VTAM applications to communicate with partner applications via the IP network. By connecting to a VIRTEL NATIVE TCP/IP port, a remote application can establish a TCP/IP session with VIRTEL and exchange messages with a host VTAM application using a simple record-oriented protocol.

The connection is always established by the remote TCP/IP application, but messages can flow in both directions. Each message exchanged between VIRTEL and the partner application is preceded by a two- or four-byte length field.

Typically the host application is a CICS application designed to communicate with banking terminals such as the IBM 3650.

The activation of this type of line requires the presence of the >TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT.

```

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:16:23

Internal name ===> TCP-IP01           1st character is line code
External name ===> IP-LINE1          External entity name
Remote ident ===>                  Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident ===> :nnnn             Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description ===> Incomming IP Call
Prefix ===> IPVTA                 Prefix for terminals
Pool ===>
Entry Point ===> EPTCPIP          Pool for terminals
Rule Set ===> TCP-IP01            Default Entry Point on this line
Line type ===> TCP1               Rules to choose an entry point
                                  eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls      ===> 1          0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite ===>
Protocol program   ===> NATIVE2    Dialog manager
Security program   ===>
Time out   ===> 0000          Action ===> 0     Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window     ===> 0000          Packet  ===> 8192  eventual protocol parameters
Pad        ===>
Retries    ===> 0010          Tran    ===>          PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
                               Delay   ===>          Retries for linked to terminals

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Terminals
Enter=Add          P5=Rules

```

8.23

2.10.1 Parameters

Remote ident Not used for a NATIVE TCP/IP line.

Local ident The IP address and port number on which VIRTEL listens for incoming connections from the partner application. For details of how to code this field, refer to “Local ident” under the heading “*Line Parameters*”.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry Point The default entry point will be used for all incoming calls which do not match any of the rules of the line. **Entry points for use with native TCP/IP lines must specify Emulation type \$NONE\$.**

Line type One of the TCP/IP protocols defined in the VIRTCT, for example TCP1.

Possible calls Specify 1 to allow inbound calls.

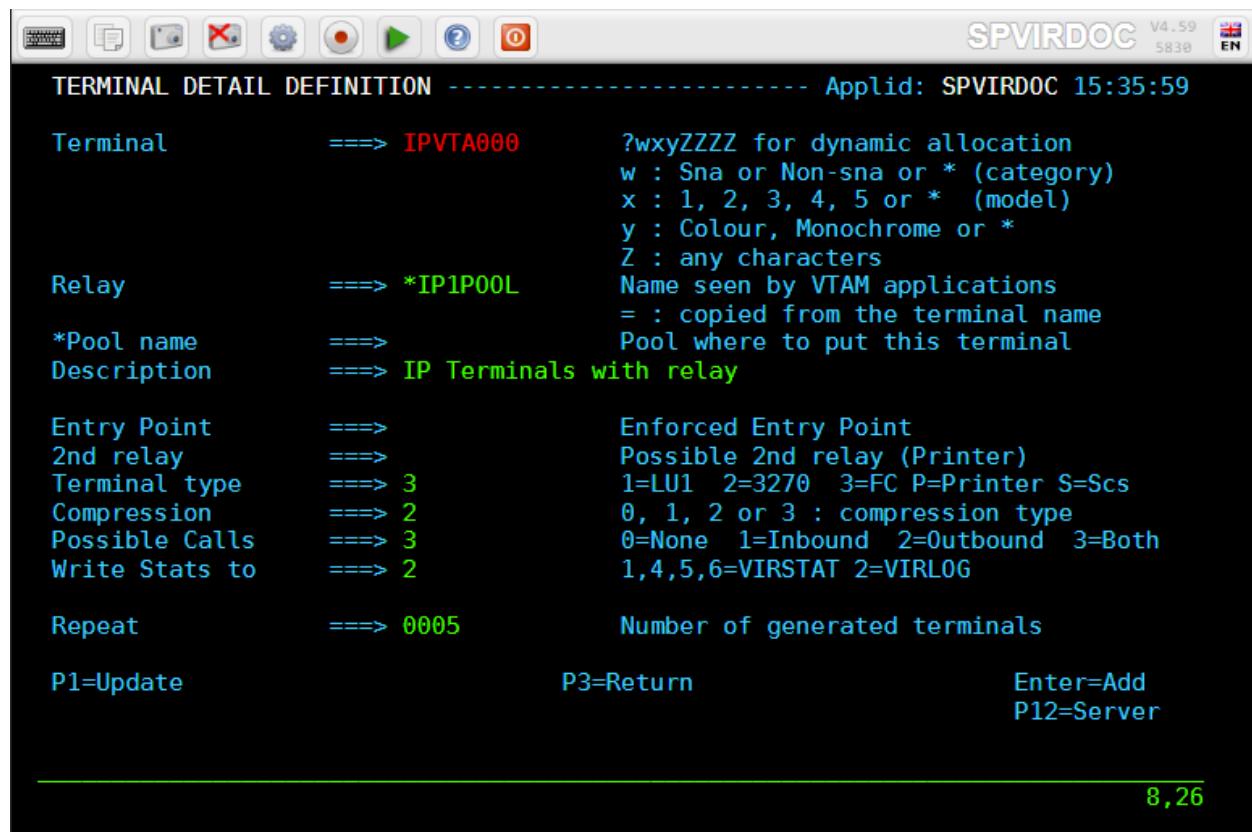
Protocol NATIVE2 or NATIVE2P for native TCP/IP protocol with a two-byte length field NATIVE4 or NATIVE4P for native TCP/IP protocol with a four-byte length field

Packet Specify a packet size sufficient to contain the largest message sent by either the host or the partner application, plus 2 or 4 bytes for the length field.

2.10.2 Line Terminals

By pressing [PF4], the list of terminals associated with the NATIVE TCP/IP line will be displayed. A NATIVE TCP/IP line uses a single group of type-3 terminals having a common prefix (VIP in this example). The number of terminals defined determines the number of simultaneous conversations authorised.

The example below shows a group of 5 NATIVE TCP/IP terminals:



2.10.3 Terminal Parameters

Terminal The terminal name must match the prefix of the line.

Relay Specify the name of the relay pool which defines the terminal LU names as seen by the VTAM application. The first character is an asterisk indicating that this is the name of a pool.

Entry point Leave blank. The entry point is defined in the line (or in the rules of the line) for this type of terminal.

Terminal type Always 3.

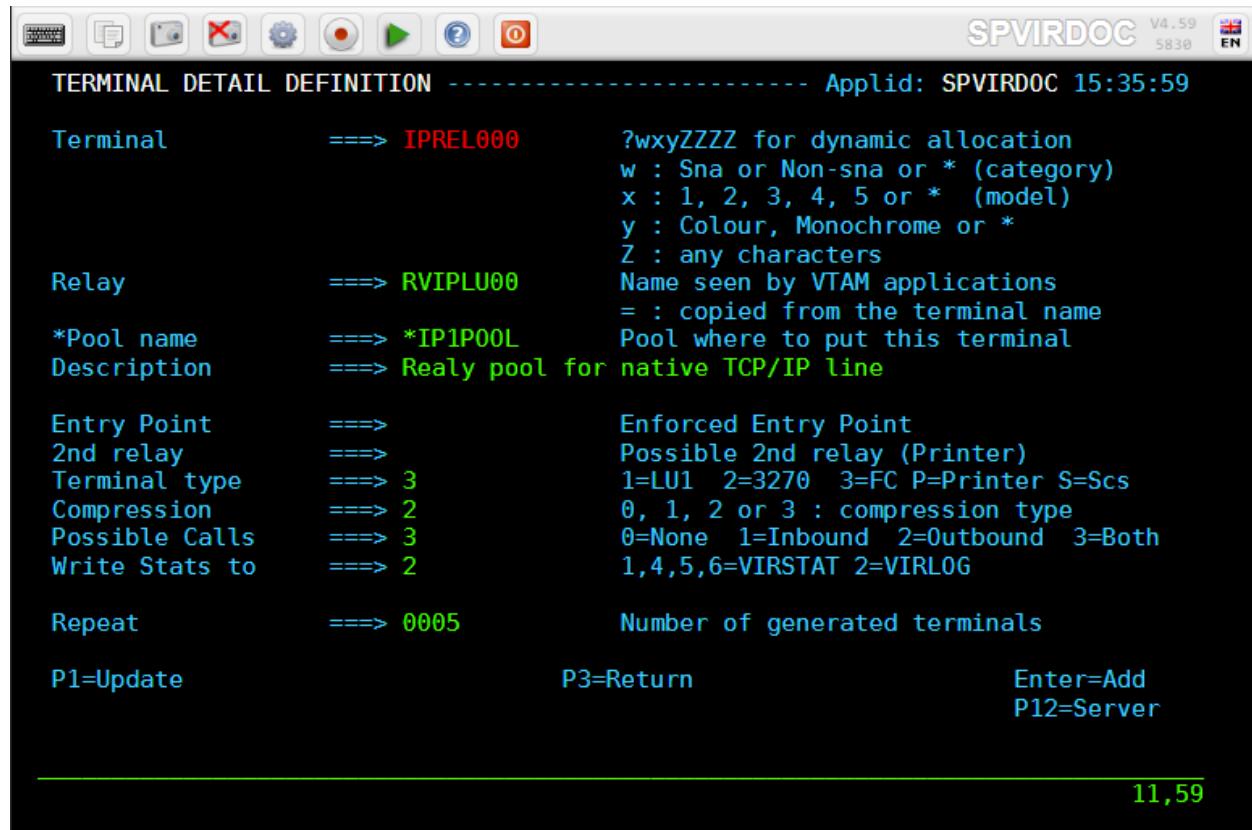
Compression Always 2.

Possible Calls Always 3.

Repeat The number of terminals defined.

2.10.4 Relay Pool

The figure below shows the definition of the NATIVE TCP/IP relay pool:



2.10.5 VTAM terminals definitions

Relay LU's must be defined to VTAM by means of APPL statements in an application major node, as shown in the following example:

```
VIRTAPPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* RVIPLU00 : VTAM relays for VIRTEL NATIVE TCP/IP terminals *
* -----
RVIPLU00 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
RVIPLU01 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
RVIPLU02 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
RVIPLU03 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
RVIPLU04 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=DLOGREL
```

VTAM definitions for NATIVE TCP/IP relay LU's

2.10.6 CICS Definitions

The NATIVE TCP/IP relay LU's must also be defined to CICS, as shown in the following example:

```

DEFINE TYPETERM(DT3650) GROUP(VIRTEL)
DESC(3650 FOR VIRTEL TCP/IP)
DEVICE(3650) SESSIONTYPE(USERPROG)
SENDSIZE(1536) RECEIVESIZE(1536)
DEFINE TERMINAL(VRnn) GROUP(VIRTEL) NETNAME(RVIPLUnn)
DESC(VIRTEL NATIVE TCP/IP TERMINAL) TYPETERM(DT3650)

```

2.10.7 Message format

All messages sent on a NATIVE TCP/IP conversation are prefixed by a 2-byte or 4-byte header. The format of the header for the NATIVE2 protocol is shown in the figure below:

Bytes	Length	Meaning
0 - 1	2	Message length in bytes, excluding the length field itself This is a 16-bit unsigned binary number in big-endian format (Most significant byte first)

Format of NATIVE2 message header

The format of the header for the NATIVE4 protocol is shown in the figure below:

Bytes	Length	Meaning
0 - 3	4	Message length in bytes, excluding the length field itself This is a 32-bit unsigned binary number in big-endian format (Most significant byte first)

Format of NATIVE4 message header

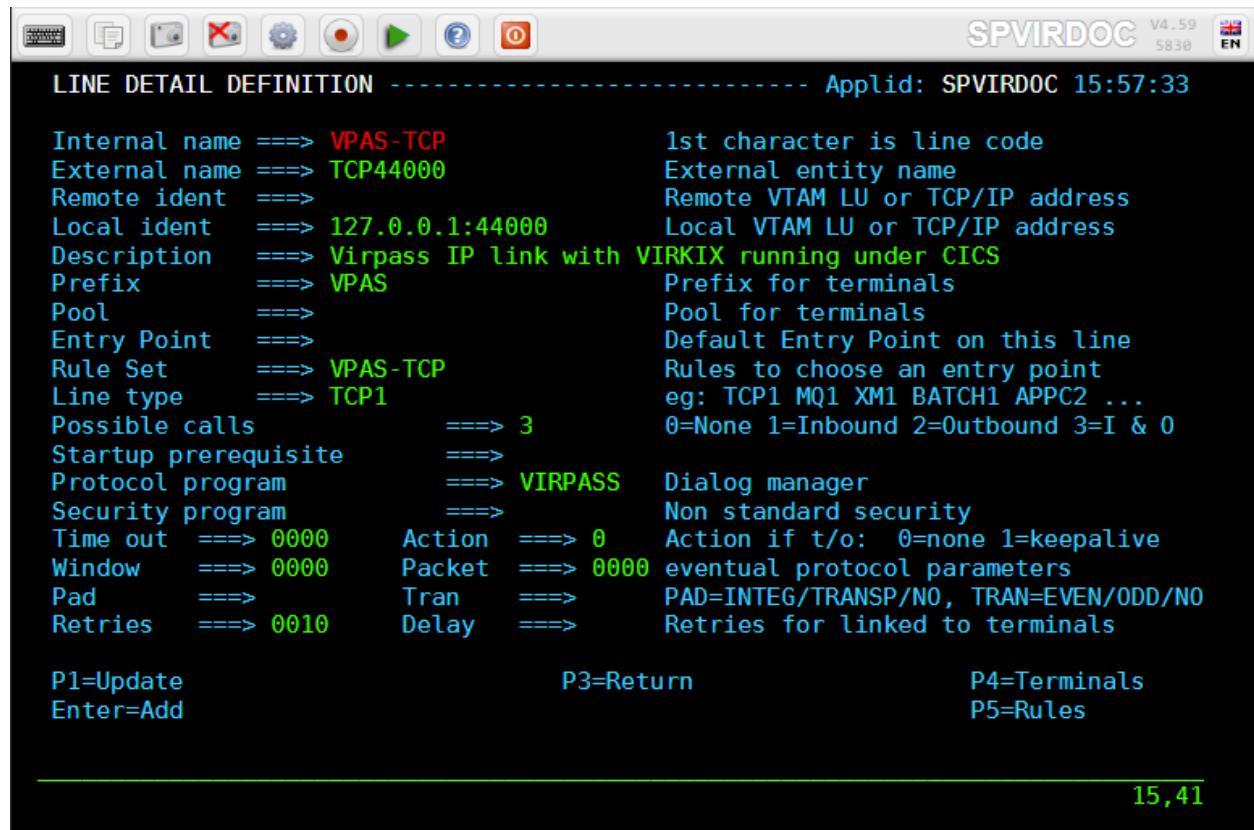
All data following the header is treated as binary data which is passed to the CICS application without translation. The maximum message length is specified in the definition of the NATIVE TCP/IP line.

The variants NATIVE2P and NATIVE4P may be used if the terminal is defined to the application as a 3270 (LU2) device. In this case, VIRTEL will add the prefix X'7D4040' to inbound messages before sending them to the application, and will remove the 3270 prefix (for example X'F1C1') from outbound messages before sending them to the terminal. The message format to the terminal is the same as described above for NATIVE2 and NATIVE4.

2.11 VIRPASS TCP line (VIRKIX)

Communication between VIRTEL and CICS can be established via APPC, TCP/IP, or Cross-memory.

This section describes communication in TCP/IP mode using the VIRKIX program on the CICS side.



2.11.1 Parameters

Remote ident Contains the IP address and port number of the CICS side of the link. It must match the fields “adresse TCP/IP” and “port serveur” of the TCP/IP interface defined in VIRKIX. This field should only be used when the VIRKIX relay type is “Virpass TCP/IP” (previously known as “Virpass Symétrique”). If the VIRKIX relay type is “Virpass Asymétrique” (previously known as “VirTEL TCP/IP”), this field must be blank, and VIRTEL will wait for VIRKIX to make the connection on the address specified in the “Local ident” field.

Local ident Must be specified. Contains the IP address and port number of the VIRTEL side of the link. Must match the fields “Adresse TCP/IP” and “port du serveur” specified in the VIRPASS interface (relay type “Virpass TCP/IP” or “Virpass Asymétrique”) defined in VIRKIX.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry point Leave blank.

Line type TCP1

Possible calls Always 3.

Protocol Always VIRPASS.

Window Always 0.

Packet Always 0.

Pad, Tran Always blank.

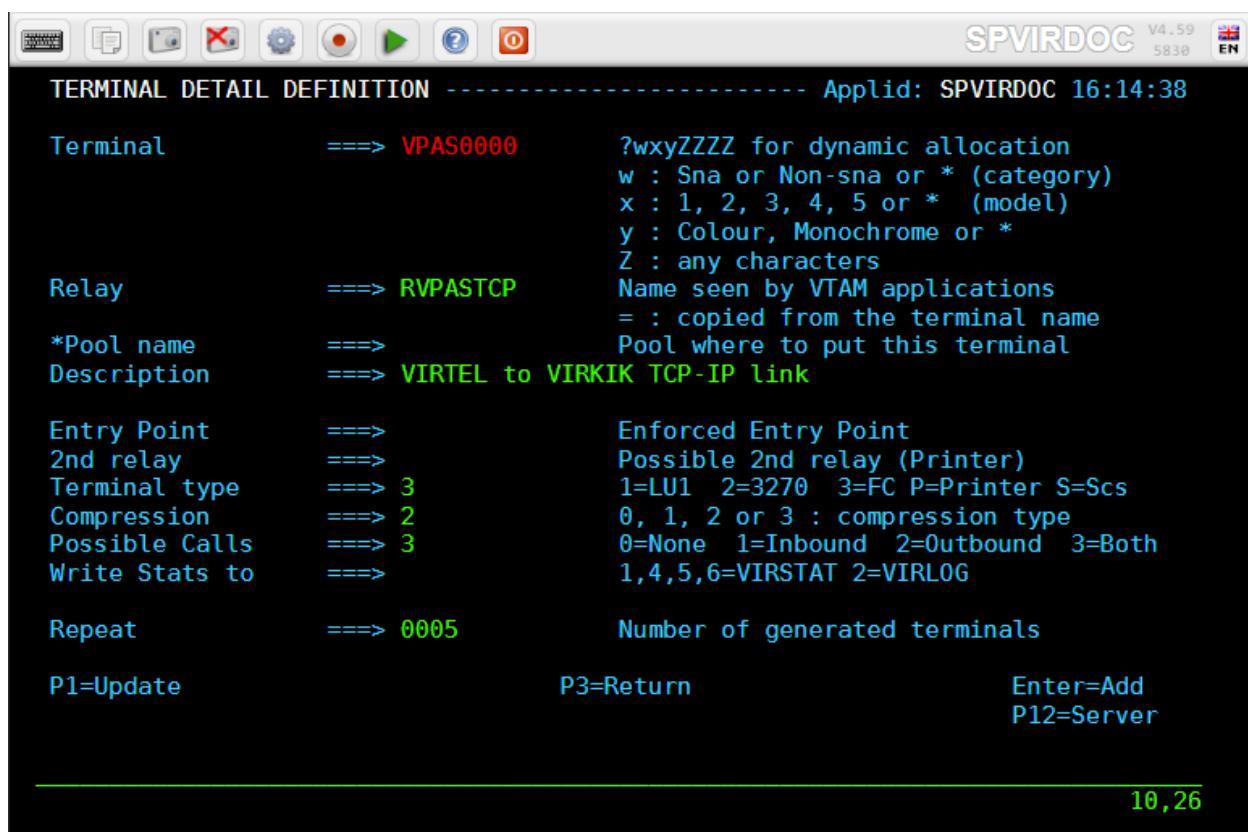
2.11.2 Terminal Definitions

A VIRPASS TCP line for communication with VIRKIX uses a single sub-group of terminals dedicated to outgoing calls. Either explicit or repeated definitions can be used.

The terminals are defined as type 3, compression 2, and the “Possible calls” field must be set to 2. The “Relay” field in the terminal definition must contain the name of the VIRKIX relay which will be activated at connection time.

In the case of incoming X25 calls this relay is defined in the VIRKIX menu “Interface X25” – “Appels X25 entrant”. The “Type of line” field in the relay definition must contain the value X25VIRPA.

Unlike other terminal types, the relay name specified here is not the name of a VTAM LU.



Terminals on a VIRPASS TCP line for VIRKIX

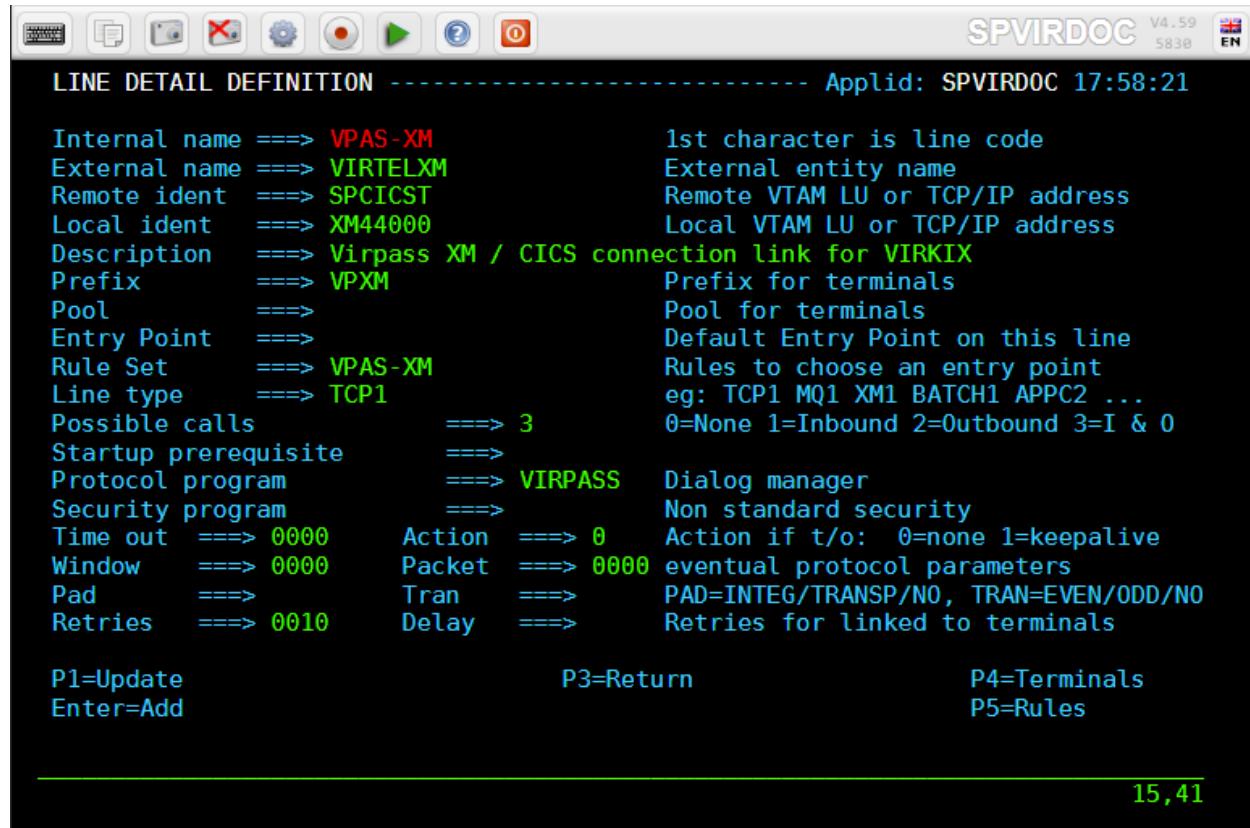
2.12 VIRPASS TCP line (VIRNT)

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.13 VIRPASS XM line (VIRKIX)

Communication between VIRTEL and CICS can be established via APPC, TCP/IP, or Cross-memory.

This section describes communications in Cross-memory (XM) mode using the VIRKIX program on the CICS side.



The screenshot shows the SPVIRDOC application interface with the title bar "SPVIRDOC V4.59 5830 EN". The main window displays the "LINE DETAIL DEFINITION" screen for an application with Applid: SPVIRDOC 17:58:21. The screen lists various parameters for the line definition:

Internal name	==> VPAS-XM	1st character is line code
External name	==> VIRTELXM	External entity name
Remote ident	==> SPCICST	Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident	==> XM44000	Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description	==> Virpass XM / CICS connection link for VIRKIX	
Prefix	==> VPXM	Prefix for terminals
Pool	==>	Pool for terminals
Entry Point	==>	Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set	==> VPAS-XM	Rules to choose an entry point
Line type	==> TCP1	eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Possible calls	==> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Startup prerequisite	==>	
Protocol program	==> VIRPASS	Dialog manager
Security program	==>	Non standard security
Time out	==> 0000	Action ==> 0 Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window	==> 0000	Packet ==> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad	==>	Tran ==> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/N0, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/N0
Retries	==> 0010	Delay ==> Retries for linked to terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
Enter=Add		P4=Terminals
		P5=Rules

15,41

2.13.1 Parameters

External name Must match the relay name of a VIRPASS cross-memory interface in VIRKIX.

Remote ident Contains the jobname of the CICS region in which VIRKIX is running. The CICS region must be in the same MVS system as VIRTEL.

Local ident Must match the field “Nom de la liaison” specified in the definition of the VIRPASS cross-memory interface in VIRKIX.

Prefix Terminal name prefix (see below).

Entry point Leave blank.

Line type XM1

Possible calls Always 3.

Protocol Always VIRPASS.

Window Always 0.

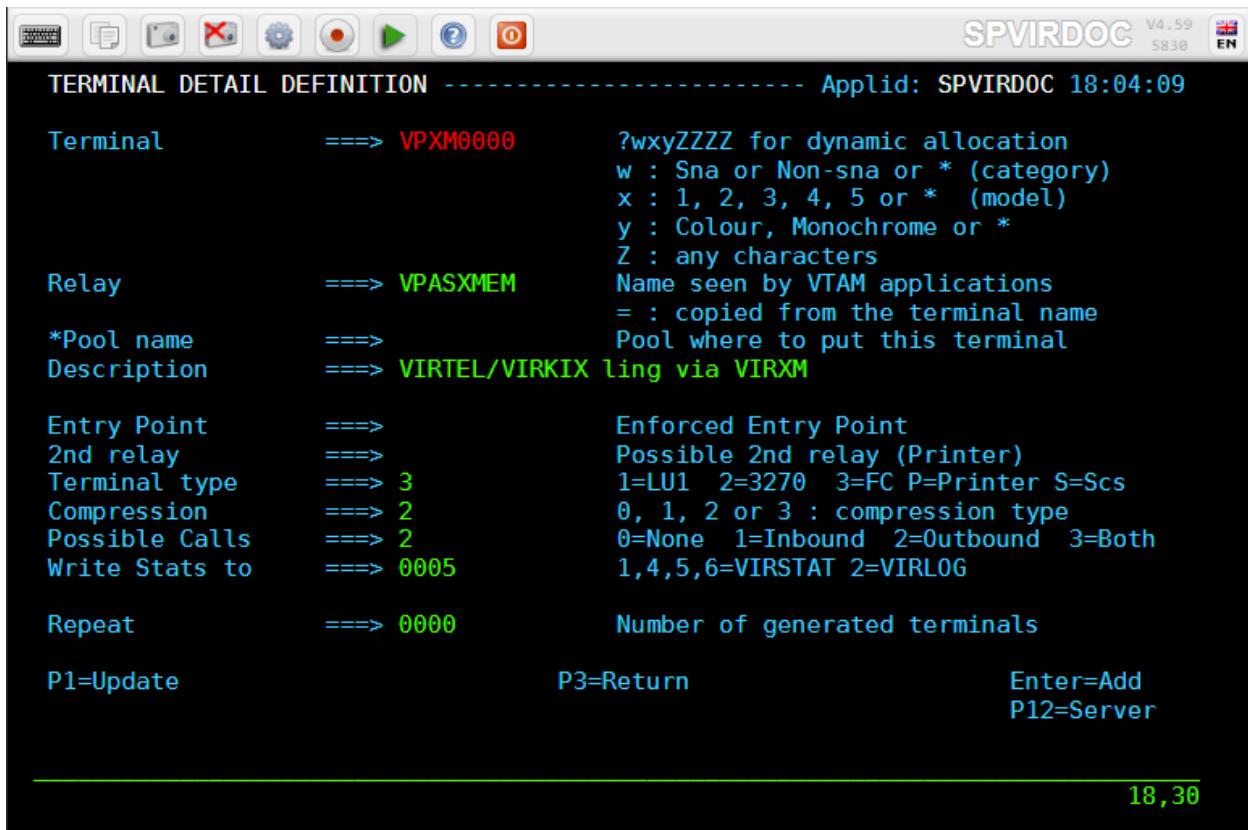
Packet Always 0.

Pad, Tran Always blank.

2.13.2 Terminal Definitions

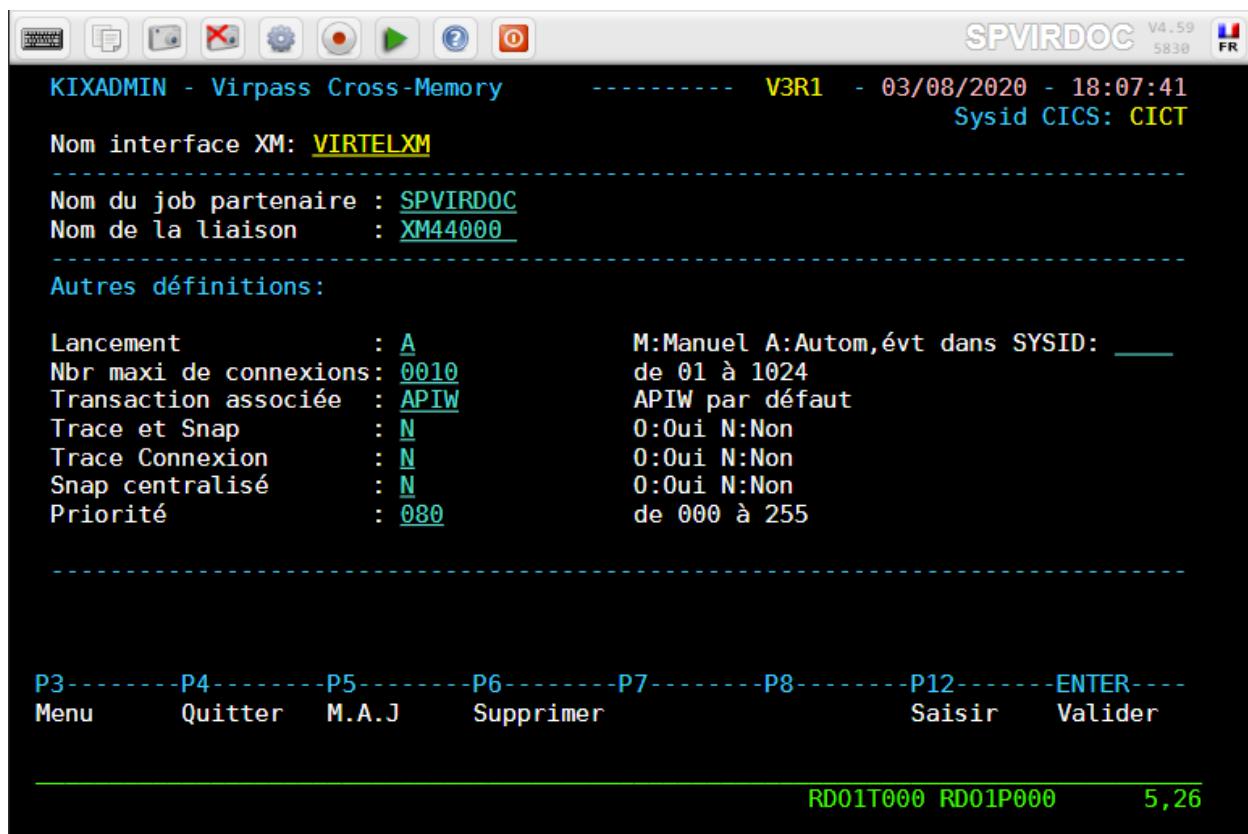
A VIRPASS XM line for communication with VIRKIX uses a single sub-group of terminals dedicated to outgoing calls. Either explicit or repeated definitions can be used. The terminals are defined as type 3, compression 2, and the “Possible calls” field must be set to 2. The “Relay” field in the terminal definition must contain the name of the VIRKIX relay which will be activated at connection time. In the case of incoming X25 calls this relay is defined in the VIRKIX menu “Interface X25” – “Appels X25 entrant”. The “Type de ligne” field in the relay definition must contain the value X25VIRPA (this is the same value as for VIRPASS TCP, which was coded as E25TCPIP in previous versions of VIRKIX).

Unlike other terminal types, the relay name specified here is not the name of a VTAM LU.



Terminals on a VIRPASS XM line for VIRKIX

A VIRPASS cross-memory connection is defined in VIRKIX by means of an entity known as a “Virpass cross-memory interface”:



VIRKIX definitions for a VIRPASS XM connection

Nom interface The name of the VIRPASS cross-memory interface (also known as the relay name or “nom relais”) must match the “external name” of the VIRPASS XM line in VIRTEL.

Nom du job partenaire Specifies the jobname of the VIRTEL STC, which must be in the same MVS system as VIRKIX.

Nom de la liaison Must match the “Local ident” of the VIRPASS XM line in VIRTEL.

Refer to the VIRKIX Configuration documentation for details of the other fields on this panel.

2.14 X25 XOT line

An XOT line establishes a connection between VIRTEL and a CISCO router. Across this type of line, VIRTEL processes incoming and outgoing calls to and from the X25 network. Activation of this type of line requires the presence of the TCP1 parameter in the VIRTCT.

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.15 X25 VIRPESIT line

A VIRPESIT line establishes a TCP/IP link between VIRTEL and a file transfer application such as CFT. A VIRPESIT line allows VIRTEL to act as an IP-to-X25 gateway for file transfer sessions using the PESIT and ETEBAC protocols. File transfer requests arriving via IP on a VIRPESIT line may be routed either to a local GATE or PCNE application, or to a remote partner via the X25 network. Similarly, file transfer requests from the X25 network or from local GATE or PCNE applications may be routed to the IP network via a VIRPESIT line.

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.16 X25 VIRNEOX line

A VIRNEOX line allows VIRTEL to act as a server for communications with application programs over a TCP/IP connection using a simplified X25-like protocol.

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.17 X25 GATE Non Fast-Connect (NFC) line

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.18 X25 GATE Fast-Connect (FastC) line

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.19 X25 AntiGATE line

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

2.20 X25 AntiPCNE line

This line définition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

VIRTEL RULES

3.1 Introduction

Each Virtel line can have a set of rules which allow the selection of an entry point for each incoming call according to the characteristics of the call and the rule criteria.

Rules are processed in alphanumeric order of name, so it is important that the name you choose guarantees the correct order for rule processing. As soon as a match is found within the defined rule criteria the designated entry point will be assigned to the caller.

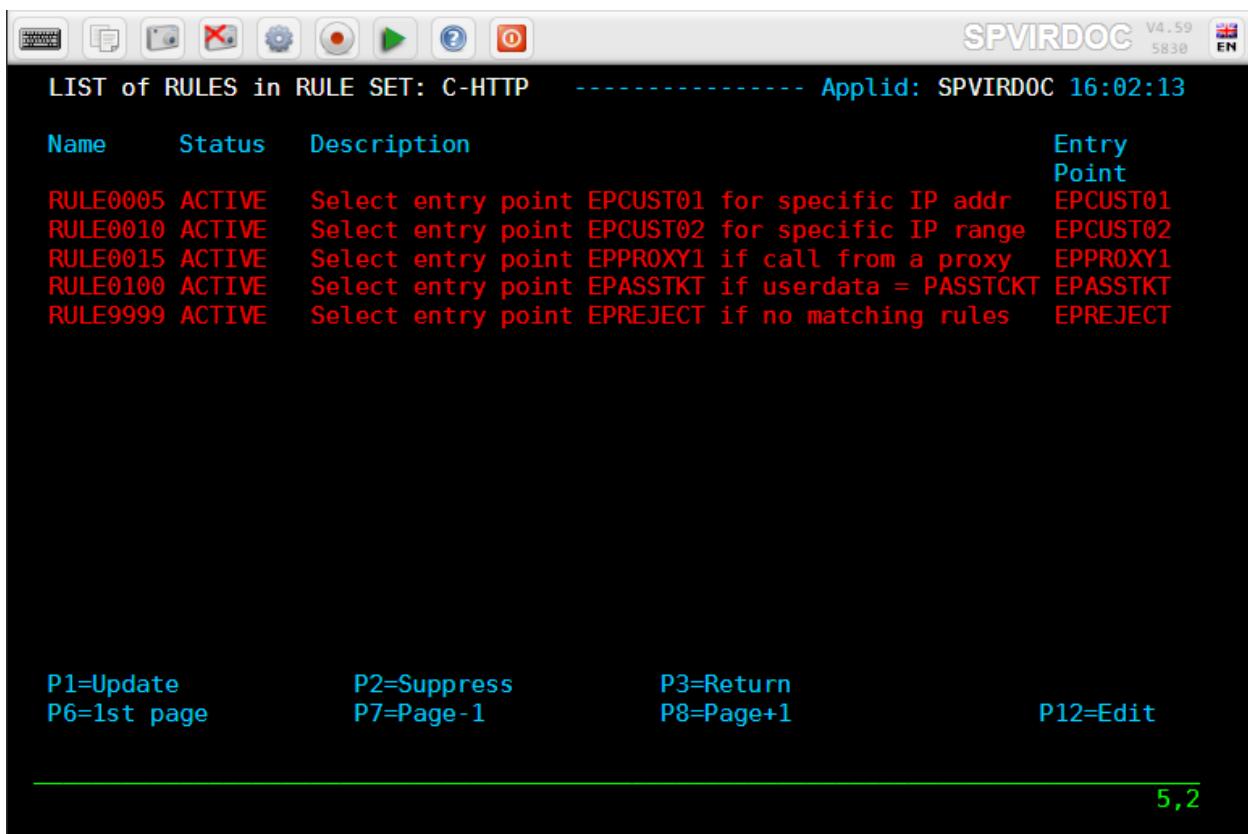
Rules are useful to force or nail Virtel Relay LU names or to establish different application lists depending on the incoming IP address. The last rule should be the “default” rule which is used to catch callers that didn’t match with previous rules. If no default rule is present then the caller will drop through the rule processing and the connection will be closed.

See the “How-To” guide ‘Virtel LU Nailing’ for examples on how to define and use Virtel Rules.

3.2 Management

3.2.1 Summary Display

Press [PF5] on the line detail definition screen to display the summary list of rules associated with the line:



Rule Summary Display

Field Contents

Name The name of the rule. Rules associated with a line are processed in alphanumeric order.

Status Indicates whether the rule is ACTIVE or INACTIVE. To change the status, display the detailed definition of the rule [PF12], then press [PF4] to activate, or [PF5] to deactivate.

Description Free-form description of the rule.

Entry Point Name of the entry point which will be assigned to incoming calls whose characteristics match this rule.

Navigation

Search Type the name (or partial name) of the required entity on the first line under the heading “Name”, then press [Enter].

[PF6] Return to the first page of the list.

[PF7] Display the previous page.

[PF8] Display the next page.

Modifying a rule - Pressing [PF12] at the Rules screen displays the rule detail definition screen. Type the desired modifications into the appropriate fields then press [PF1]. Multiple definitions can be modified at the same time. If the modification affects a field not displayed on the summary screen, first position the cursor on the definition concerned, then press [PF12] to access the definition detail screen.

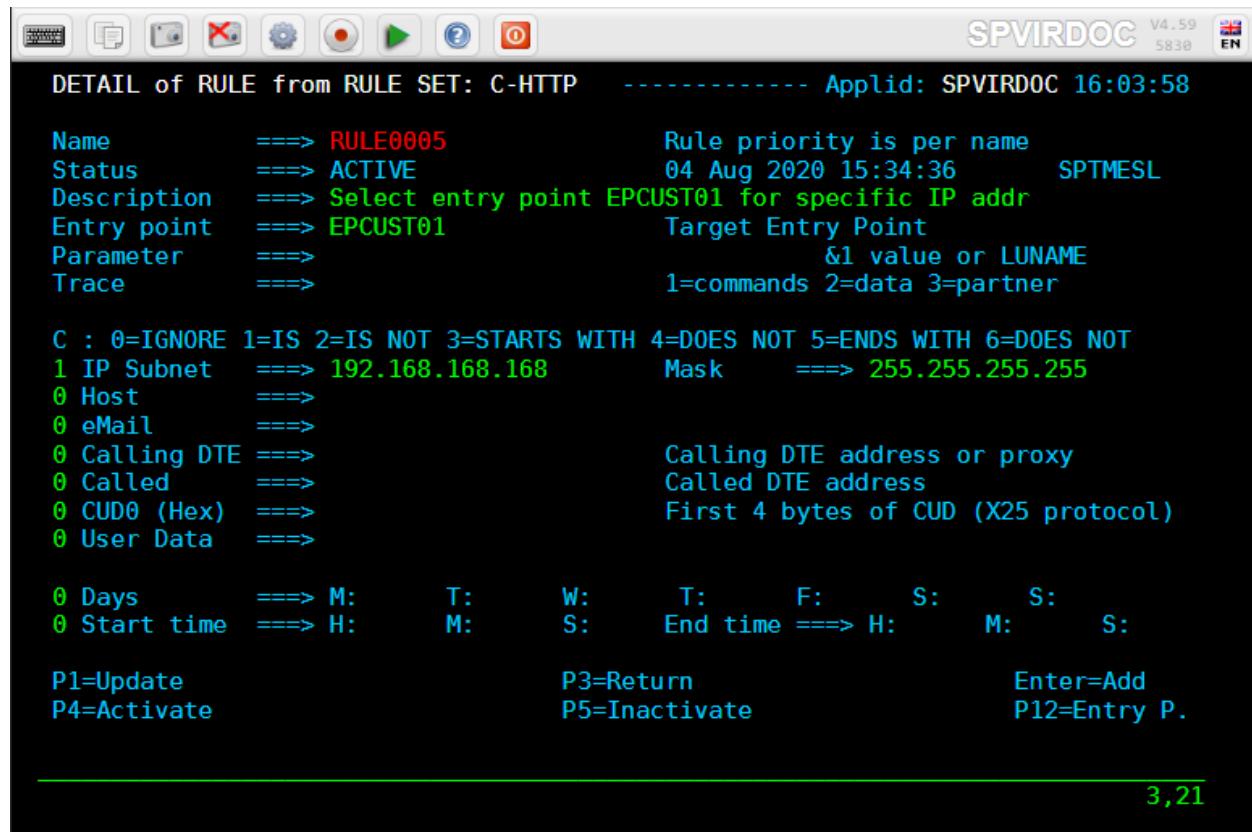
Warning: Modifications are not recognized until you press the [PF1] key. Certain modifications require a restart of the VIRTEL system.

Deleting a rule - In the summary screen position the cursor under the name of the entity to be deleted, then press [PF2]. The line associated with the entity to be deleted then appears highlighted, accompanied by the message CONFIRM DELETE. Then press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each entity to be deleted.

Adding a rule - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition from a blank screen.

3.2.2 Detail Display

To display or update the detailed definition of an entity, place the cursor on the name of the entity within the summary display and press [PF12]. The detail definition screen will then be displayed.



Rule detail definition screen

3.2.3 Parameters

Name The name of the rule. **This name must be unique across all rules in the system.** The rules associated with a line are processed in alphanumeric order of this name. The rule name thus determines the priority of the rule within the line.

Status Indicates whether the rule is ACTIVE or INACTIVE. To activate a rule, press [PF4]. To deactivate a rule, press [PF5].

Description Description of the rule. This information is not used.

Entry point The name of the entry point which will be assigned to the incoming call if this rule matches the call characteristics.

Note: The value \$COOKIE\$ in the “Entry Point” field has a special meaning. This value is meaningful only in rules attached to an HTTP line. If a rule with this value is found, and if the HTTP request contains a cookie named VirtelRef, then the value of the cookie is used to identify the user, and VIRTEL switches to the rule set associated with the user, instead of processing the remainder of the rules attached to the line. If the HTTP request does not contain a cookie named VirtelRef, VIRTEL ignores this rule, and continues with the next rule attached to the line. See “Correspondent management” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

Parameter (optional) A parameter which will be associated with incoming calls matched by this rule. This parameter can be used in the following cases:

- the value of the parameter can be retrieved in a connection script via the ‘&1’ variable (see “Connection – Disconnection Scripts”)
- For an HTTP line: the parameter can specify the LU name to be used as the VTAM relay for an incoming HTTP call. The relay terminals on the HTTP line must be defined in a logical pool (see “Terminals on an HTTP line”).

An asterisk at the end of the LU name signifies that the parameter is a prefix rather than a specific value.

For an HTTP line: The value \$URL\$ in the “Parameter” field indicates that the actual parameter value will be obtained from the userdata field of the URL (see “VIRTEL URL formats” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide).

Note: The value \$COOKIE\$ in the “Parameter” field has a special meaning. This value is meaningful only in rules attached to an HTTP line. If a rule with this value is found, and if the HTTP request contains a cookie named VirtelRef, and the value of the cookie matches a record in the VIRTEL correspondent file (see “Correspondent management” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide), then VIRTEL selects this rule and uses the VTAM LU name contained in the correspondent record as the VTAM relay for the incoming HTTP call. If the HTTP request does not contain a cookie named VirtelRef, or if the value of the cookie does not match any user in the correspondent file, then VIRTEL ignores this rule, and continues with the next rule attached to the line.

Trace Trace indicator for incoming calls which match this rule.

Blank No trace.

1 Trace X25 commands.

2 Trace X25 data.

12 Trace X25 commands + data.

123 Where the call is rerouted via an external server, the trace will also be applied on the line used for the outgoing call.

Note: Each of the following fields is preceded by a comparison indicator. The comparison indicator can be 0 (ignore), 1 (must equal), 2 (must not equal), 3 (must begin with), 4 (must not begin with), 5 (must end with), or 6 (must not end with). An incoming call matches this rule if all of the fields (except those whose comparison indicator is 0) match the corresponding characteristic of the call. A rule with all its comparison indicators set to 0 is an unconditional rule, which matches all incoming calls not matched by a higher priority rule.

IP Subnet For an HTTP or SMTP line: The originating IP address or subnet address.

Mask Indicates which bit positions in the IP address form the subnet address. For example, IP address 192.168.168.000 combined with mask 255.255.255.0 corresponds to addresses 192.168.168.0 through 192.168.168.255. 192.168.168.255 represent the broadcast address while 192.168.168.1 through 192.168.168.254 represent 254 possible hosts addresses.

Note: See RULE0005 sample below for such type of rule.

HTTP Host For an HTTP line: The host name (possibly followed by a port number) supplied by the browser in the *Host*: HTTP header when connecting to VIRTEL. For example, www.virtel.com:21000

For an SMTP line: The recipient's email address.

Note: For an HTTP line, in the case of requests forwarded by a reverse proxy (bastion host), the rule compares the value of this field with the *X-Forwarded-Host*: header (if present) instead of the *Host*: header.

eMail For an SMTP line: The sender's email address.

Calling DTE

For an HTTP line: The IP address of the reverse proxy (bastion host) which forwarded the request on behalf of the originating user. If this field is present in the rule, and matches the source IP address of the HTTP request, then a “forwarding header” (see below) in the HTTP request is considered to contain the real originating IP address. This real originating IP address will be the one used for testing against the “IP Subnet” and “Mask” fields (if any) in the rule. If the rule matches, then message VIRHT56I will be issued and the call will henceforth be considered to have originated from the real originating IP address for the purposes of console messages and VIRLOG.

VIRTEL recognizes the following “forwarding headers” (in order of priority):

- iv-remote-address:
- X-Forwarded-For:

Note: When the “Calling DTE” field contains an IP address, leading zeroes must be included where necessary. For example, 192.168.000.001.

Reverse proxy addresses may also be specified in the **HTFORWD** parameter of the VIRTCT (see “Parameters of the VIRTCT” in the VIRTEL Installation Guide).

Called Previously used for X25 line, this parameter no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

User Data For an HTTP line: The contents of the userdata field of the URL (see “VIRTEL URL formats” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide). See RULE0100 below for a sample of such type of rule.

The following fields indicate the time periods during which this rule is active. The comparison indicator can be 0, 1, or 2.

Days The days of the week on which this rule applies. Applicable days are marked by an ‘X’.

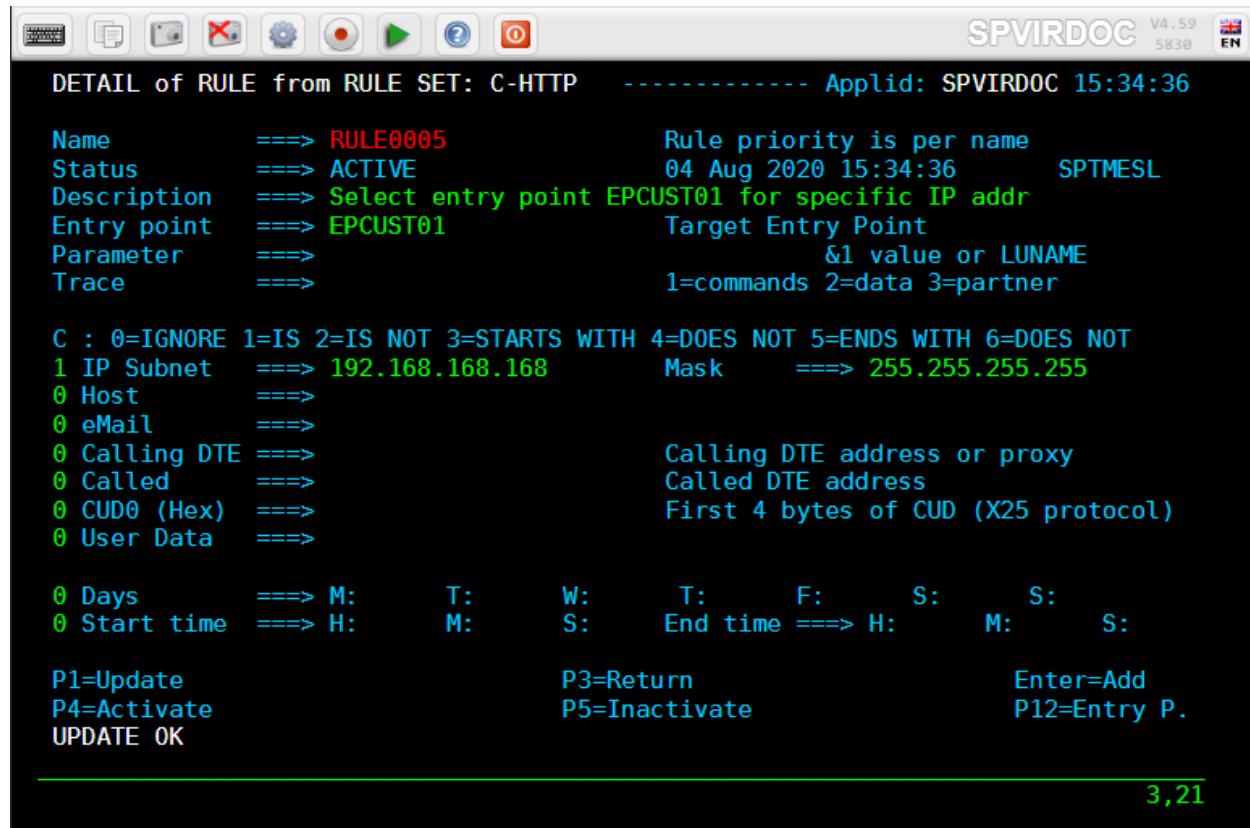
Start Time / End Time Indicates the period of operation of this rule for each applicable day.

3.3 Samples

The following examples of rules are provided in the SPVRULE0 member present in the library “*yourqual.DOCUMENT.VIRCONF.SYSIN*”.

3.3.1 Rule for a specific IP address

The following C-HTTP line rule redirects the call to the EPCUST01 entry point if the call comes from a client station with an IP address of 192.168.168.168.



SPVIRDOC V4.59
5830 EN

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:34:36

Name	====> RULE0005	Rule priority is per name
Status	====> ACTIVE	04 Aug 2020 15:34:36 SPTMESL
Description	====> Select entry point EPCUST01 for specific IP addr	
Entry point	====> EPCUST01	Target Entry Point
Parameter	====>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT		
1 IP Subnet	====> 192.168.168.168	Mask =====> 255.255.255.255
0 Host	====>	
0 eMail	====>	
0 Calling DTE	====>	Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data	====>	
0 Days	====> M:	T: W: T: F: S: S:
0 Start time	====> H: M: S:	End time =====> H: M: S:
P1=Update P4=Activate UPDATE OK		P3=Return P5=Inactivate
		Enter=Add P12=Entry P.

3,21

Rule detail definition for an IP-Subnet / Mask criteria

3.3.2 Rule for a IP address range

The following C-HTTP line rule redirects the call to the EPCUST02 entry point if the call comes from a client station within an address range of 192.168.168.1 to 192.168.168.254.

Note: If RULE0005 is active, it will be effective for the client with IP address 192.168.168.168. This client will never be redirected to the EPCUST02 entry point.

SPVIRDOC V4.59
5830 EN

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:59:10

Name	====> RULE0010	Rule priority is per name
Status	====> ACTIVE	04 Aug 2020 15:40:08 SPTMESL
Description	====> Select entry point EPCUST02 for specific IP range	
Entry point	====> EPCUST02	Target Entry Point
Parameter	====>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT		
1 IP Subnet	====> 192.168.168.000	Mask =====> 255.255.255.000
0 Host	====>	
0 eMail	====>	
0 Calling DTE	====>	Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data	====>	
0 Days	====> M:	T: W: T: F: S: S:
0 Start time	====> H: M: S:	End time =====> H: M: S: S:
P1=Update P4=Activate		P3=Return P5=Inactivate
		Enter=Add P12=Entry P.

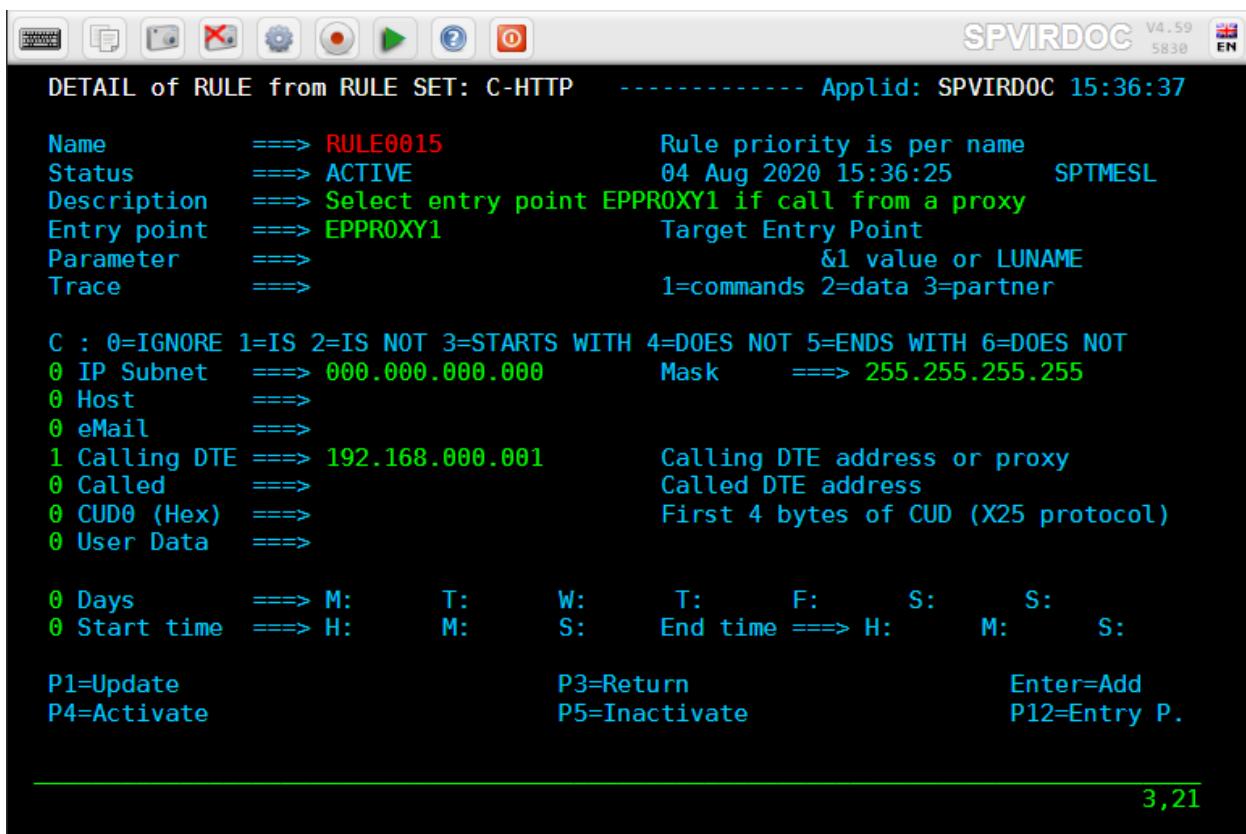
3,21

Rule detail definition for an IP address range

3.3.3 Rule for a proxy server

The following C-HTTP line rule redirects the call to the EPPROXY1 entry point for any call that has passed through a proxy with IP address 192.168.0.1.

Note: If RULE0005 and/or RULE0010 are active, and if client call with IP address 192.168.168.nnn passed through the concerned proxy server, RULE0005 and RULE0010 will be effective. Such client will never be redirected to the EPPROXY entry point.



SPVIRDOC V4.59
5830 EN

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:36:37

Name	====> RULE0015	Rule priority is per name
Status	====> ACTIVE	04 Aug 2020 15:36:25 SPTMESL
Description	====> Select entry point EPPROXY1 if call from a proxy	
Entry point	====> EPPROXY1	Target Entry Point
Parameter	====>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT		
0 IP Subnet	====> 000.000.000.000	Mask =====> 255.255.255.255
0 Host	====>	
0 eMail	====>	
1 Calling DTE	====> 192.168.000.001	Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data	====>	
0 Days	====> M:	T: W: T: F: S: S:
0 Start time	====> H: M: S:	End time =====> H: M: S:
P1=Update P4=Activate		P3=Return P5=Inactivate
		Enter=Add P12=Entry P.

3,21

Rule detail definition for an proxy server

3.3.4 Rule for an URL userdata parameter

The following C-HTTP line rule redirects the call to the EPASSTKT entry point for any call that has passed PASSTCKT user data as a URL parameter.

```
http://ipaddr:port/pathname/pagename+tranname+PASSTCKT
```

Note: If RULE0005 and/or RULE0010/RULE0100 are active, and if client call with IP address 192.168.168.nnn or passed through the concerned proxy server, RULE0005 or RULE0010 or RULE0100 will be effective. Such client will never be redirected to the EPASSTKT entry point.

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:56:52

Name	====> RULE0100	Rule priority is per name
Status	====> ACTIVE	04 Aug 2020 15:56:48 SPTMESL
Description	====> Select entry point EPASSTKT if userdata = PASSTCKT	
Entry point	====> EPASSTKT	Target Entry Point
Parameter	====>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT		
0 IP Subnet	====> 000.000.000.000	Mask =====> 255.255.255.255
0 Host	====>	
0 eMail	====>	
0 Calling DTE	====>	Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
1 User Data	====> PASSTCKT	
0 Days	====> M: T: W: T: F: S: S:	
0 Start time	====> H: M: S: End time =====> H: M: S: S:	
P1=Update P4=Activate		P3=Return P5=Inactivate
Enter=Add P12=Entry P.		

3,21

Rule detail definition to select an entry point depending on a userdata URL parameter

3.3.5 Rejection rule

The following C-HTTP line rule redirects the call to the EPREJECT entry point if none of the previous rules (RULE0005 to RULE0100) were satisfied by the call request.

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:00:15

Name	====> RULE9999	Rule priority is per name
Status	====> ACTIVE	04 Aug 2020 15:43:27 SPTMESL
Description	====> Select entry point EPREJECT if no matching rules	
Entry point	====> EPREJECT	Target Entry Point
Parameter	====>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner

C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT
 0 IP Subnet ==> 000.000.000.000 Mask ==> 255.255.255.255
 0 Host ==>
 0 eMail ==>
 0 Calling DTE ==> Calling DTE address or proxy
 0 Called ==> Called DTE address
 0 CUD0 (Hex) ==> First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
 0 User Data ==>

 0 Days ==> M: T: W: T: F: S: S:
 0 Start time ==> H: M: S: End time ==> H: M: S:

 P1=Update P3=Return Enter=Add
 P4=Activate P5=Inactivate P12=Entry P.

3,21

Rule detail definition to reject a call

The EPREJECT entry point contains only one transaction that displays a page named EPREJECT.HTML stored in the CLI-DIR directory.

ENTRY POINT DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 14:43:58

Name	====> EPREJECT	Name this ENTRY POINT (LOGON DATA)
Description	====> Reject if call not accepted by a rule	
Transactions	====> REJ	Prefix for associated transactions
Last page	====>	Displayed at end of session
Transparency	====>	Server types NOT to emulate
Time out	====> 0001 minutes	Maximum inactive time
Do if timeout	====> 0	0=logoff 1=bip+logoff 2=anti pad
Emulation	====> HTML	Type of terminal:
HOST4WEB	: program driven	HTML : Web Browser
SCENARIO	: script driven	EMAIL : SMTP client
Directory for scenarios	====>	If scenarios in VSAM, not LOADLIB
Signon program	====> VIR0020H	Controls user name and password
Menu program	====> VIR0021A	List of transactions
Identification scenario	====>	eg XML identification
Type 3 compression	====>	Discover typical screens (Virtel/PC)
Mandatory identification	====>	(PC or minitel)
3270 swap key	====>	eg P24
Extended colors	====> E	E: extended X: extended + DBCS

P1=Update P3=Return P4=Transactions
Enter=Add

3,21

EPREJECT entry point definition

TRANSACTION DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:03:19

Internal name	====> REJ-00	To associate with an entry point name	
External name	====> EPREJECT	Name displayed on user menu	
Description	====> Connection refused - Display EPREJECT.HTML page		
Application	====> CLI-DIR Option	====>	
PassTicket	====> Name	====> 0=no 1=yes 2=unsigned	
Application type	====> 4	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE	
Pseudo-terminals	====> CLL0C	Prefix of name of partner terminals	
Logmode	====>	Specify when LOGMODE must be changed	
How started	====> 2	1=menu 2=sub-menu 3=auto	
Security	====> 0	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML	
H4W commands ?	====>	0=no 1=yes 2;if2VIRTEL 4=auto	
Logon message	====>		
TI0A at logon	====> EPREJECT.HTML		
TI0A at logoff	====>		
Initial Scenario	====>	Final Scenario	====>
Input Scenario	====>	Output Scenario	====>

P1=Update P3=Return P12=Server

5,68

REJ-00 transaction definition

Warning: When you redirect a call using a rule, **you must ensure** that the prefixes of the terminals associated with each transaction attached to the redirected entry point are compatible with the prefix of the terminals associated with the line receiving the call.

TERMINALS

4.1 Introduction

A terminal is an essential element ensuring the link and the integrity of exchanges between a user session located on the LINE side and a TRANSACTION. There are two categories of terminals:

- So-called **RELAY** terminals used **ONLY** by type-1 transactions associated with a VTAM application. Each terminal in this first sub-group represents one session between VIRTEL and a host application; in this sub-group, either a relay must be configured for each terminal, or the sub-group must refer to “logical pool of relays”. Whichever method is chosen, each relay must be defined by an APPL statement in a VTAM node of type APPL. Either explicit or repeated terminal definitions may be used.
- So-called **LOCAL** terminals are used by all non type-1 transactions, for example transaction associated with VIRTEL modules or to a directory hosted in a VSAM file.

All terminals, whether physical or virtual, using the services of VIRTEL must be referenced. This chapter describes the group of functions associated with the management of the terminals as well as their existing relationship to other administration functions, for example, management of lines or entry points.

4.2 Terminal Management Sub-Application

This sub-application enables the definition of VIRTEL terminals either in the form of a pool, or individually. When the sub-application is started, it first presents a summary of existing terminal definitions presented in alphanumeric order.

The terminal management sub-application is accessed by pressing [PF2] in the Configuration Menu, or [PF5] in the Sub Application Menu, or from the Multi-session Menu via a transaction referencing module VIR0023. This sub-application allows for the management of the parameters associated with each terminal under control of VIRTEL. This sub-application is also accessible by pressing [PF4] from the line management sub-application.

Note: VIRTEL version 4.0 introduces the concepts of dynamic repetition and logical pools. In the remainder of this chapter, the terms “entity”, “terminal entry” and “terminal” all refer to the concept of a terminal, a dynamic pool of terminals or a repeating pool of terminals.

4.2.1 Security

When security is active, access to the terminal management menu from the Configuration Menu or the Sub-Application Menu is controlled by the resource \$\$TERM\$\$. When this menu is accessed via a transaction, the rules governing the security management of transactions will apply. Security management is described in chapter 4 of the VIRTEL Technical Documentation.

4.2.2 Summary Display

The first screen displayed by the terminal management sub-application shows a summary of existing definitions in alphanumeric order. A complete description of each field is given in the following paragraphs. Place the cursor under an entry a press [PF12] to display the terminal details.

By default, when installing the VIRTEL web access suite, two HTTP lines are predefined. Each of these lines uses its own subset of terminals. The terminals with prefix “CL” belong to line C-HTTP, while the terminals with prefix “DE” belong to line W-HTTP. Both RELAY groups share the same pool represented by the yellow square. This list was displayed by pressing [PF2] at the Configuration Menu.

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
CLLOC000	0050			3	3		
CLVTA000	0080	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
DELOC000	0050			3	3		
DEVT A000	0016	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
W2HIM000	0096	RHTIM000		S	1		
W2HIP000	0096	RHTIP000		P	1		
W2HTP000	0096	RHTVT000		3	3	*W2HPOOL	RHTIM000

P1=Update
 P7=Page - 1
 DELETE OK

P2=Delete
 P8=Page+1

P3=Return
 P12=Details

P6=1st Page

12,3

Terminals associated with HTTP lines

For line C-HTTP, the first sub-group consists of terminals CLLOC000-049 without a relay. The second sub-group consists of terminals CLVTA000-079 which refer to a logical pool of relays named *W2HPOOL.

For line W-HTTP, the first sub-group is DELOC000-009, and the second sub-group is DEVT A000-015 which also refers to the logical pool named *W2HPOOL.

The logical pool itself consists of terminals W2HTP000-015 whose relay LU names are REHVT000-079. The logical pool also refers to a pool of associated printer LU's. The printers are defined with terminal names W2HIP000-079 and LU names REHIP000-079. In each case, the terminal name is an internal name used only within VIRTEL, while the relay name is an LU name defined by a VTAM APPL statement. The relay LU name is the name by which the terminal is known to CICS or other VTAM applications.

Note: Pressing [PF4] from an HTTP line detail definition screen will display only the list of associated terminals whose prefix matches the prefix specified in the line definition. If the terminals refer to a logical pool, the pool itself may have a different prefix and will therefore not be displayed. In this case you can press [PF2] at the Configuration Menu to display a list of all terminals.

4.2.3 Navigation

In browse, alter, or delete mode, it is possible to scroll the list of terminals under the control of VIRTEL.

Search Type the name (or partial name) of the required entity on the first line under the heading “Terminal”, then press [Enter].

[PF6] Return to the first page of the list.

[PF7] Display the previous page.

[PF8] Display the next page.

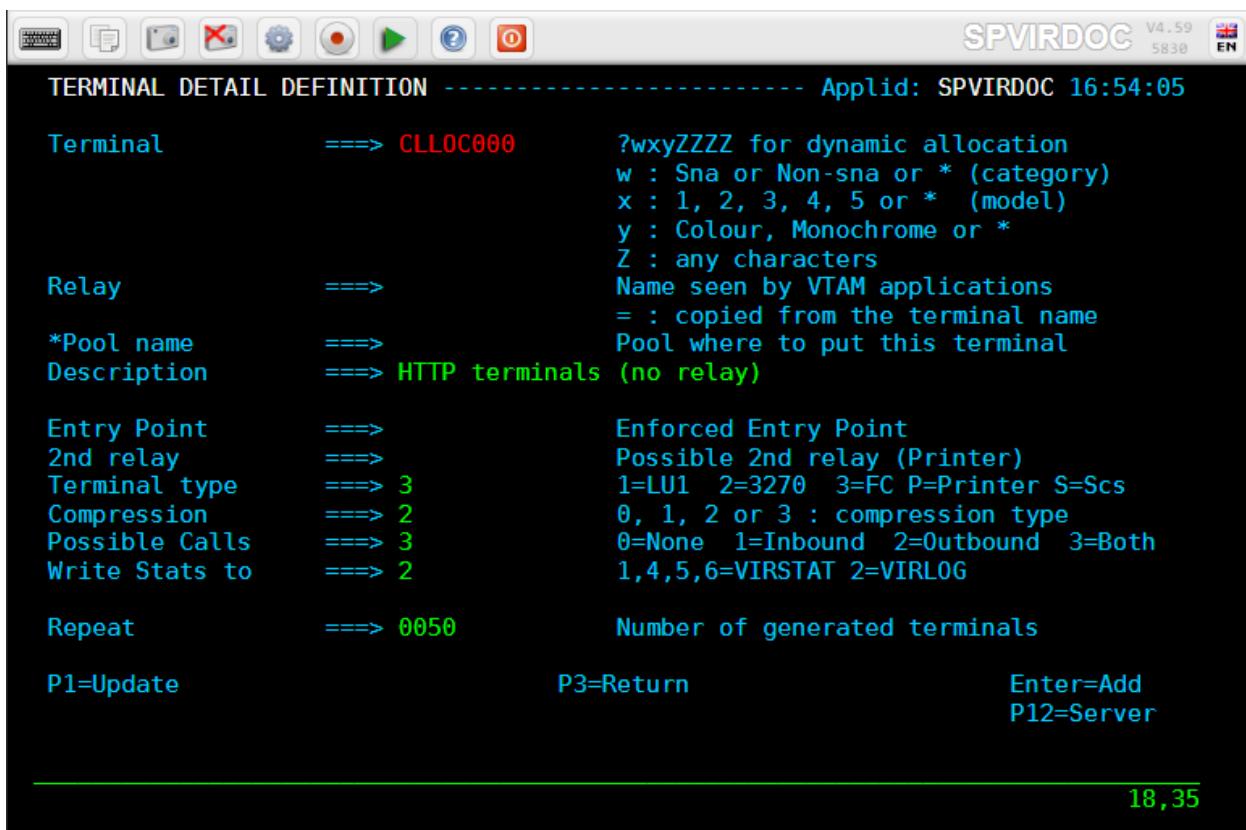
Modifying a terminal entry - Pressing [PF12] at the summary screen displays the Terminal Detail Definition screen, which allows creation of a new terminal definition, or modification of an existing definition. Type the desired modifications into the appropriate fields then press [PF1]. Multiple definitions can be modified at the same time. If the modification affects a field not displayed on the summary screen, first position the cursor on the definition concerned, then press [PF12] to access the definition detail screen. Modifications are not recognized until you press the [PF1] key. Certain modifications require a restart of the VIRTEL system.

Adding a terminal entry - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition.

Deleting a terminal entry - Position the cursor under the name of the entry to be deleted, then press [PF2]. The line associated with the terminal to be deleted then appears highlighted, accompanied by the message CONFIRM DELETE. Then press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each entry to be deleted.

4.2.4 Detail Display

Pressing [PF12] at the summary screen displays the Terminal Detail Definition screen. From within the detail display parameters can be updated.

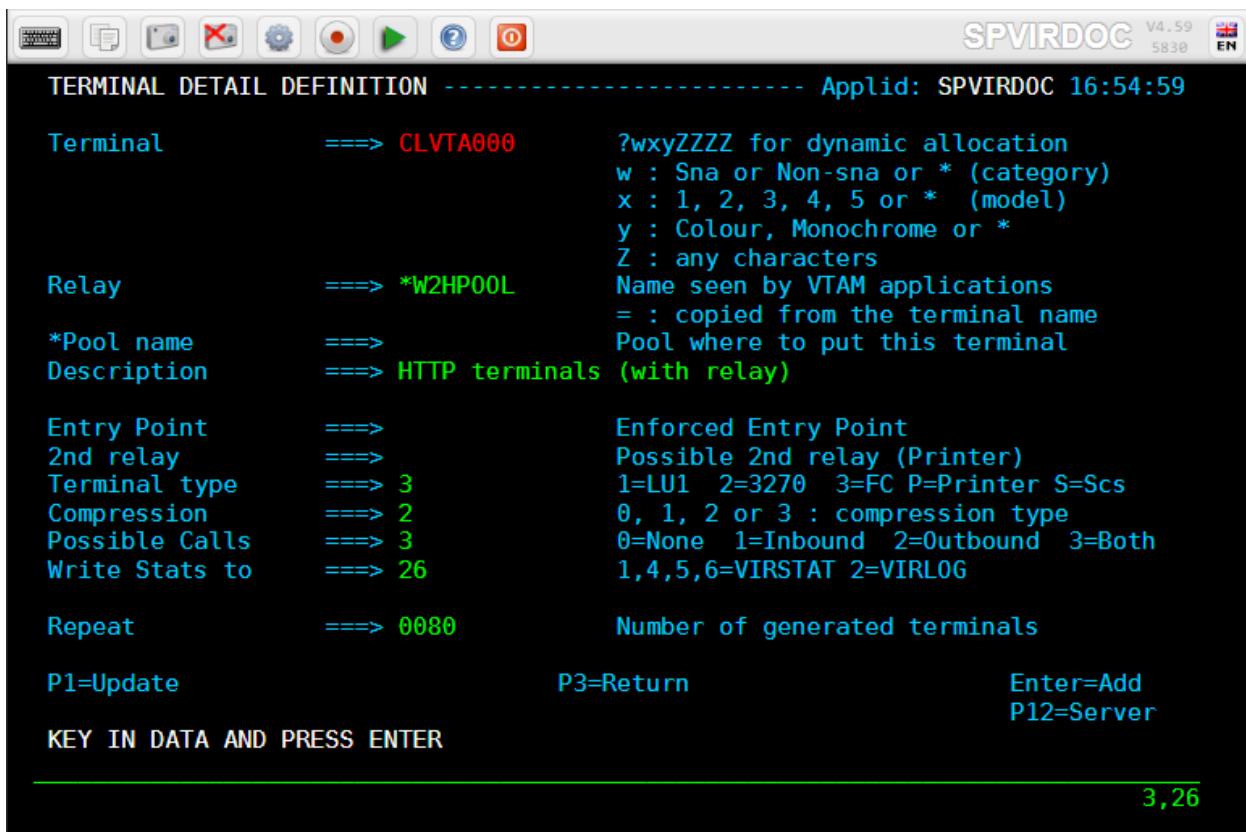


TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:54:05

Terminal	====> CLLOC000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	====>	Name seen by VTAM applications
*Pool name	====>	= copied from the terminal name
Description	====> HTTP terminals (no relay)	Pool where to put this terminal
Entry Point	====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	====>	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	====> 2	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	====> 0050	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
		Enter=Add P12=Server

18,35

HTTP terminals without relay

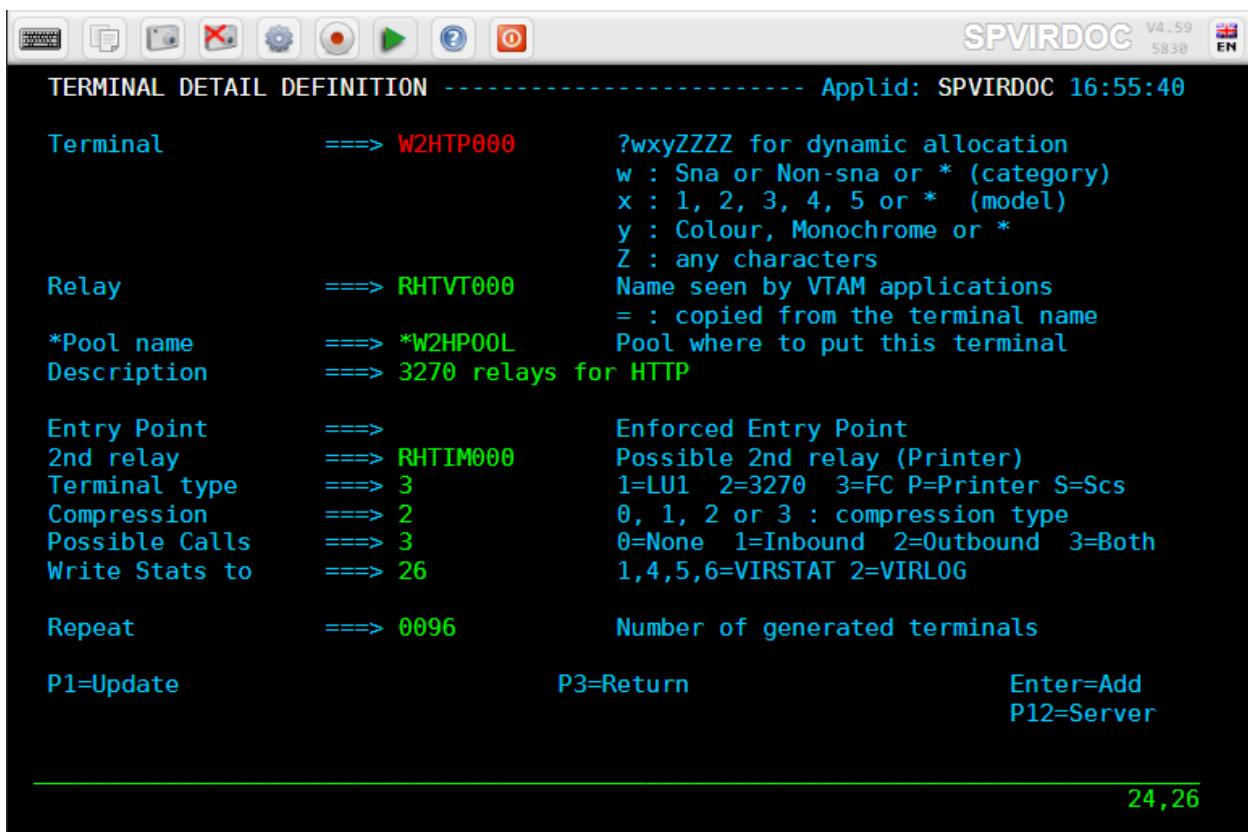


TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:54:59

Terminal	====> CLVTA000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	====> *W2HP00L	Name seen by VTAM applications = : copied from the terminal name
*Pool name	====>	Pool where to put this terminal
Description	====> HTTP terminals (with relay)	(with relay)
Entry Point	====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	====>	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	====> 26	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	====> 0080	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
		Enter=Add P12=Server

KEY IN DATA AND PRESS ENTER

3,26

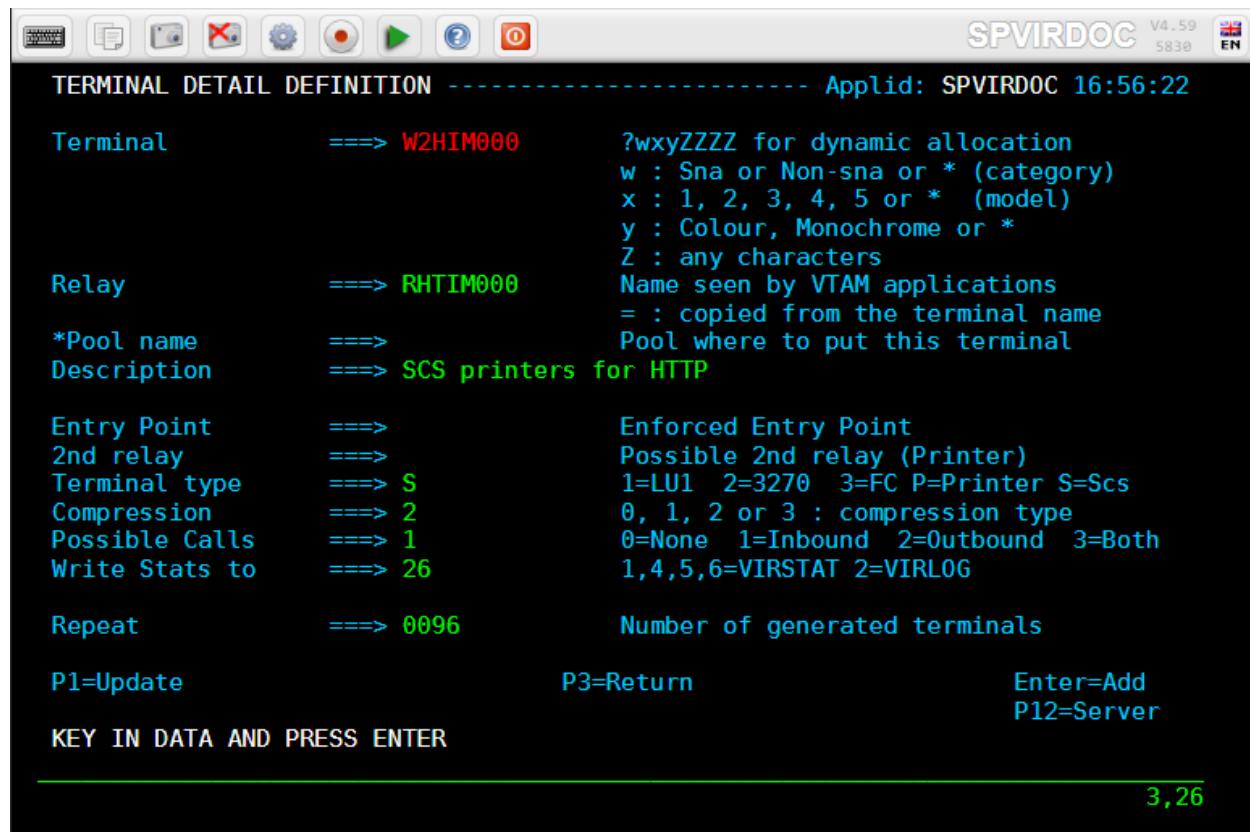
HTTP terminals with relay


TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 16:55:40

Terminal	====> W2HTP000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	====> RHTVT000	Name seen by VTAM applications
*Pool name	====> *W2HP00L	= : copied from the terminal name
Description	====> 3270 relays for HTTP	Pool where to put this terminal
Entry Point	====>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	====> RHTIM000	Possible 2nd relay (Printer)
Terminal type	====> 3	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	====> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	====> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	====> 26	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	====> 0096	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update	P3=Return	Enter=Add P12=Server

24,26

logical pool of relays for HTTP



Associated printer relays for HTTP

Note: Refer to the VIRTEL Web Access Guide for further information about printers.

4.2.5 Parameters

Terminal Represents the name of the definition. This name is known **only** to VIRTEL, except when the definition applies to an already existing 3270 terminal which connects to VIRTEL, in which case this name is that of the LU already defined in VTAM.

Maximum of 8 characters containing:

- For a 3270 terminal that connects to Virtel and wants to use the Virtel multi-session: The VTAM-defined LU name of the 3270 terminal (Although this function is still supported, it is increasingly rare for it to be used today).
- For all other types of terminal: An internal name **whose prefix associates the terminal with a VIRTEL line**. This implies that each line has its own terminals prefix, that consequently the same set of terminals (except a logical pool) CANNOT be shared between several different lines,
- For a logical pool: An internal name of no significance. A logical pool can be shared
- For a physical pool: A sequence of 8 characters starting with "?" (see "Physical pool of terminals").

Note: If the "Repeat" field contains a value greater than 1, then the terminal name must contain a compatible pattern portion which will be incremented for each occurrence of the

terminal (see “Repeat” parameter below).

Relay (Optional) The name of the relay LU associated with this terminal. The relay name corresponds to a VTAM APPL statement. The same relay cannot be shared between multiple definitions or between multiple instances of Virtel. It must be unique in a VTAM (cross) domain area.

The “Relay” field may alternatively contain a name in the form *POOLNAM which refers to the logical pool which has the same name *POOLNAM specified in its “*Pool name” field. In this case, a relay will be assigned dynamically from the specified logical pool each time a relay is required. See “logical pool of relays”.

Note: If the “Repeat” field contains a value greater than 1, then the relay name must contain a compatible pattern portion which will be incremented for each occurrence of the terminal (see “Repeat” parameter below) or it must refer to a logical pool.

Note:

If SYSPLUS=YES is specified (see “Parameters of the VIRTCT” in the VIRTEL Installation Guide), any

- the value of the SYSCLONE system symbol if there is no positional CLONE parameter specified in the STC startup JCL. (SYSCLONE is specified in the IEASYMxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB, and identifies the particular LPAR that VIRTEL is running on in a sysplex environment).
 - the value of the positional CLONE parameter specified in the STC startup JCL.
-

Pattern characters for Terminal and Relay name, please see “Repetition and Pattern Characters” section below.

***Pool name** In the definition of a logical pool, this field contains the name of the pool. A logical pool name is a 7 character name preceded by an asterisk, in the form *POOLNAM, which matches the logical pool name specified in the “Relay” field of all terminals which use the logical pool. See “logical pool of relays”. For regular terminals, this field must be blank.

Description Free-format field.

Entry Point An optional field which may contain the name of the associated entry point. For details of how VIRTEL uses this field, see “Choosing the Entry Point”. It is only useful to specify the entry point at the terminal level in the following cases:

- For a 3270 terminals,
- For type P or S printer terminals on HTTP lines. This type of printer will be automatically connected to the host application defined by the first transaction under the specified entry point.
- Asynchronous terminals on X25 non-GATE lines. This type of definition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.
- Terminals on VIRNT or VIRKIX lines in APPC mode. This type of definition is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

In all other cases, the “Entry Point” field in the terminal definition should be blank, as the preferred method of defining the entry point is by the rules of the line (see “Rules”). Rules have the advantage that they can be altered dynamically, while allowing more flexibility in the selection of the entry point according to the characteristics of the incoming call.

2nd Relay Contains the name of a relay associated with an virtual printer simulated by VIRTEL. Each of these relays corresponds to an APPL statement known to VTAM. This virtual printer must be defined in VIRTEL in the form of a terminal of type 1, 2, P, or S.

This field must only be completed for type 1 or type 3 terminals.

Note: If the “Repeat” field contains a value greater than 1, then the 2nd relay name must contain a compatible pattern portion which will be incremented for each occurrence of the terminal (see “Repeat” parameter below) or it must refer to a logical pool.

Terminal type Indicates the type of terminal. Permissible values are:

- 1** for a pseudo-printer of type SCS (LUTYPE1) without auto-connection
- 2** for a 3270 synchronous terminal (LUTYPE2) or a pseudo-printer of type 3270 (LUTYPE3) without auto-connection
- 3** for all terminals other than type 1 and 2
- P** for a virtual printer of type 3270 (LUTYPE3) with auto-connection to the application defined by the “Entry Point” field
- S** for a virtual printer of type SCS (LUTYPE1) with auto-connection to the application defined by the “Entry Point” field

The concept of an APPC connection now being at the line level, definitions of type 6 no longer exist at the terminal level.

Compression Indicates the optimization mode applicable during transmission of 3270 messages towards the terminal.

No longer necessary, compression is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

You can assign the value 2 to all terminal definition.

Possible calls Determines which calls can be made on this terminal. Depending on the associated line, certain values are meaningless. For example, the value 2 (outgoing calls) is not appropriate for a definition associated with an HTTP line since outgoing calls are impossible on this type of line.

Note: In addition to being used to authorize incoming, outgoing, or both incoming and outgoing calls, this parameter also has an effect during VIRTEL startup. **Any terminal which has “Possible calls” set to 0 will not be activated at VIRTEL startup.** Also note the “Possible calls” field in the definition of the associated line.

Write stats to Indicates the recording of statistics for the terminal entry.

Blank No statistics.

- 1** Recording in VIRSTAT (classic format).
- 2** Recording in VIRLOG.
- 4** Recording in VIRSTAT (alternate format for X25).
- 5** Recording in VIRSTAT (web format, alphanumeric). For
- 6** Recording in VIRSTAT (web format, with binary fields for the PRTSTATW program).

More than one value may be specified. For example:

12 Recording in both VIRSTAT (classic format) and VIRLOG.

24 Recording in both VIRLOG and VIRSTAT (alternate format).

124 Recording in VIRSTAT (classic and alternate formats) and VIRLOG.

VIRSTAT classic: Used for X25 connections, this type of statistic is no longer necessary and is therefore no longer to be used.

VIRSTAT alternate: Used for X25 connections, this type of statistic is no longer necessary and is therefore no longer to be used.

VIRLOG recording may be requested for terminals HTTP lines.

Either of the two VIRSTAT web formats may be requested for terminals associated with HTTP lines. In order not to unnecessarily overload the content of the VIRSTAT file, it is preferable to reserve the use of statistics types 5 and 6 for the definitions of terminals WITH relays and to avoid using them in the definitions of so-called LOCAL terminals.

For terminals associated with all other line types (including /GATE, /PCNE, and /FASTC) the statistics field should be left blank.

Refer to the “Audit and Performance” chapter of the VIRTEL Messages and Operations Guide for details of the VIRSTAT and VIRLOG record formats.

Repeat Up to 4 decimal digits indicating the number of desired repetitions of this terminal definition. See “Repetition and Pattern Characters” for more details and examples.

Note: A repeat count of blank, zero, or 1 indicates definition of a single terminal.

4.3 Connection Modes

The concept of TERMINALS is fundamental in the VIRTEL architecture and it is essential to assimilate it in order to manage the product correctly. So in order to understand the terminal management, it is necessary to assimilate the following concepts.

Historically, VIRTEL has been designed to be a communication monitor between networks outside the mainframe and applications hosted on the mainframe. At that time it was intended to host 3270 terminals, or terminals associated with X25 lines. All of these terminals were nominally defined under VTAM for 3270 terminals or in NCP / NPSI for X25 terminals. The virtual disappearance of the X25 networks gradually replaced by IP networks means that we no longer discuss the management of the X25 terminals in this chapter.

There are 2 ways methods of connecting terminals to VIRTEL, the **WELCOME** mode and the **RELAY** mode.

4.3.1 WELCOME mode

Exclusively reserved for already existing 3270 VTAM terminals, WELCOME mode allows 3270 terminals to connect to VIRTEL without being predefined.

There are two conditions which must be fulfilled: - The ACCUEIL parameter in the VIRTCT must be set to YES, - The connecting terminal must not match any existing fixed terminal definition or terminal pool definition.

In this mode, terminals not defined in VIRTEL can connect to it, but they cannot benefit from the full Multi-Session functionality.

LOGON APPLID=VIRTEL

The first screen displayed depends on the characteristics of the entry point used. If the logon command to VIRTEL does not include a DATA parameter, the entry point used is the one referenced in the first item of the DEFENTR parameter of the VIRTCT. If the logon command contains a DATA parameter, the value of that parameter is considered to be the entry point to use.

LOGON APPLID=VIRTEL,DATA=anyentry or LOGON APPLID(VIRTEL),DATA(anyentry)

After installing VIRTEL, the default entry point used in this situation is an entry point named PC.

If the Multi-Session Menu is accessible from a terminal connected in WELCOME mode, it is regarded simply as a selection screen. Thus, when an application is selected, VIRTEL connects the terminal directly to this application and relinquishes control of the terminal. In this case, VIRTEL functions somewhat like a dynamic USSTAB.

Note: This mode is useful to allow administrators to connect in 3270 mode to VIRTEL administration functions from their traditional 3270 emulator.

4.3.2 RELAY mode

3270 terminals can be connected in RELAY mode if a suitable definition exists in the system. The relays are defined to VTAM by means of APPL statements. Each terminal connected in this way can benefit from VIRTEL compression and/or Multi-Session functionality. Whether a sign-on screen or a Multi-Session Menu is displayed depends on the characteristics associated with the entry point used. When no entry point is specified in the logon request, the rules described in the previous paragraph apply.

- The HTTP and NATIVE TCP / IP lines require the use of terminals defined in relay mode.
- For SMTP lines, this is also the case, only if the line has to be connected to a VTAM application.
- All other types of lines do not require the use of terminals in relay mode.

4.4 Terminal definition types

There are two types of terminal definitions in VIRTEL. The definitions in which the RELAY area is filled in, and those in which it is not.

In the rest of this chapter, the *RELAY terminal* terms will refer to a definition in which the RELAY area is filled in, the terms of *terminal without RELAY* or *LOCAL terminal* will refer to the definitions in which the RELAY area is not filled in.

Note: There are 2 type of terminals so-called **RELAY** terminals or **LOCAL** terminals.

Regardless of the type of terminals concerned (RELAY or LOCAL), they can be defined as **FIXED** entries or as **POOL** entries.

- A **FIXED** entry is a definition which can only be used by one specific terminal.
- A **PHYSICAL POOL** is a generic definition which can be shared by several different 3270 terminals. The definition of a Physical Pool is indicated by the presence of a ? character in the first position of the terminal name. This type of definition is **exclusively reserved** for already existing 3270 VTAM terminals.

- A **LOGICAL POOL** is a reserved which is used NOT for connecting a terminal to VIRTEL, but for connection to a VTAM application. This definition, allows the same physical terminal, for example a client web browser, to be presented to application with different relays depending on the context.

pair: Connection Modes; Welcome Mode

4.4.1 Terminal Fixed entries

A **FIXED** entry is a definition which can only be used by one specific terminal. Fixed entries can be defined as **EXPLICIT** or **REPEATED**.

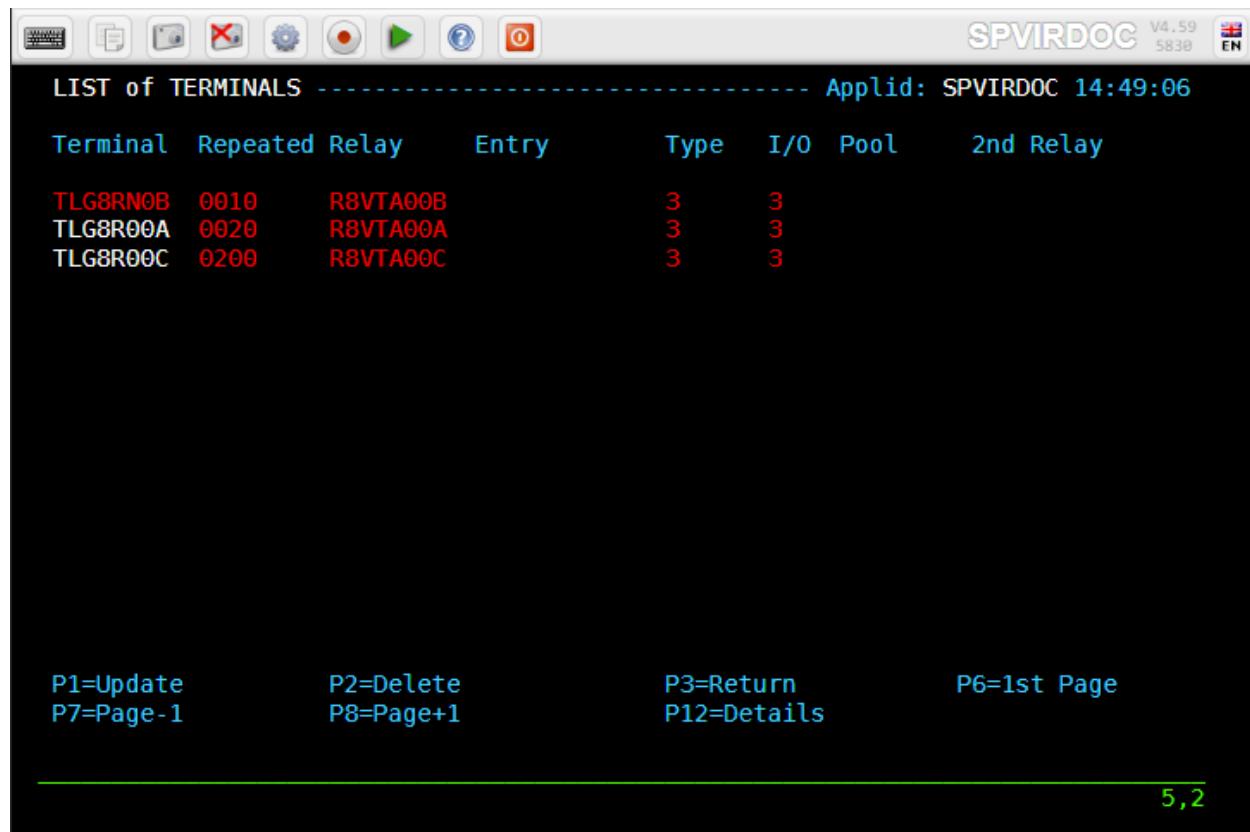
Each terminal in the group is explicitly named within VIRTEL. This mode of definition is useful when a group of relays must be attached to a line via a common terminal name prefix, but the relay LU names do not follow a pattern. The following example shows a group of terminals and corresponding relay LU names associated with a line via prefix TLG8.

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
TLG8F10A	0001	RLAT536A		3		3	
TLG8F17A	0001	RLAT572A		3		3	
TLG8F23C	0001	RHUS139C		3		3	
TLG8F57B	0001	RMIA007B		3		3	
TLG8F71A	0001	RMIA079A		3		3	
TLG8F85E	0001	RLAX478E		3		3	
TLG8F89D	0001	RLAX037D		3		3	

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
P7=Page-1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details 5,2

Explicit fixed entries definitions - See member TLG8FIXD in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES

In an explicit fixed entry definition, only the first terminal in the list is defined. The repeat count indicates the number of terminal will create. The pattern portion of the terminal name, relay name and 2nd relay name (if supplied) is incremented for each occurrence of the terminal.



Repeated fixed entries definitions - See member TLG8RPTD in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES

In a repeated fixed entry definition, only the first terminal in the list is defined. The repeat count indicates the number of terminal will create. The pattern portion of the terminal name, relay name and 2nd relay name (if supplied) is incremented for each occurrence of the terminal. The repetition increment takes effect from the rightmost character of the pattern and continues until the next nonpattern character to the left. If the pattern is a numeric one, the increment is decimal.

In the above sample, the TLG8R00C definition is wrong, because a repetition of 200 requires that the numerical pattern be at least 3 characters long. However here the pattern represented by the couple of zeroes being only on 2 positions, the repetition covers only the interval TLG8R00C to TLG8R99C.

Note:

A Fixed entry is characterized by the fact that the column “POOL” is not filled in.

An Explicit entry is characterized by the fact that the value of the “REPEAT” column is always initialised to 1.

A Repeated entry is characterized by the fact that:

- the repeat column column is initialized with a value greater than 1,
- a portion of the name of the terminal and the relay is composed of a pattern allowing the repetition to be built. (See “Repetition and Pattern Characters” section below).

4.4.2 Physical pool of relay

A **PHYSICAL POOL** is a generic definition which can be shared by several different 3270 terminals. It allows 3270 terminals to connect to VIRTEL and to be assigned a relay LU, without the need to create an

individual definition for each connecting terminal. A relay LU is assigned from the physical pool at the time the terminal connects to VIRTEL. The definition of a Physical Pool is indicated by the presence of a "?" character in the first position of the terminal name, and has a formt such as:

```
?xxxxyyyy
```

Although a physical pool allows connection of a large number of terminals, it is sometimes necessary to restrict the connection to certain types of terminals. This selection is done with the three characters represented by "x" in the name of the physical pool definition.

1st x character Tests the terminal type.

- * No restriction on terminal type

- S** SNA terminal

- N** Non SNA terminal

2nd x character Tests the terminal model

- * No restriction on model

- 2 to 5** Restricted to specified model

3rd x character Tests colour support

- * No restriction on colour support

- C** Colour terminal

- N** Monochrome terminal

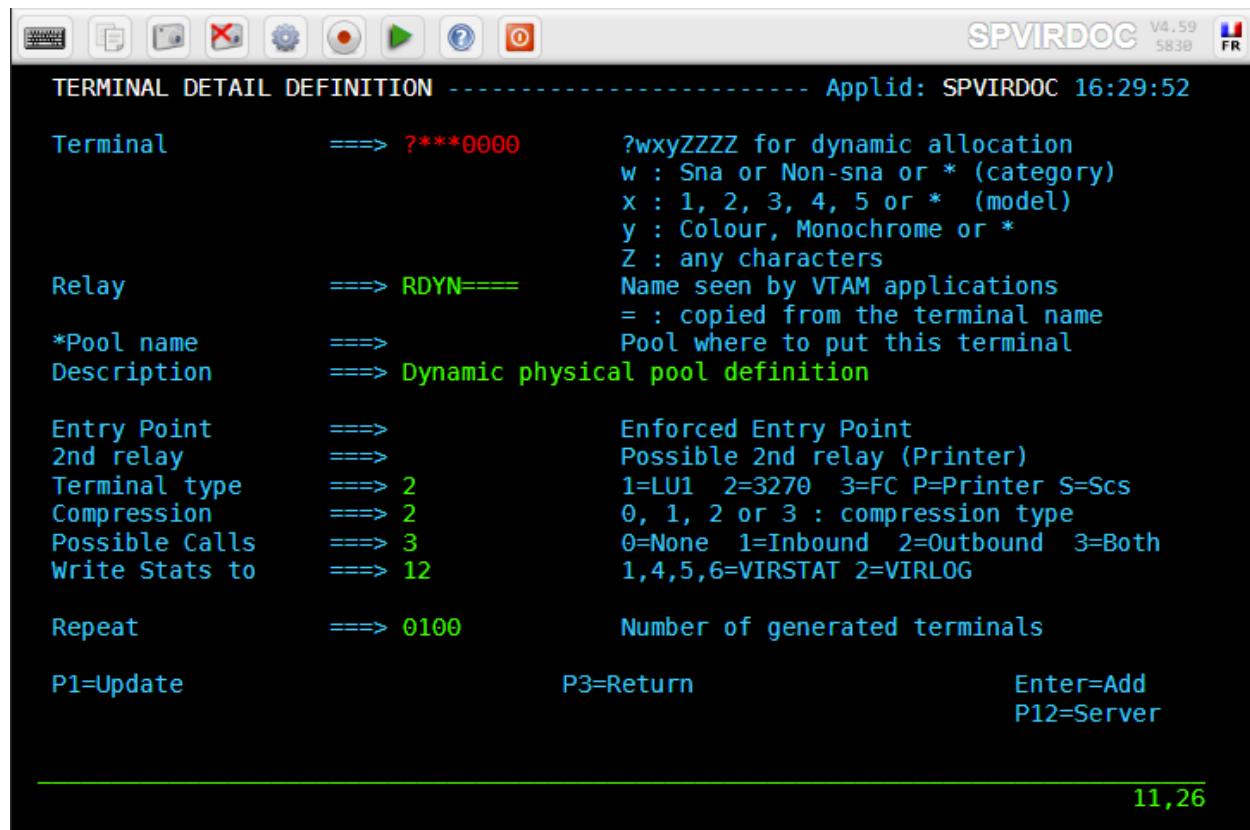
Examples:

- **?S**YZAB** VIRTEL tests only if the terminal is SNA.
- **?S3CYZAB** VIRTEL tests if the terminal is SNA model 3 colour.

There are two types of physical pool, **DYNAMIC** and **NON-DYNAMIC**.

Dynamic Physical Pool

In a dynamic physical pool, the associated relay is defined by a combination of alphanumeric characters and "=" signs. Each "=" sign will be dynamically replaced by the value of the corresponding character in the name of the connecting terminal.



Dynamic Physical Pool definition

For example, with the above definition specifying RDYN===== as the relay name, each 3270 terminal connecting to VIRTEL will be allocated a relay whose first four characters are RDYN and whose last four characters are the last four characters of the 3270 terminal LU name. VIRTEL must be able to open a VTAM application LU for each possible relay defined in the pool. The use of the VTAM generic character "?" allows all possible relay names to be defined to VTAM by a single APPL statement, as shown in the following example:

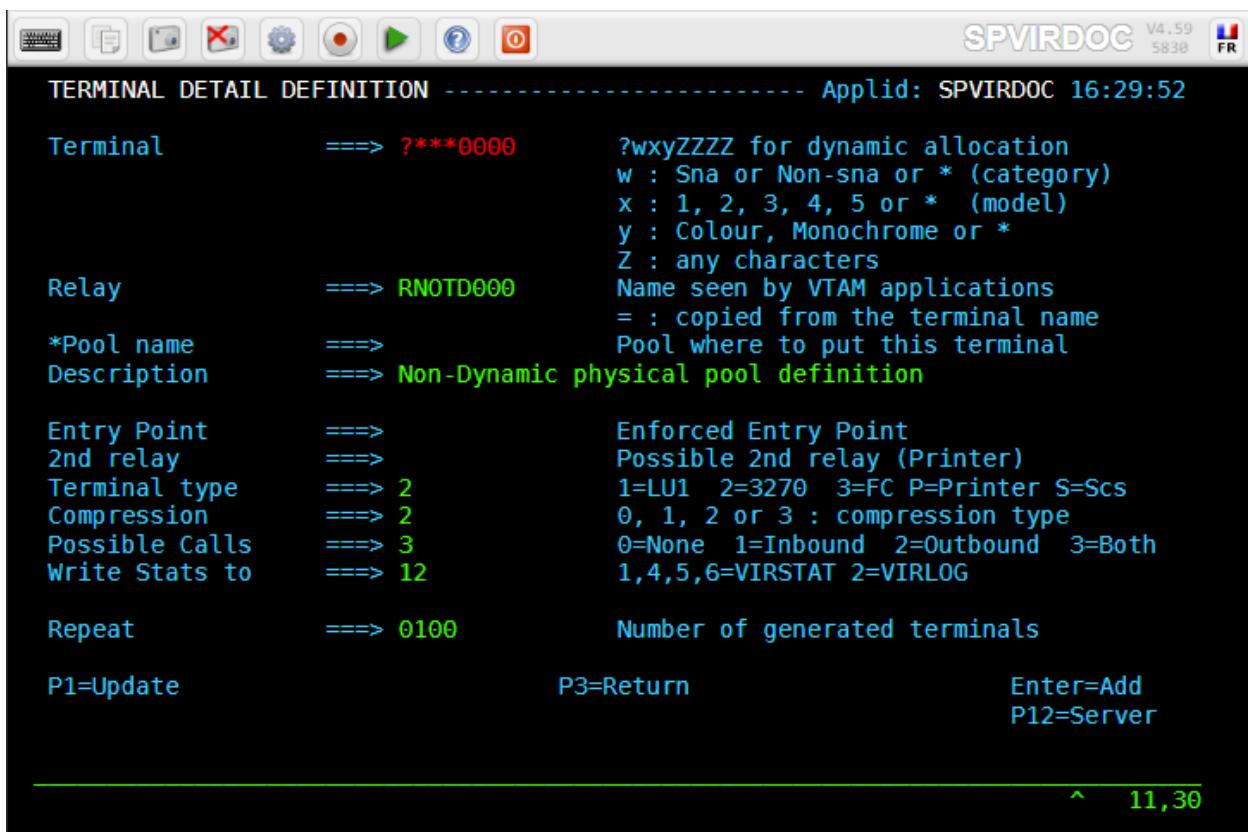
Corresponding relay LU's must be defined to VTAM by means of APPL statements in an application major node, as shown in the following example:

```
VIRTAPPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* RDYN===== : VTAM relays for Dynamic Physical Pool entries      *
* -----
RDYN???? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS), MODETAB=MODVIRT, DLOGMOD=SNX32702
```

VTAM definitions for Dynamic Physical Pool relay LU's

Non-Dynamic Physical Pool

In a non-dynamic physical pool, the associated relay is defined by a combination of alphanumeric characters **without " = "** signs.



Non-Dynamic Physical Pool definition

A given terminal may be assigned a different relay on each connection according to availability. Each relay in the pool must be explicitly defined to VTAM by means of an APPL statement. It is advisable to define as many entries as there are terminals to be connected. For example, with the above definition specifying RDYN==== as the relay name, each 3270 terminal connecting to VIRTEL will be allocated a relay whose first four characters are RDYN and whose last four characters are the last four characters of the 3270 terminal LU name. VIRTEL must be able to open a VTAM application LU for each possible relay defined in the pool. The use of the VTAM generic character "?" allows all possible relay names to be defined to VTAM by a single APPL statement, as shown in the following example:

Corresponding relay LU's must be defined to VTAM by means of APPL statements in an application major node, as shown in the following example:

```
VIRTAPPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* RNOTD000 : VTAM relays for Non-Dynamic Physical Pool entries *
* -----
RNOTD000 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
RNOTD001 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
RNOTD002 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
.../
RNOTD098 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
RNOTD099 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=MODVIRT,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
```

VTAM definitions for Non-Dynamic Physical Pool relay LU's

Warning: Physical Pools definitions, either Dynamic or Non-Dynamic, are **exclusively reserved** for already defined 3270 VTAM terminals that connects to VIRTEL. Other types of terminal, (i.e any terminal attached or used thru any line connection), cannot be defined by means of a physical pool.

4.4.3 Logical pool of relay

A **LOGICAL POOL** is a reserved group which is NOT used for connecting a terminal to VIRTEL, but for connecting to a VTAM application. This definition, allows the same physical terminal, for example a client web browser, to be presented to an application with different relays depending on the context. In such definition, groups of relays are not permanently assigned to any terminal but are available for allocation by terminals as and when required.

The logical pool is defined as a group of terminals (the definitions can be explicit or repeated) whose “*Pool name” field contains a name prefixed by the character “*”.

The terminal name is not significant, except to distinguish it from other terminal definitions. Terminals which use the pool specify the pool name (with the “*” prefix) in their relay name field.

The difference between a logical pool and a physical pool is that a relay in a physical pool is assigned when the requesting terminal connects, whereas a relay in a logical pool is assigned at the time the requesting terminal needs the relay to connect to a VTAM application.

Note: For HTTP lines, logical pool is the best way to share the same pool between multiples lines.

Explicit logical pool

An explicit logical pool is a set of definition in which:

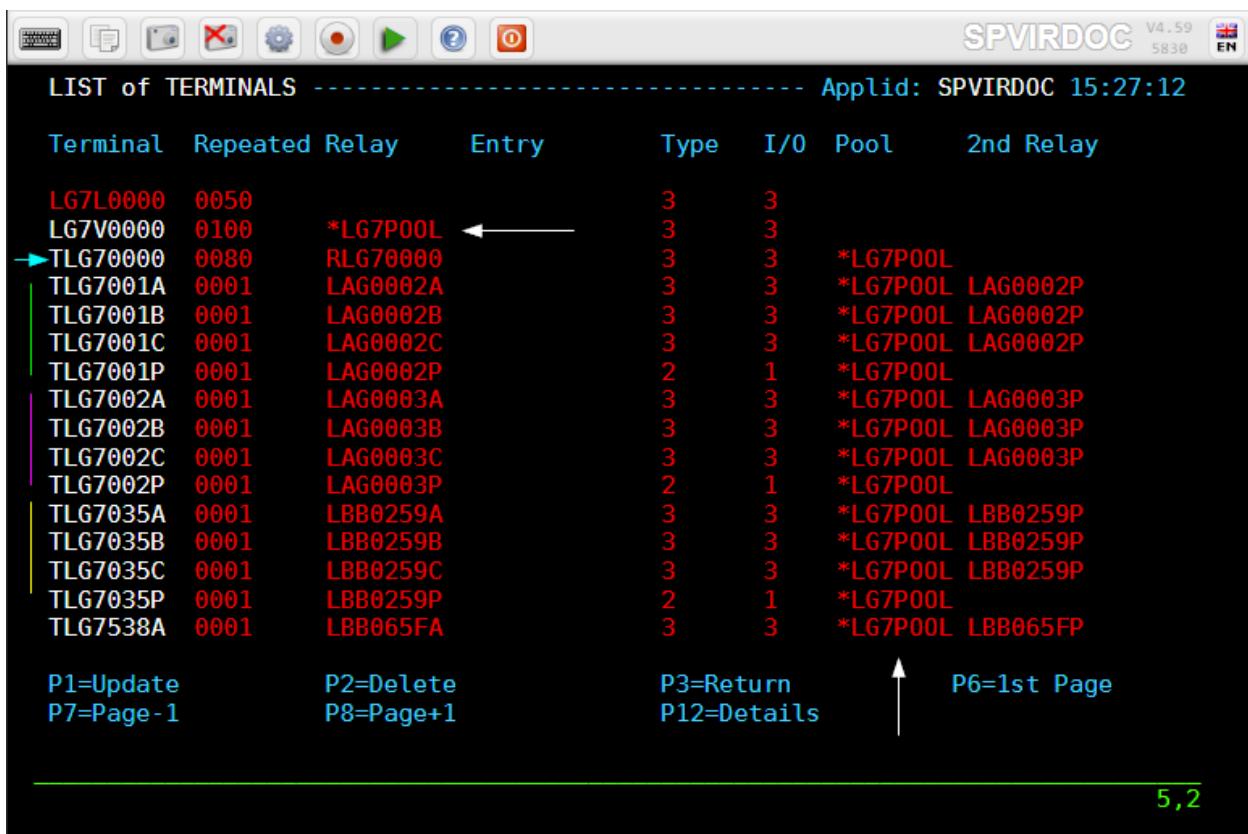
- The repeat count is set to 0001
- The name of terminal, relay and 2nd relay do not contain any of the characters used in the alphanumeric patterns (>,<,% And <).

LOG1Pxxxx	nnnn	RDO1Pxxxx	P	1	
LOG1Txxxx	nnnn	RDO1Txxxx	3	3	*LG1POOL RDO1Pxxxx

Example of Explicit Logical pool

Most of the time, the use of an explicit logical pool is justified by one of the following reasons:

- There is no matching rule between the internal name of a terminal and the associated relay and/or 2nd relay
- There is a need of selecting a specific relay at connection time. (See LU'Nailing section below).



Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
LG7L0000	0050			3	3		
LG7V0000	0100	*LG7POOL		3	3		
→TLG70000	0080	RLG70000		3	3	*LG7POOL	
TLG7001A	0001	LAG0002A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001B	0001	LAG0002B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001C	0001	LAG0002C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001P	0001	LAG0002P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7002A	0001	LAG0003A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002B	0001	LAG0003B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002C	0001	LAG0003C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002P	0001	LAG0003P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7035A	0001	LBB0259A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035B	0001	LBB0259B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035C	0001	LBB0259C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035P	0001	LBB0259P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7538A	0001	LBB065FA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
 P7=Page-1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details

5,2

Explicit Logical Pool. (See TLG7POOL member in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES)

The explicit logical pool shown above is built by gathering multiple definition subgroups that all reference the *LG7POOL pool name. Each of these subgroups (three of which are highlighted above in green, purple and yellow) consists of a set of 4 definitions. Three definitions are for 3270 relay, all pointing to a printer relay common to the subgroup.

Note: Note that the *LG7POOL also contains a *repeated logical pool* of 80 entries marked with the Turquoise arrow.

Repeated logical pool

A repeated logical pool is at least one set definition in which:

- The repeat count is set to value greater than 0001
- The name of terminal, relay and 2nd relay contain either a numeric or alphanumeric pattern.

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
ZHL10000	9999			3	3		
ZHV10000	9999	*LG6POOL	←	3	3		
ZHV20000	9999	*LG6POOL	←	3	3		
ZH2V0000	5000	RB2V0000		3	3	*LG6POOL	
ZH3V0000	5000	RB3V0000		3	3	*LG6POOL	
ZH4V0000	5000	RB4V0000		3	3	*LG6POOL	
ZH5V0000	5000	RB5V0000		3	3	*LG6POOL	

↑

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
P7=Page-1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details

5,2

Repeated Logical Pool. (See TLG6POOL member in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES)

The repeated logical pool shown above builds 20000 relays by gathering multiple definition subgroups that all reference the *LG6POOL pool name. Each of these subgroups creates a series of 5000 terminals.

Warning: For performance reason and CPU consumption limitation, it is recommended that the number of relays associated with a line be limited to a maximum of 5000.

Sharing a logical pool

By default, when installing the VIRTEL web access suite, two HTTP lines are predefined. Each of these lines uses its own subset of terminals. The terminals with prefix "CL" belong to line C-HTTP, while the terminals with prefix "DE" belong to line W-HTTP. Both RELAY groups share the same pool represented by the yellow square.

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
CLLOC000	0050			3	3		
CLVTA000	0080	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
DELOC000	0050			3	3		
DEVT A000	0016	*W2HPOOL		3	3		
W2HIM000	0096	RHTIM000		S	1		
W2HIP000	0096	RHTIP000		P	1		
W2HTP000	0096	RHTVT000		3	3	*W2HPOOL RHTIM000	

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
 P7=Page -1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details
 DELETE OK

12,3

Logical Pool Shared between multiple HTTP lines

For line C-HTTP, the first sub-group consists of terminals CLLOC000-049 without a relay. The second sub-group consists of terminals CLVTA000-079 which refer to a logical pool of relays named *W2HPOOL.

For line W-HTTP, the first sub-group is DELOC000-009, and the second sub-group is DEVT A000-015 which also refers to the logical pool named *W2HPOOL.

The logical pool itself consists of terminals W2HTP000-095 whose relay LU names are RHTVT000-095. The logical pool also refers to a pool of associated printer LU's. The printers are defined with terminal names W2HIP000-095 and LU names RHTIP000-095. In each case, the terminal name is an internal name used only within VIRTEL, while the relay name is an LU name defined by a VTAM APPL statement. The relay LU name is the name by which the terminal is known to CICS or other VTAM applications.

4.4.4 Repetition and Pattern Characters

When using a definition with a repeat count greater than 1, you must be **very careful** that the definition pattern is correctly adapted in order to be able to generate the expected number of inputs defined by the REPEAT field

Often, the terminal pool definition will take the following form:

LOG1Pxxx	nnnn	RDO1Pxxx	P	1	
LOG1Txxx	nnnn	RDO1Txxx	3	3	*LG1POOL RDO1Pxxx

Logical pool with pattern and repeat count

The pattern portion of a name, or relay name or 2nd relay name, is a group of characters that are either numeric or belong to all of the following set of special characters:

> Alphabetic	: A-Z
? alphanumeric	: A-Z, 0-9, \$, #, @
% Hexadecimal digit	: 0-9, A-F
< Decimal digit	: 0-9

Table of specials characters reserved for a pattern

Whatever type of pattern is used, the repeat count sets the number of terminals to be defined.

Numeric only Pattern

A numeric pattern is always represented by the rightmost contiguous sequence of numbers, whatever their value. For example, in the following definitions, the numeric patterns are represented by the **boldface** part of the names.

LOG1P** 000 **, or LOG** 100 **P, or LOG00A** 77 **
--

Note: If a name has more than one numeric pattern, only the one to the right of the name is considered to be incrementable. For example, in the LOG00A**77** definition, only the part at the right of the character “A” is considered to be the pattern.

To illustrate the repeat count effect, consider the following logical pool definitions (*See TLG1POOL member in yourqual.VIRTNnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES*):

LOG1P000 nnnn RDO1P000	P 1
LOG1T000 nnnn RDO1T000	3 3 *LG1POOL RDO1P000

Logical pool with numeric pattern and repeat count

Depending on the repeat count value, the generated names will be:

nnnn	Name of terminals	Relay name	2nd relay name
256	LOG1T000-LOG1T255	RDO1T000-RDO1T255	RDO1P000-RDO1P255
1000	LOG1T000-LOG1T999	RDO1T000-RDO1T999	RDO1P000-RDO1P999
3000	LOG1T000-LOG1T999 LOG1T000-LOG1T999 LOG1T000-LOG1T999	RDO1T999-RDO1T999 RDO1T999-RDO1T999 RDO1T999-RDO1T999	RDO1P999-RDO1P999 RDO1P999-RDO1P999 RDO1P999-RDO1P999

Generated names depending on the repeat count value

Warning: With nnnn = 3000, VIRTEL will generate 3 times 1000 entries with names LOG1T000-LOG1T999, relay names RDO1T000-RDO1T999 and relay2 names RDO1P000-RDO1P999, so we will have some trouble when the 1001th connection will be initiated, VIRTEL trying to allocate the relay whose name is defined in the 1001 nth cell in the table, namely RDO1T000, relay potentially currently used by terminal LOG1T000. It is therefore imperative to **ensure that the number of digits is consistent with the patterns** of the terminal name, relay name and relay 2 name, to ensure the uniqueness of each of these names.

Depending on the length of the rightmost numeric portion of a name, the maximum allowed repeat count value MUST BE limited to:

Numeric pattern length	Maximum repeat count value
1	10
2	100
3	1000
4	9999

Maximum allowed repeat count value depending on numeric pattern length

Alphanumeric Pattern

In some situations, incrementing in decimal format is not suited to the needs, for example, when an alphabetical sequencing is desired.

A terminal definition with a repeat count greater than 1 may contain special pattern characters in the “Terminal name”, “Relay” and “2nd Relay” fields. Multiple instances of the terminal will be generated at Virtel startup by incrementing the pattern characters according to the rules shown below. If the name contains no pattern characters, then Virtel will increment the rightmost numeric portion of the name.

The possible pattern characters with their increment range are:

> Alphabetic	: A-Z
? Alphanumeric	: A-Z, 0-9, \$, #, @
% Hexadecimal digit	: 0-9, A-F
< Decimal digit	: 0-9

Table of specials characters reserved for a pattern

- Different combinations of pattern characters can be specified within a single field, for example RDO<T?%%,
- The terminal name and relay names do not have to follow the same pattern,

Warning: The character ? cannot be used in the first character position of the terminal name field, because this indicates a physical pool.

To illustrate the repeat count effect with special characters, consider the following logical pool definitions (*See TLG9POOL member in yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES*):

LOG9P000 nnnn RD9?P%%0 P 1 LOG9T000 nnnn RD9>T«< 3 3 *LG9POOL RD9?P%%0

Depending on the repeat count value, the generated names will be:

nnnn	Name of terminals	Relay name	2nd relay name
256	LOG9T000-LOG9T255	RD9AT000-RD9AT255	RD9AP000-RD9APFF0
1000	LOG9T000-LOG9T999	RD9AT000-RD9AT999	RD9AP000-RD9APFF0 RD9BP000-RD9BPFF0 RD9CP000-RD9CPFF0 RD9DP000-RD9DPFF0
3000	LOG9T000-LOG9T999 LOG9T000-LOG9T999 LOG9T000-LOG9T999	RD9AT000-RD9AT999 RD9BT000-RD9BT999 RD9CT000-RD9CT999	RD9AP000-RD9APFF0 .../ RD9LP000-RD9LPFF0

Generated names depending on the repeat count value

Note: With nnnn = 3000 the relay2 names are a set of 12 groups RD9xP000-RD9xPFF0, x varying from A to L. Because of the use of special characters we are sure to get a unique set of values for both primary and secondary relay names and the fact that in this case the internal names of the terminals will be present 3 times in the internal table of VIRTEL has no effect on the proper operation of the Virtel system except to be sometimes confusing at the level of certain messages issued in the logs.

Warning: Once a pattern character is used in the “terminal” or “relay” or “2nd relay” field, the other “non patterned” characters are to be considered as “static value”

For example

LOG9T000	1000	RD9AT000	3	3	*LG9POOL RD9AP000
----------	------	----------	---	---	-------------------

will generate entries from RD9AT000 to RD9AT999, **BUT**

LOG9T000	1000	RD9>T000	3	3	*LG9POOL RD9AP000
----------	------	----------	---	---	-------------------

will generate a sequence of RD9**x**T000 terminals, with x varying from A to Z, then from 0 to 9, then \$, # and @, so a total of 39 relays. For this reason, to generate the RD9AT000-RD9AT999 sequence we have to replace tailing “000” by “<<”

LOG9T000	1000	RD9>T<<	3	3	
----------	------	---------	---	---	--

will generate the RD9AT000-RD9AT999 sequence

LOG9T000	1500	RD9>T<<	3	3	
----------	------	---------	---	---	--

will generate the RD9AT000-RD9AT999 sequence, followed by the RD9BT000-RD9BT499 sequence.

The maximum value of the repeat count depends on the type of special character used in a pattern. The following table shows the maximum number of repeats allowed for each type of character.

Pattern character	Maximum repeat count value
> Alphabetic : A-Z	26
? Alphanumeric : A-Z, 0-9, \$, #, @	39
% Hexadecimal digit : 0-9, A-F	16
< Decimal digit : 0-9	10

Maximum allowed repeat count value depending on pattern character

Note: For a pattern containing several special characters, the maximum number of repetitions can be determined by multiplying the maximum number of repetitions associated with each of these characters. For example the definition RD9>P<%0 allows to create $26 * 10 * 16 = 4160$ relays.

Pattern with a + characters

If SYSPLUS=YES is specified (see “Parameters of the VIRTCT” in the VIRTEL Installation Guide), any ‘+’ character in a “relay” or “2nd relay” name will be replaced by the value of the SYSCLOSE system symbol or by the positional CLONE parameter (if supplied) from the parameter list passed within the STC JCL. SYSCLOSE is specified in the IEASYMxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB, and identifies the particular LPAR that VIRTEL is running on in a sysplex environment.

4.4.5 Physical pool or logical pool

A Physical Pool is a definition used by 3270 terminals to connect to VIRTEL. A Logical Pool is a group of Relays that can be used to connect a Non-3270 terminal to a VTAM application. The difference between a Logical Pool and a Physical Pool is that a relay in a physical pool is assigned when the requesting terminal connects, whereas a relay in a logical pool is assigned at the time the requesting terminal needs the relay to connect to a VTAM application.

4.4.6 Terminal Pool Selection

When a 3270 terminal is defined to a physical pool, the selection of a pool is managed automatically by VIRTEL at connection time. It starts from the end of the list of defined terminals. When the characteristics of the terminal match those of the entry being processed, the terminal is used as an application relay.

When a non-3270 terminal is defined to a logical pool, the selection of a pool is managed automatically by VIRTEL when the terminal connects to a VTAM application. If no specific rule is active and if no LU'Nailing system is effective, the first free available relay is assigned to the request.

Rules for opening relay ACBs

For explicit or repeated fixed entry definitions, the relay ACBs are opened at VIRTEL startup time. For terminals defined in a physical pool, the relay ACBs are opened at terminal connection time. For terminals which reference a logical pool, the relay ACB is opened only when accessing an application.

4.5 VTAM application programs definitions

Any session established between Virtel and a 3270 application requires the use of a Virtual terminal defined in the form of an APPL card at VTAM level formalized in a VTAM Book of VBUILD type.

They can be nominative,

```
TLG1APPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
RDO1T000 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
RDO1T001 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
.../
RDO1T999 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
```

or generics using wildcard characters * or ? where

- * – represent 0 or more unspecified characters
- ? represent a single unspecified character

```
TLG1APPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* Begin with RDO1T and ends with 3 additionnal valid characters
RDO1T??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
* Begin with RDO1T and ends with 0 to 3 additionnal valid characters
RDO1T* APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702
```

Generic definition can be more complex, such as for example any 8 characters length that contains constant values at position 1, 2, 3 and 5, with any additionnal valid characters at positions 4, 6 and 7, ending with 0

```
TLG9APPL VBUILD TYPE=APPL
RD9?P??0 APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=DSILGMOD
```

4.6 Terminal troubleshooting

Here are some common errors when trying to connect a 3270 application.

- Terminal receives a “blank” screen with error message “ERROR CONNECTING TO APPLICATION”
TO BE DEVELOPED

CONTROLLING LUNAMES

5.1 Introduction

In this section we look at how we can control LUNAME selection for inbound HTTP calls. When a user connects to a 3270 application through VIRTEL Web Access, VIRTEL makes it appear to the application as if the user is connecting from a virtual 3270 terminal. In VTAM terms a virtual 3270 terminal is called a *Logical Unit* or *LU*, and each LU has a unique eight character name (*LU name*). VIRTEL has at its disposal a pool of LUs known to VTAM, whose names are specified in the VIRTEL configuration file (the VIRARBO file). Normally when a user connects to a 3270 application, VIRTEL chooses any available LU from the pool.

While most mainframe applications will accept a connection from any LU name, certain applications (particularly applications which run under IMS) are sensitive to the LU name because they assign permissions to the user based upon the LU name of the user's terminal.

LU nailing allows VIRTEL to assign a particular LU name to a session based one of the following:

- By URL parameter
- By terminal IP address
- By cookie

In order to show the different possibilities for controlling the name of the relay LU that will be used for a session, we will be based on the definitions of a line named LG7-HTTP, as well as the rules, terminals, entry point and transactions associated with it.

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 18:03:01

Internal name ===> LG7-HTTP	1st character is line code		
External name ===> HTTP-LG7	External entity name		
Remote ident ===>	Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address		
Local ident ===> :41777	Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address		
Description ===> HTTP line (entry point	LG7HOST)		
Prefix ===> LG7	Prefix for terminals		
Pool ===>	Pool for terminals		
Entry Point ===> LG7HOST	Default Entry Point on this line		
Rule Set ===> LG7-HTTP	Rules to choose an entry point eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ... 0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O		
Line type ===> TCP1			
Possible calls ==> 1			
Startup prerequisite ==>			
Protocol program ==> VIRHTTP	Dialog manager		
Security program ==>	Non standard security		
Time out ==> 0000 Action ==> 0	Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive		
Window ==> 0000 Packet ==> 0000	eventual protocol parameters		
Pad ==>	PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO		
Retries ==> 0010 Tran ==>			
	Retries for linked to terminals		
P1=Update		P3=Return	P4=Terminals
Enter=Add			P5=Rules

3,21

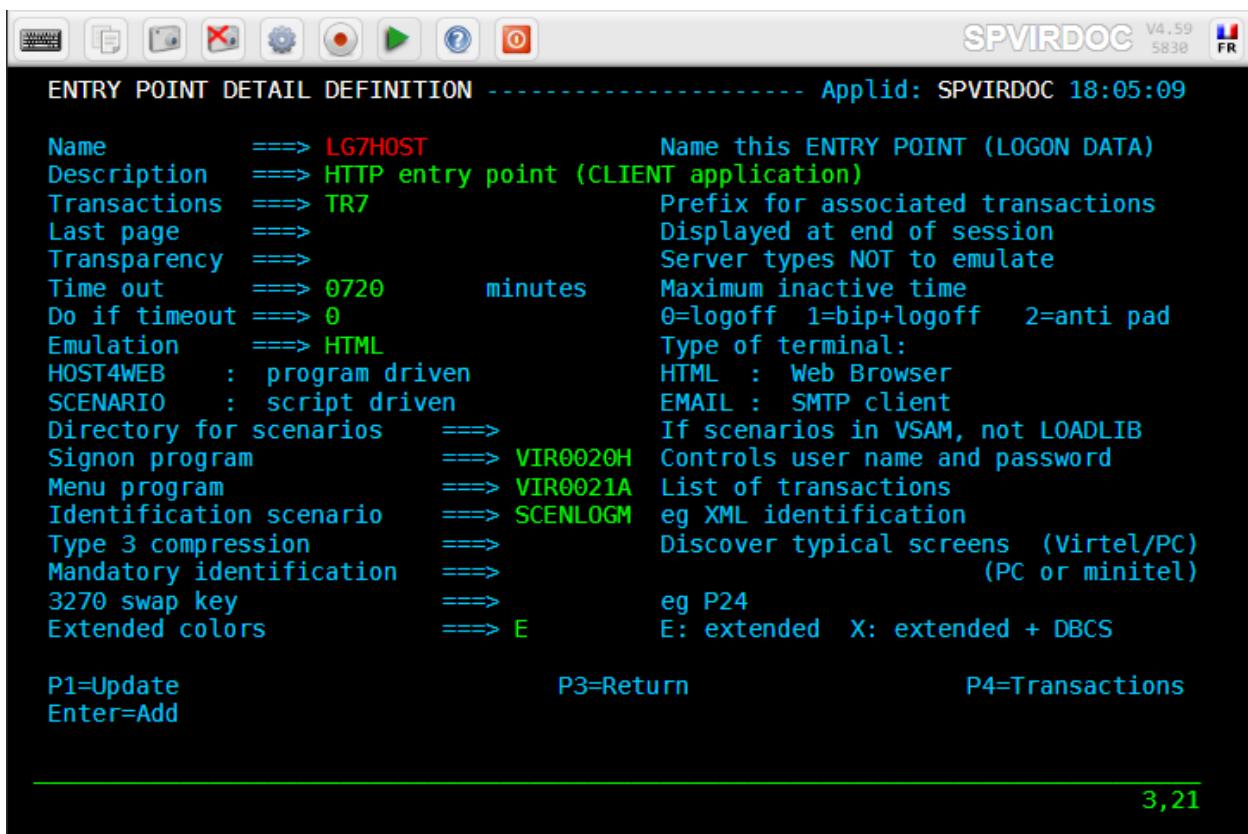
LG7-HTTP line definition

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
LG7L0000	0050			3	3		
LG7V0000	0100	*LG7POOL		3	3		
TLG70000	0080	RLG70000		3	3	*LG7POOL	
TLG7001A	0001	LAG0002A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001B	0001	LAG0002B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001C	0001	LAG0002C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0002P
TLG7001P	0001	LAG0002P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7002A	0001	LAG0003A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002B	0001	LAG0003B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002C	0001	LAG0003C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LAG0003P
TLG7002P	0001	LAG0003P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7035A	0001	LBB0259A		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035B	0001	LBB0259B		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035C	0001	LBB0259C		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB0259P
TLG7035P	0001	LBB0259P		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7538A	0001	LBB065FA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP

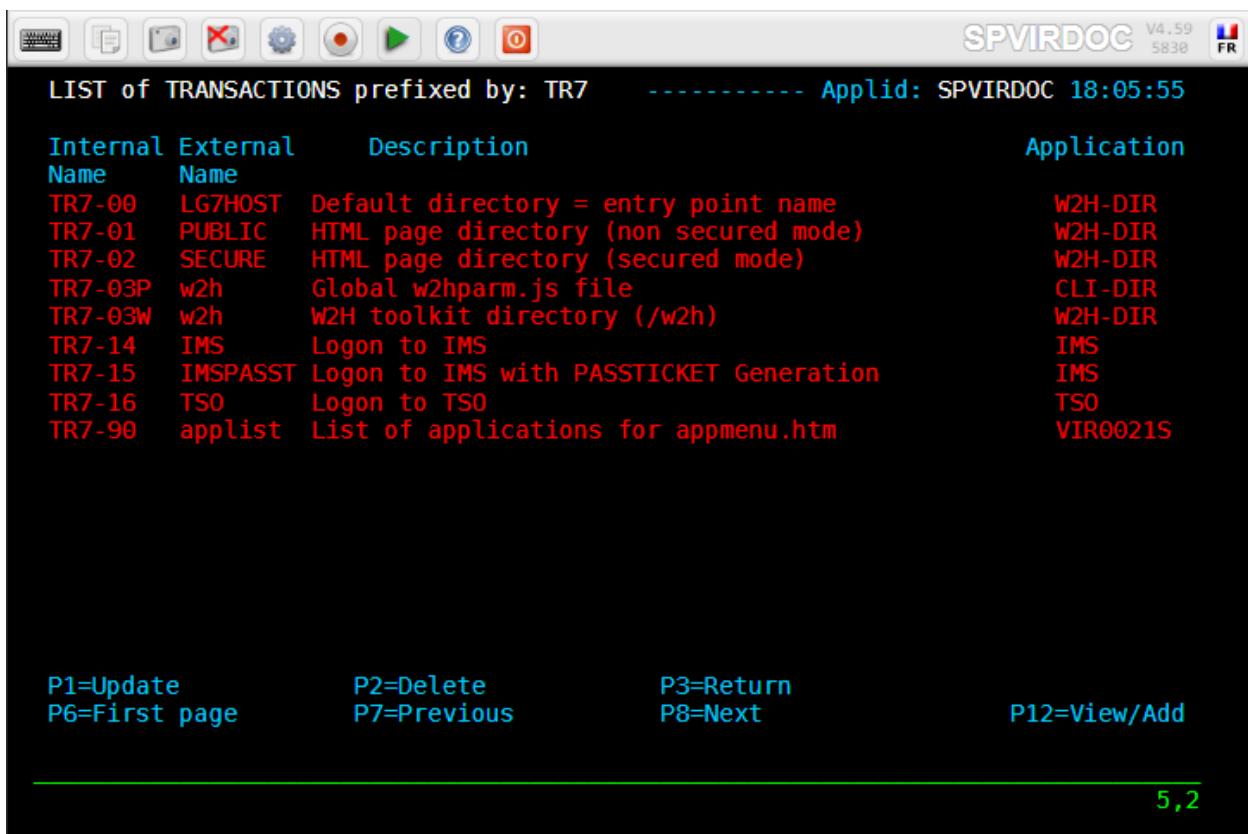
P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
 P7=Page-1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details

5,2

Terminals associated to the line (LG7 prefix) and Logical Pool (TLG7 prefix) *LG7POOL



LG7HOST entry point definition



The screenshot shows a terminal window with a header bar containing icons for file operations and a status bar showing "SPVIRDOC V4.59 5838 FR". The main area displays a table titled "LIST of TRANSACTIONS prefixed by: TR7" with the following data:

Internal Name	External Name	Description	Application
TR7-00	LG7HOST	Default directory = entry point name	W2H-DIR
TR7-01	PUBLIC	HTML page directory (non secured mode)	W2H-DIR
TR7-02	SECURE	HTML page directory (secured mode)	W2H-DIR
TR7-03P	w2h	Global w2hparm.js file	CLI-DIR
TR7-03W	w2h	W2H toolkit directory (/w2h)	W2H-DIR
TR7-14	IMS	Logon to IMS	IMS
TR7-15	IMSPASST	Logon to IMS with PASSTICKET Generation	IMS
TR7-16	TSO	Logon to TSO	TSO
TR7-90	applist	List of applications for appmenu.htm	VIR0021S

At the bottom, there are navigation keys: P1=Update, P6=First page, P2=Delete, P7=Previous, P3=Return, P8=Next, P12=View/Add, and a page number 5,2.

TR7 prefix transactions associated to the LG7HOST entry point

Note: These definitions can be uploaded to an ARBO file using a VIRCONF LOAD job accepting as input *TLG7LINE*, *TLG7POOL* and *TLG7ENTR* members delivered in the library *yourqual.VIRTnnn.DOCUMENT.SAMPLIB.SOURCES*.

5.2 LU Nailing By URL parameter

The URL can contain information which can be used to force an LUNAME. This is done either:

- by using a *UserData* parameter in the URL, for example:

```
http://192.168.170.33:41777/w2h/web2ajax+TSO+anyUserData
```

- by using the *FORCELUNAME=* keyword in the URL, for example:

```
http://n.n.n.n:41777/w2h/web2ajax.htm+IMS+ForceLUNAME=anyLuname
```

Warning: Using *UserData* to select an LU name requires that a rule be associated with the line whereas this is not required for the *ForceLUNAME* option. The rule is used to determine the action taken on processing the *UserData*. Coding the desired LU name, or alternatively an LU name prefix terminated by an asterisk, in the “Parameter” field of the Virtel Rule which selects the incoming HTTP request. Alternatively, if the value *\$URL\$* is entered in the “Parameter” field of the Virtel rule, then the desired LU name will be taken from the userdata supplied in the caller’s URL (see “VIRTEL URL formats”).

Dynamic pages" in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide).

5.2.1 LU attribution if no specification in URL

If a call is made with an URL that does not contain any *UserData* or *FORCELUNAME* parameter to assign a specific relay, Virtel assigns a relay by following the order of the definitions present in the pool.

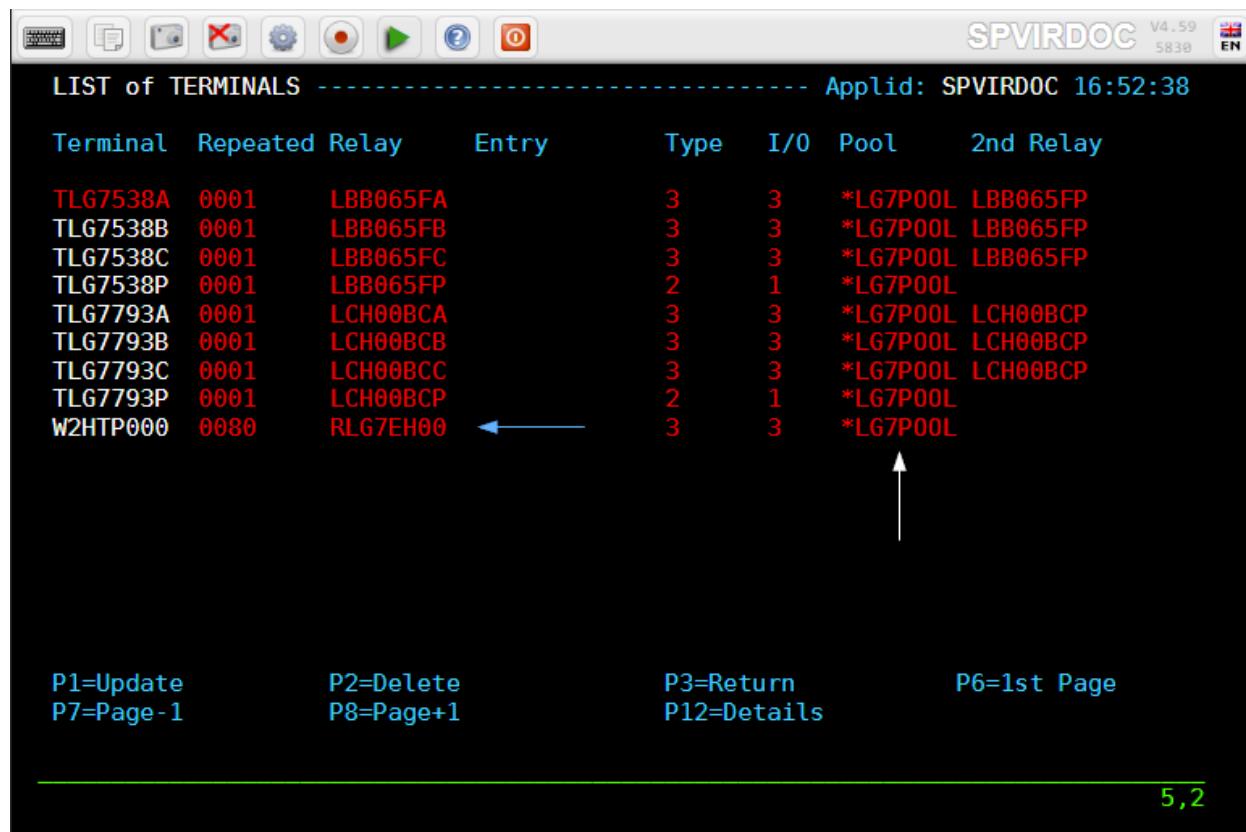
Thus, With the above terminal definitions, the first session will be assigned the relay RLG70000, the following session the relay RLG70001 and so on until the relay RLG70079 is assigned.

The 81st session will be assigned the LAG0002A relay, the 82nd the LAG0002B relay and so on.

Warning: Notice the importance of the order of the definitions in the pool. For example, if the TLG70000 definition were to be renamed to TLG79999, then it would appear at the end of the list, and in this case, the first session would be assigned the LAG0002A relay.

5.2.2 LU Nailing using a constant name as *UserData*

In the following example we use the constant name *UDATA001* to initiate the session with Virtel trying to target some *RLG7EHnn* relay. To do it, we need to a least one RULE that identifies the passed *UserData* and select the relay.



Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
TLG7538A	0001	LBB065FA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538B	0001	LBB065FB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538C	0001	LBB065FC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538P	0001	LBB065FP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7793A	0001	LCH00BCA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793B	0001	LCH00BCB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793C	0001	LCH00BCC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793P	0001	LCH00BCP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
W2HTP000	0080	RLG7EH00	←	3	3	*LG7POOL	

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
P7=Page -1 P8=Page +1 P12=Details

5,2

W2HTP prefix logical pool with RLG7EH00 relays

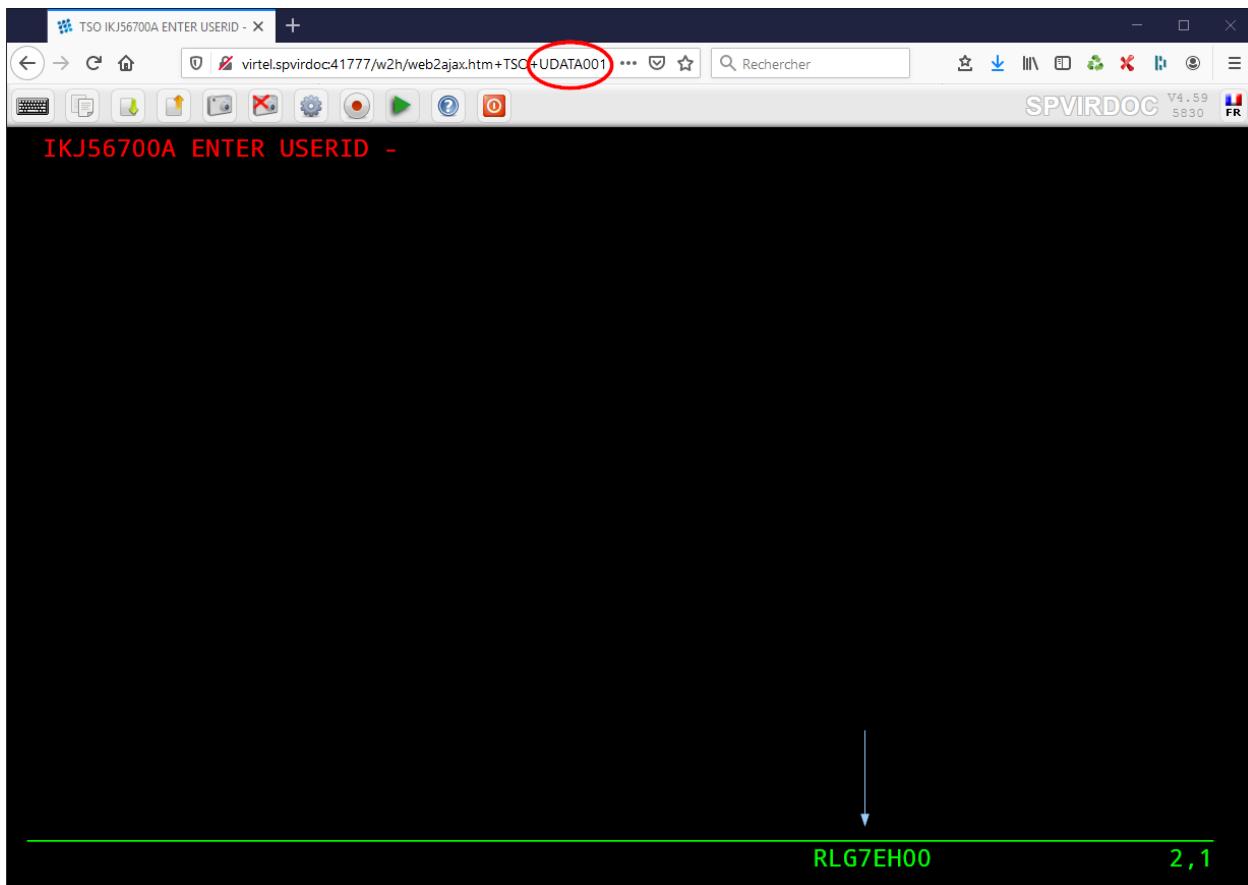
With the following rule :

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: LG7-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 17:39:18

Name	====> LG7RUL25	Rule priority is per name				
Status	====> ACTIVE	17 Aug 2020 17:37:33 SPTMESL				
Description	====> Rule for UserData specified in URL					
Entry point	====> LG7HOST	Target Entry Point				
Parameter	====> RLG7EH00 ←	&1 value or LUNAME				
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner				
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT						
0 IP Subnet	====> 000.000.000.000	Mask ===> 255.255.255.255				
0 Host	====>					
0 eMail	====>					
0 Calling DTE	====>	Calling DTE address or proxy				
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address				
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)				
1 User Data	====> UDATA001 ←					
Days	====> M:	T: W: T: F: S: S:				
Start time	====> H: M: S: End time	====> H: M: S: S:				
P1=Update	P3=Return			Enter=Add		
P4=Activate	P5=Inactivate			P12=Entry P.		

3,21

The rule instructs Virtel to test the **UserData** field passed in a URL and if it matches the string UDATA001 than to assign an LU name prefix of RLG7EH00 and directs the terminal call to use an entry point of LG7HOST. The relay RLG7EH00 will be assigned to the session.



The following messages are displayed at the console:

```
VIRHT51I HTTP-LG7 CONNECTING LG7V0099 TO 192.168.092.080:01439  
VIR0919I LG7V0099 RELAY RLG7EH00(W2HTP000) ACTIVATED
```

If you try to open another session in parallel using the same URL, connection will be refused with the following error messages at the console:

```
VIRHT51I HTTP-LG7 CONNECTING LG7V0098 TO 192.168.092.080:62976  
VIR0923E NO RELAY AVAILABLE FOR LG7V0098 POOL '*LG7POOL' WITH NAME 'RLG7EH00'  
VIR0924E LG7V0098 RELAY *LG7POOL COULD NOT BE ACTIVATED
```

The reason why is that the rule contains an Explicit Fixed value in the *parameter* field, only the first relay of the subpool can be assigned.

If you want to authorized multiple session to be opened to select RLG7EH0n, you must change the RULE definition and replace the last character of the parameter field by a *.

SPVIRDOC V4.59
5830 FR

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: LG7-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRDOC 14:43:01

Name	====> LG7RUL24	Rule priority is per name	
Status	====> ACTIVE	18 Aug 2020 11:26:02 SPTMESL	
Description	====> Rule for UserData specified in URL (UDATA001)		
Entry point	====> LG7HOST	Target Entry Point	
Parameter	====> RLG7EH0* ←	&1 value or LUNAME	
Trace	====>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner	
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT			
0 IP Subnet	====> 000.000.000.000	Mask =====> 255.255.255.255	
0 Host	====>		
0 eMail	====>		
0 Calling DTE	====>	Calling DTE address or proxy	
0 Called	====>	Called DTE address	
0 CUD0 (Hex)	====>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)	
1 User Data	====> UDATA001		
Days	====> M:	T: W: T: F: S: S:	
Start time	====> H: M: S:	End time =====> H: M: S:	
P1=Update		P3=Return	Enter=Add
P4=Activate		P5=Inactivate	P12=Entry P.

3,21

Rule to authorize more than one relay to be used for a matching UserData value

```
VIRHT51I HTTP-LG7 CONNECTING LG7V0099 TO 192.168.092.080:28056
VIR0919I LG7V0099 RELAY RLG7EH00(W2HTP000) ACTIVATED
...
VIRHT51I HTTP-LG7 CONNECTING LG7V0098 TO 192.168.092.080:25238
VIR0919I LG7V0098 RELAY RLG7EH01(W2HTP001) ACTIVATED
...
VIRHT51I HTTP-LG7 CONNECTING LG7V0097 TO 192.168.092.080:07515
VIR0919I LG7V0097 RELAY RLG7EH02(W2HTP002) ACTIVATED
```

Warning: The wildcard * in the parameter field of the rule is limited to 1 and must be at the rightmost position of the name.

Note: The maximum number of sessions that can use a relay of the group depends directly on the pattern of the relay itself. (See *Maximum allowed repeat count value depending on pattern character table* above). For example, with the definition below, relays are assigned in the RLG7EH0A-RLG7EH0Z range.

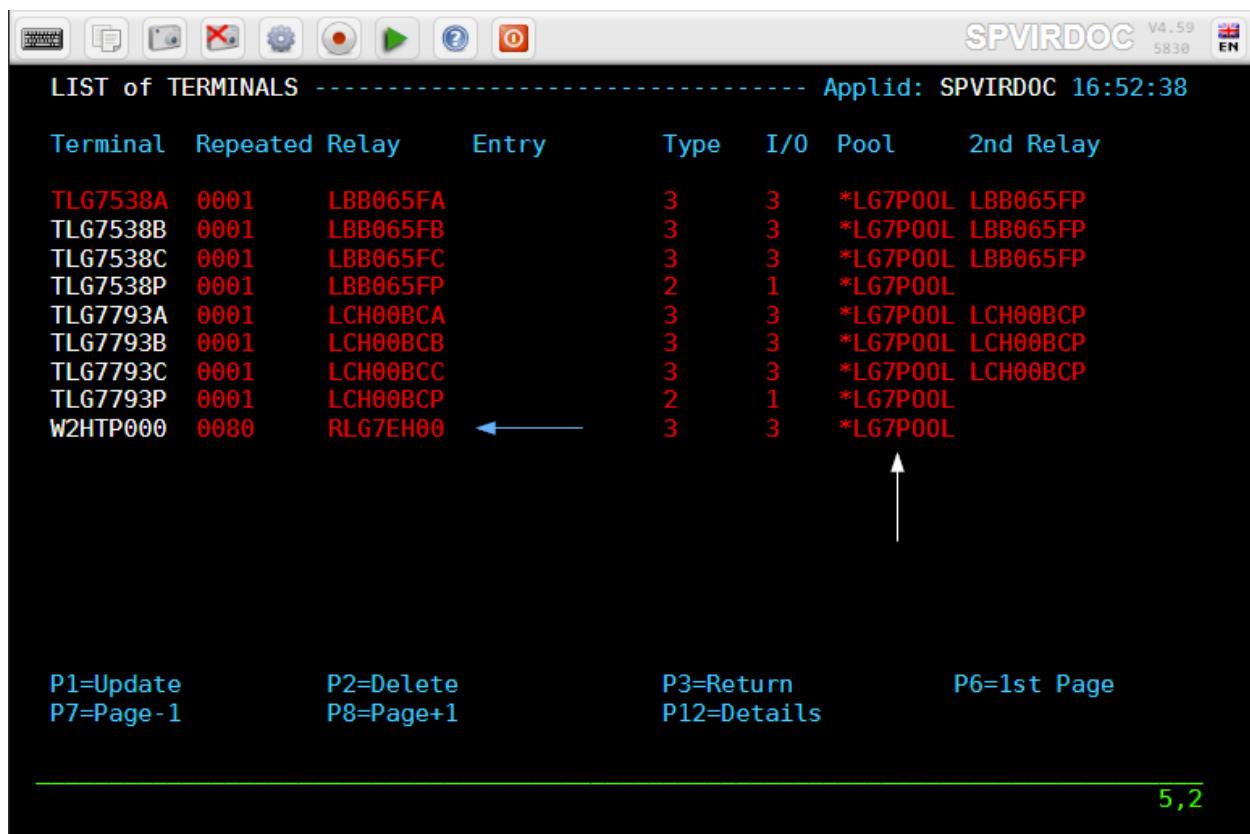
The screenshot shows a Virtel terminal window titled "LIST of TERMINALS". The window includes a toolbar at the top with various icons, a header bar with "SPVIRDOC V4.59 5830 EN", and a timestamp "Applid: SPVIRDOC 15:24:43". The main table lists terminals with their details:

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
TLG7538A	0001	LBB065FA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538B	0001	LBB065FB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538C	0001	LBB065FC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538P	0001	LBB065FP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7793A	0001	LCH00BCA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793B	0001	LCH00BCB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793C	0001	LCH00BCC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793P	0001	LCH00BCP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
W2HTP000	0080	RLG7EH0>	←	3	3	*LG7POOL	

At the bottom, there are several command keys: P1=Update, P2=Delete, P3=Return, P6=1st Page, P7=Page -1, P8=Page+1, and P12=Details. A green footer bar at the bottom right contains the number 5,2.

W2HTP prefix logical pool with RLG7EH0> relays

The batch job obtains the terminal name of the work station, opens a browser window and passes the work station name through to Virtel. With a Virtel RULE we can test the name of the workstation and assign a particular relay LUNAME from a Virtel terminal POOL.



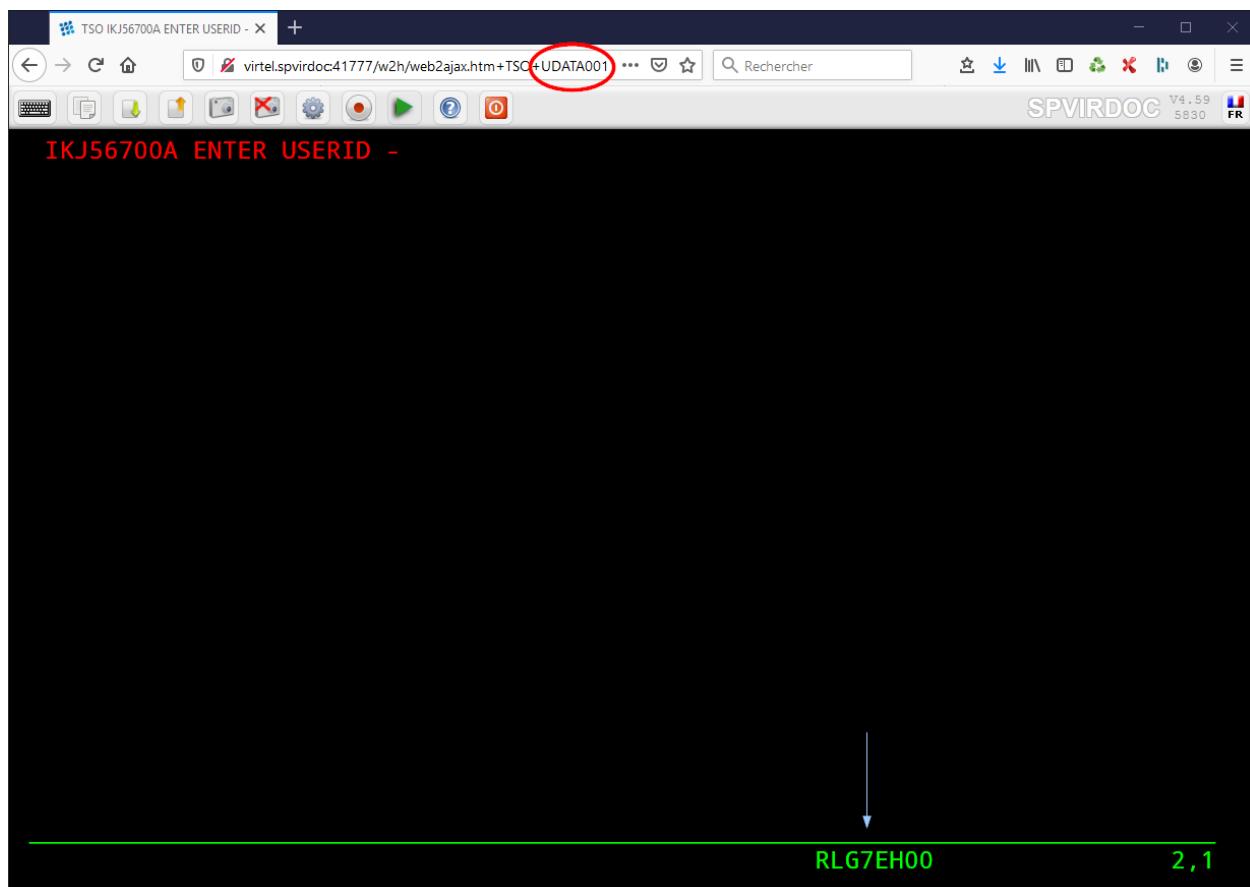
Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd Relay
TLG7538A	0001	LBB065FA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538B	0001	LBB065FB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538C	0001	LBB065FC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LBB065FP
TLG7538P	0001	LBB065FP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
TLG7793A	0001	LCH00BCA		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793B	0001	LCH00BCB		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793C	0001	LCH00BCC		3	3	*LG7POOL	LCH00BCP
TLG7793P	0001	LCH00BCP		2	1	*LG7POOL	
W2HTP000	0080	RLG7EH00	←	3	3	*LG7POOL	

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return P6=1st Page
P7=Page -1 P8=Page+1 P12=Details

5,2

*Logical Pool (W2HTP prefix) included as part of *LG7POOL*

The rule instructs Virtel to test the **UserData** field passed in a URL and if it matches the string HOLT-W than to assign an LU name prefix of EHPMA00 and directs the terminal call to use an entry point of EDSWHOST. A static rule would have to be built for each unique work station name.



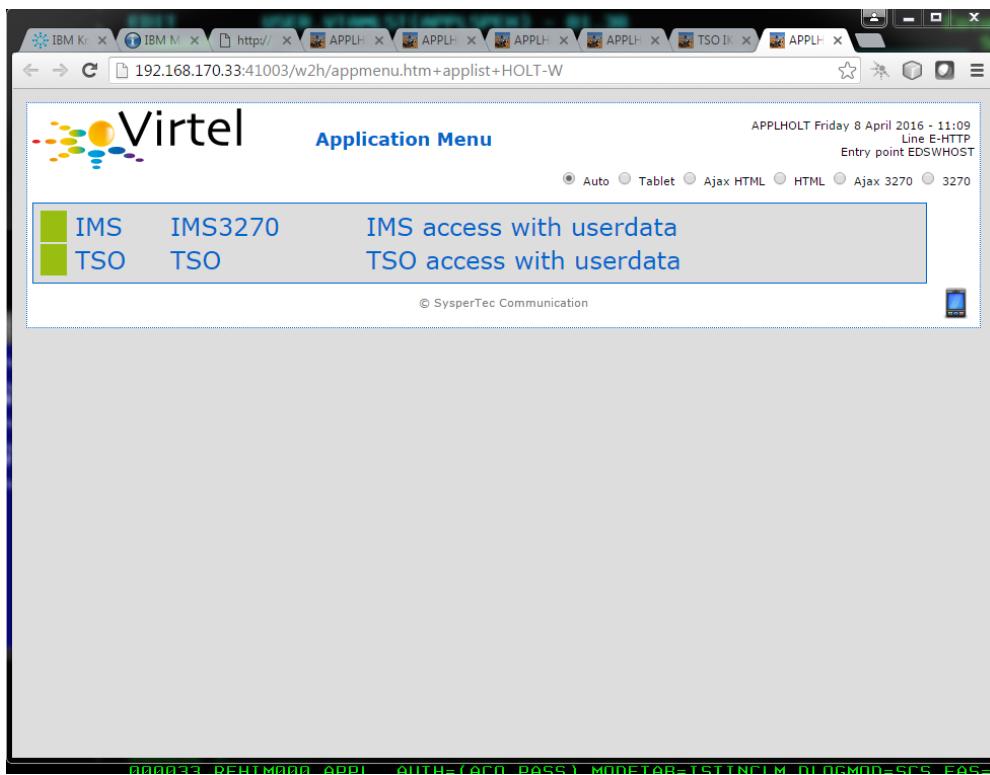
Result of selection by using UDATA001 constant

5.2.3 LU Nailing using a workstation name as UserData

It may be necessary to open a Virtel session and select a relay according to the name of the calling terminal. This can be done for example using the following batch program passing the PC workstation name to Virtel through a batch job which fires up the default browser and passes the work station name as a user data parameter. It is then necessary to define a rule for each caller by positioning the name of the desired relay in the parameter field of the rule.

```
title Test Propagation of Userdata Parameter
@echo on
color 1f
cls
SET P1=%COMPUTERNAME:~0,6%
start http://192.168.170.33:41003/w2h/appmenu.htm+applist+%P1% &goto:eof
:exit
```

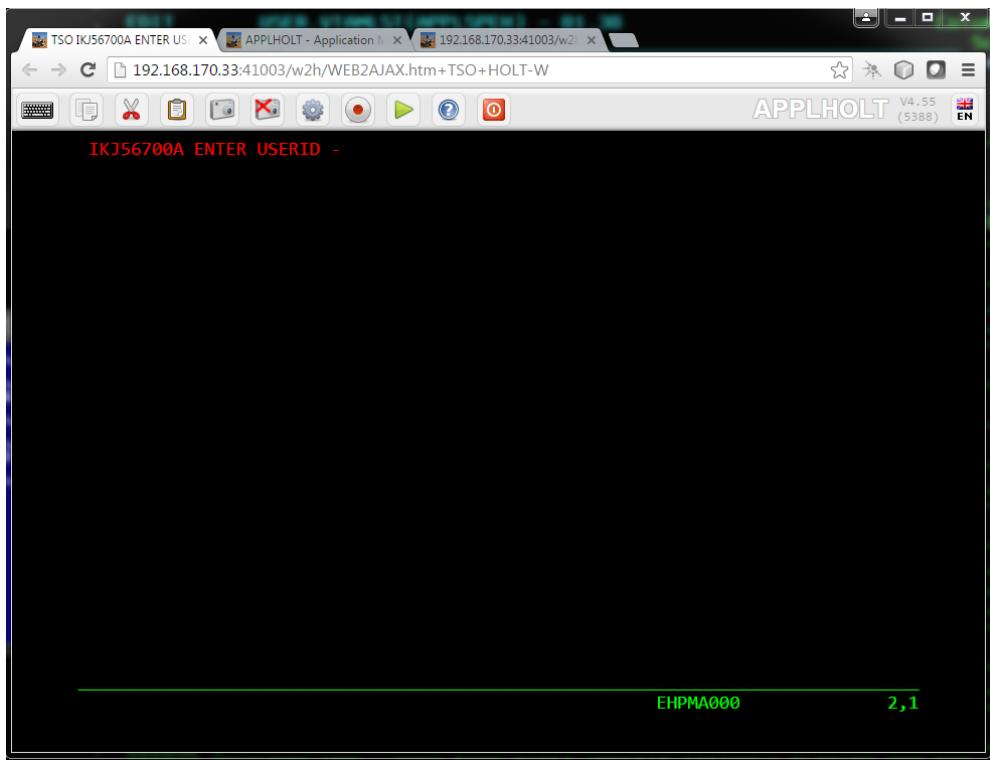
The SET command takes the first six characters of the work station name and passes it into the start command. Following the Virtel transaction I wish to execute which in this case is an APPLIST menu list. The start command will open a default browser window and connect to Virtel:-



Passing User Data to Virtel

When a transaction is selected from the menu list the RULE will be invoked to allocate the correct LUNAME.

»» NE MARCHE PLUS EN 4.59 «««< Incident ouvert sous REDMINE



Selecting a LU name through a rule and work station id in the URL

The Virtel RULE has forced an LU name prefixed EHPMA000 to be used from the VIRTEL terminal pool associated with the Virtel line. In this case relay LUNAME EHPMA000 has been allocated.

5.2.4 LU Nailing passing an LU Name in the URL

Instead of passing a value as a CONSTANT userdata parameter in the URL in this example we are passing an LU name. Again with a Virtel RULE we can extract the user data parameter from the URL and use that as the Virtel relay LUNAME name.

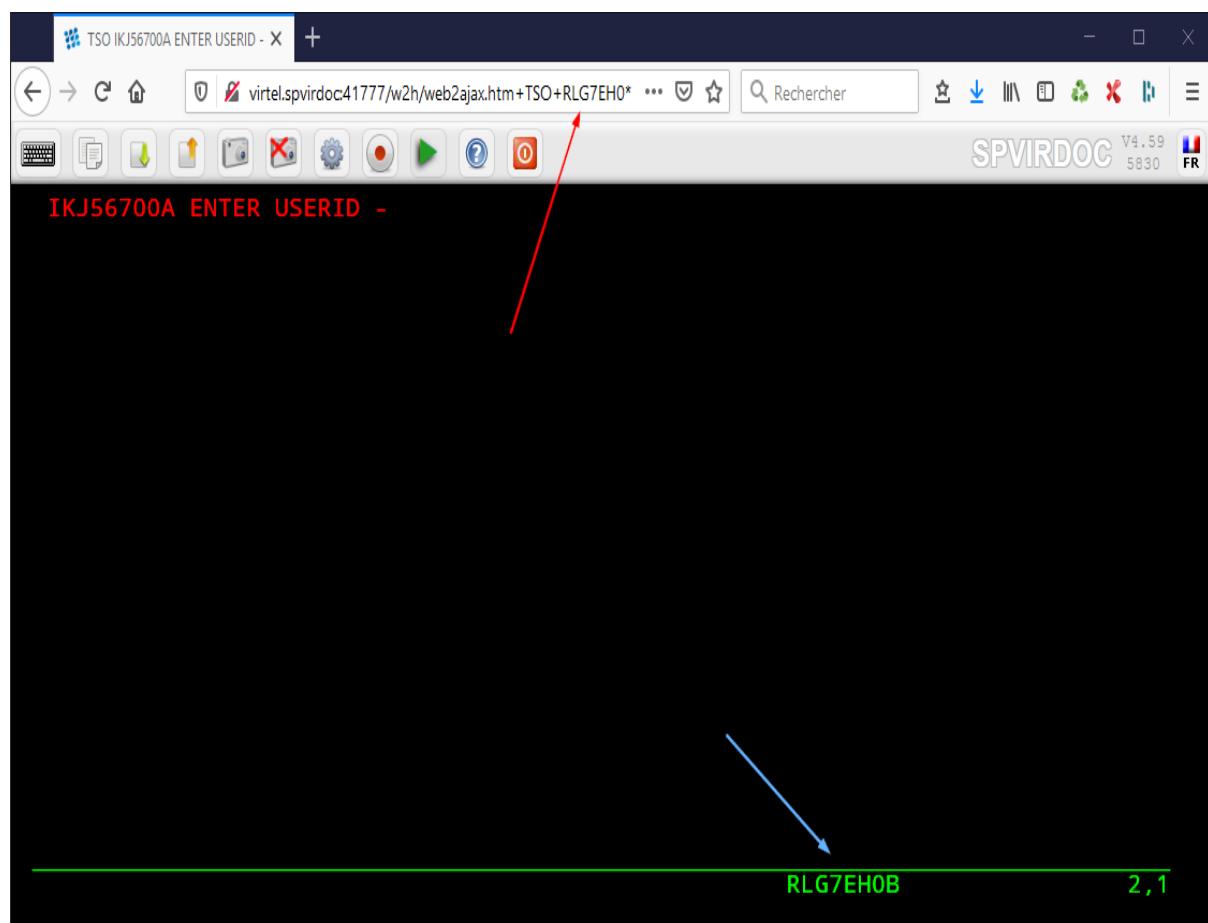
http://192.168.170.33:41003/w2h/web2ajax.htm+TSO+RLG7EH0*

For this example the rule looks like:-

|image40F-75|

Selecting LU Name with a rule and relay name transmitted in the URL

We use the special PARAM=\$URL\$ which indicates that the VTAM LU Name to be used is the user data passed in the URL.



Using \$URL\$ to pass a LU name in the URL

The user data in the URL, in this case RLG7EH0*, will be added to each transaction in the APPLIST menu and used as the Virtel relay LUNAME. When connecting to an application VIRTEL will use the LU name defined in the URL. In this example we are using a generic LUNAME which supports a range from RLG7EH0A through to RLG7EH0Z.

»» NE MARCHE PLUS EN 4.59 ««< Incident ouvert sous REDMINE

Note: You can also specify

5.2.5 ForceLUNAME Example

In the preceding examples both required that terminals and relays be predefined. For some installations this could be a maintenance headache and doesn't scale up very well. It is possible for an HTTP client to connect to VIRTEL with a parameter specifying an arbitrary VTAM LU name to be used as relay name for host applications. For this to work, four conditions must be fulfilled:-

- the VTAM LU name should be specified in the connection URL. For example, if the desired LU name is RLHVT500:

```
http://n.n.n.n:41002/w2h/web2ajax.htm+IMS+ForceLUNAME=RLHVT500
```

- the VIRTEL transaction must specify \$LINE\$ in the "Pseudo-terminals" field instead of a terminal name prefix.
- the HTTP line must specify a pool name
- a terminal pool of the same name should be defined; only the pool is needed, not the predefined pseudo-terminals that are normally defined alongside a pool. The terminal and printer pseudo-terminals will be automatically generated using the pool as a template together with the relay name specified in the ForceLUNAME parameter of the URL.

The ForceLUNAME=luname parameter in the URL is valid only for transactions which specify TERMINAL=\$LINE\$ when attached to a line which has an associated terminal pool.

In this example the transaction whose external name is IMS defined under entry point CLIWHOST. The terminal prefix in the transaction definition is \$LINE\$:

```
TRANSACTION DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: VIRTEL1A 9:46:26

Internal name ===> CLI-14                               To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> IMS                                  Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to IMS
Application ===> IMS3270
PassTicket ===> 0 Name ===>
Application type ===> 1                                 Application to be called
Pseudo-terminals ===> $LINE$                           0=no 1=yes 2=unsigned
                                                       1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Logmode
How started ===> 1                                     Prefix of name of partner terminals
                                                       1=menu 2=sub-menu 3=auto
Security ===> 1                                       0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
H4W commands ? ===>
Logon message ===>

TIOA at logon ===>
TIOA at logoff ===>
Initial Scenario ===>                               Final Scenario      ===>
Input Scenario ===>                               Output Scenario    ===>
P1=Update
P3=Return
P12=Server
```

Transaction definition using non-predefined LU names

The definition of line C-HTTP on port 41002 specifies *MYPOOL as the line pool name:

LINE DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: VIRTEL1A 9:51:14		
Internal name	==> C-HTTP	1st character is line code
External name	==> HTTP-CLI	External entity name
Remote ident	==>	Remote VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Local ident	==> 192.168.170.15:41002	Local VTAM LU or TCP/IP address
Description	==> HTTP line (entry point CLIHOST)	
Prefix	==> CL	Prefix for terminals
Pool	==> *MYPOOL*	Pool for terminals
Entry Point	==> CLIHOST	Default Entry Point on this line
Rule Set	==> C-HTTP	Rules to choose an entry point eg: TCP1 MQ1 XM1 BATCH1 APPC2 ...
Line type	==> TCP1	O=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=I & O
Possible calls	==> 1	
Startup prerequisite	==>	
Protocol program	==> VIRHTTP	Dialog manager
Security program	==>	Non standard security
Time out	==> 0000	Action ==> 0 Action if t/o: 0=none 1=keepalive
Window	==> 0000	Packet ==> 0000 eventual protocol parameters
Pad	==>	Tran ==> PAD=INTEG/TRANSP/NO, TRAN=EVEN/ODD/NO
Retries	==> 0010	Delay ==> Retries for linked to terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
Enter=Add		P4=Terminals P5=Rules

HTTP line definition using non-predefined LU names

The definition of the terminal pool *MYPOOL contains mask characters in the “Relay” and “2nd relay” fields. When a terminal is dynamically created, each “=” sign is substituted by the corresponding character in the ForceLUNAME parameter of the URL:

TERMINAL DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: VIRTEL1A 9:54:33		
Terminal	==> W2HTP000	?wxyZZZZ for dynamic allocation w : Sna or Non-sna or * (category) x : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or * (model) y : Colour, Monochrome or * Z : any characters
Relay	==> =====	Name seen by VTAM applications = : copied from the terminal name
*Pool name	==> *MYPOOL	Pool where to put this terminal
Description	==> Pool for non-predefined relays	
Entry Point	==>	Enforced Entry Point
2nd relay	==> ==PR==	Possible 2nd relay (Printer) 1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Terminal type	==> S	1=LU1 2=3270 3=FC P=Printer S=Scs
Compression	==> 2	0, 1, 2 or 3 : compression type
Possible Calls	==> 3	0=None 1=Inbound 2=Outbound 3=Both
Write Stats to	==> 26	1,4,5,6=VIRSTAT 2=VIRLOG
Repeat	==> 0080	Number of generated terminals
P1=Update		P3=Return
Enter=Add		P12=Server

Terminal pool definition using non-predefined LU names

..note:

The name of the pool is only used to match the pool to its associated line.

Using these definitions with URL parameter ForceLUNAME=RLHVT500 will dynamically generate two pseudo-terminals: RLHVT500 for the terminal session, and RLHPR500 for the associated printer.

The TCT option RTERM= can be used to check that ForceLUNAME parameter. If RTERM=classname is specified in the TCT than a RACHECK against the ForcedLUNAME will be executed to ensure that the luname is allowed for a particular user.

Note: The presence of a ForceLUNAME=luname parameter in the URL implies \$UseCookieSession\$. If a valid VirtelSession cookie is supplied, which corresponds to a currently active session, then the request will be reconnected to that session. If no VirtelSession cookie is present, or if the cookie does not correspond to any currently open session, then an LU name will be constructed by applying the value of the ForceLUNAME parameter with the mask specified in the pool associated with the line. If the LU name constructed in the preceding step is already in use then the request will be rejected with HTTP code 406. Otherwise a new session will be opened using the constructed LU name.

5.3 LU Nailing by cookie

Virtel also can use cookies to select a relay LU name. Virtel uses a cookie as a part of the “Correspondence Sub Application”. Within the cookie sent to Virtel is a security token. This token is used to identify a user and their associated VTAM LU relay name. A Correspondent file is used to maintain the user details. The cookie can be sent to the user as part of an Email from which the User selects a link to access Virtel or it can be part of the ‘self-registration’ process. For further information see the How-To document *Virtel – How to Activate LU Nailing*.

5.4 LU Nailing by IP address

The VirTEL Rules attached to the HTTP line allow the LU name to be selected according to the caller's IP address, by using the fields "IP Subnet" and "Mask" in the rule to match with an IP address or range of IP addresses. The VirTEL Rules associated with a user allow an LU name to be assigned according to a variety of different criteria. For example such as a user's e-mail address [Correspondent Management] which in this case, the user is identified by a "Cookie" which the browser presents to VIRTEL with the HTTP request. See "[VirTEL Rules](#)", for further information on VirTEL Rules.

This technique uses a rule to associate an IP address with an LU Name. The rule is associated with a line. In the example below we define a rule on line W-HTTP which will force a terminal connecting with IP address 192.168.000.039 to use LU name RHTVT001. The LU name must be pre-defined in a VirTEL terminal pool.

```
DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: W-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRBW 14:30:38
Name ===> WHT00110 Rule priority is per name
Status ===> ACTIVE 15 Feb 2010 14:30:35 SPTBOWL
Description ===> HTTP access from IP 192.168.0.39
Entry point ===> WEB2HOST Target Entry Point
Parameter ===> RHTVT001 &1 value or LUNAME
Trace ===> 1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT
1 IP Subnet ===> 192.168.000.039 Mask ===> 255.255.255.255
0 Host ===>
0 eMail ===>
0 Calling DTE ===> Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called ===> Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex) ===> First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data ===>
0 Days ===> M: T: W: T: F: S: S:
0 Start time ===> H: M: S: End time ===> H: M: S:
P1=Update P3=Return Enter=Add
P4=Activate P5=Inactivate P12=Entry P.
```

Rule to map IP address 192.168.100.nnn to LU pool RHTVT1xx

Multiple terminals can be defined with a rule by using the * suffix. In the following example a range of IP address is mapped to a pool of LU names. Address range 192.168.100.0 through to 192.168.100.255 will be assigned the next unused LU name in the range RHTVT1xx.

```
DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: W-HTTP ----- Applid: SPVIRBW 17:53:56
Name ===> WHT00140 Rule priority is per name
Status ===> ACTIVE 15 Feb 2010 17:53:49 SPTBOWL
Description ===> HTTP access from IP 192.168.100.nnn
Entry point ===> WEB2HOST Target Entry Point
Parameter ===> RHTVT1* &1 value or LUNAME
Trace ===> 1=commands 2=data 3=partner
C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT
1 IP Subnet ===> 192.168.100.000 Mask ===> 255.255.255.000
0 Host ===>
0 eMail ===>
0 Calling DTE ===> Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called ===> Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex) ===> First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data ===>
0 Days ===> M: T: W: T: F: S: S:
0 Start time ===> H: M: S: End time ===> H: M: S:
P1=Update P3=Return Enter=Add P4=Activate P5=Inactivate P12=Entry P.
```

Rule to map IP address 192.168.100.nnn to LU pool RHTVT1xx

The new rule is named WHT00140, the “IP Subnet” field specifies the IP address 192.168.100.000, and the “Mask” is set to 255.255.255.000 to indicate that only the first three octets of the IP address are tested to determine whether the rule matches the IP address of the client browser. The “parameter” field specifies a generic LU name RHTVT1* which signifies that any LU whose name begins with RHTVT1 may be assigned to clients whose IP address matches this rule.

5.5 Comparison Table

Type	RULE Required	TERMINAL Definition Reqd.	COOKIES	Terminal POOL Reqd.
By UserData	Yes. 1 per work station	Yes. Individual or group	No	Yes
By \$URL\$ - LUNAME in URL	Yes. 1 generic Rule.	Yes. Individual or group	No	Yes
ForceLUNAME	No	No	No	Yes
By IP (Correspondent)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
By IP	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

TRANSACTIONS

6.1 Introduction

A transaction is a named entity that represents a channel of communication between VIRTEL and one of the following partners:

- A VTAM application, such as, for example, TSO, IMS or CICS,
- A VIRTEL management module, such as the general administration menu,
- A VSAM directory containing WEB components (HTML, Javascript, Images ..) or a VIRTEL Scenario,
- A VIRTEL line,
- An external server.

Note: External servers (in the Virtel sense) being no longer used in modern environments, this type of transaction is no longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

Transactions are administered:

- In real time from the entry point management application,
- In batch using a TRANSACT type definition

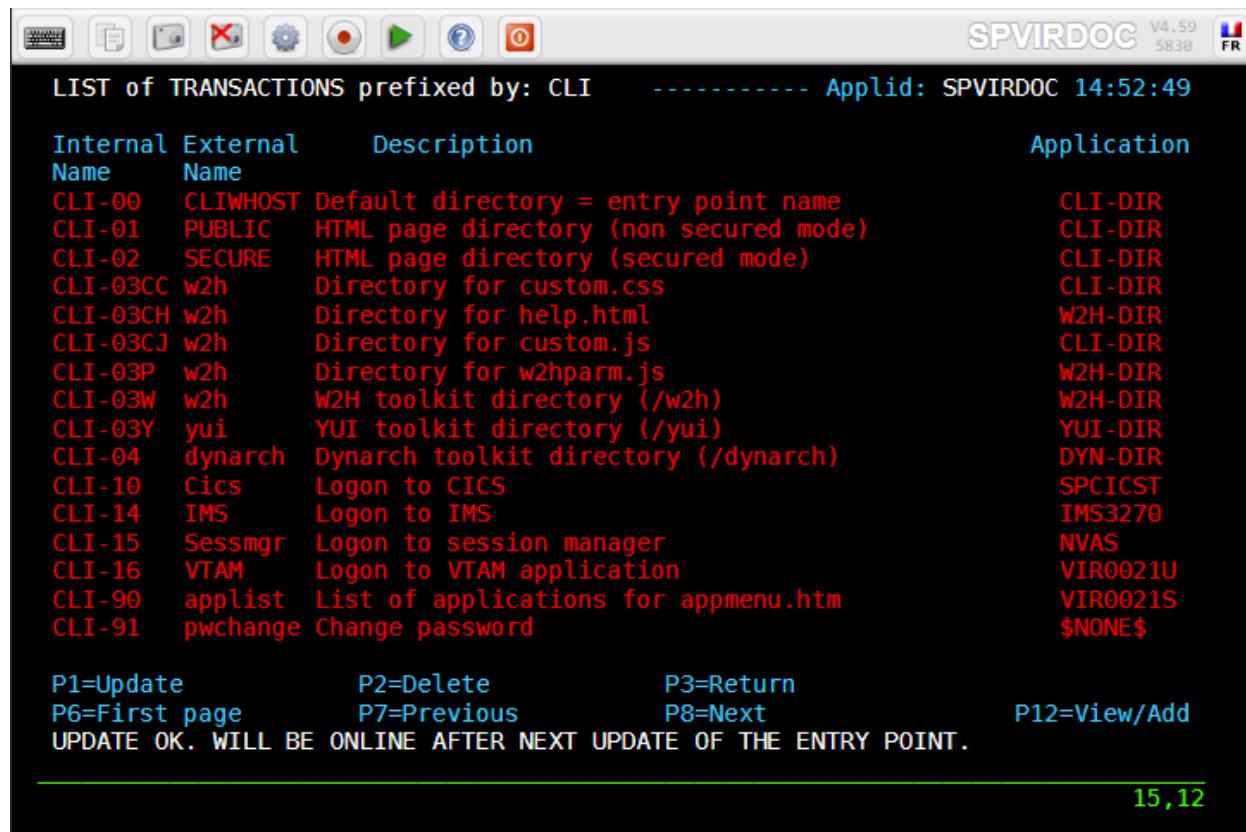
Each transaction is known to VIRTEL by its **internal name** and to the user by its **external name** and defines the rules of connection / disconnection of the referenced application.

When a security tool is used, and if the transaction is defined as SECURED, only the transactions defined as resources appearing in the profiles of a user are accessible by that user.

The entry point management sub-application allows the administrator to associate a group of transactions to an Entry Point.

6.1.1 Summary Display

Press [PF4] on the entry point detail screen to display the list of associated transactions:



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "LIST of TRANSACTIONS prefixed by: CLI". The window includes a toolbar at the top with various icons. The main area displays a table of transaction details:

Internal Name	External Name	Description	Application
CLI-00	CLIWHOST	Default directory = entry point name	CLI-DIR
CLI-01	PUBLIC	HTML page directory (non secured mode)	CLI-DIR
CLI-02	SECURE	HTML page directory (secured mode)	CLI-DIR
CLI-03CC	w2h	Directory for custom.css	CLI-DIR
CLI-03CH	w2h	Directory for help.html	W2H-DIR
CLI-03CJ	w2h	Directory for custom.js	CLI-DIR
CLI-03P	w2h	Directory for w2hparm.js	W2H-DIR
CLI-03W	w2h	W2H toolkit directory (/w2h)	W2H-DIR
CLI-03Y	yui	YUI toolkit directory (/yui)	YUI-DIR
CLI-04	dynarch	Dynarch toolkit directory (/dynarch)	DYN-DIR
CLI-10	Cics	Logon to CICS	SPCICST
CLI-14	IMS	Logon to IMS	IMS3270
CLI-15	Sessmgr	Logon to session manager	NVAS
CLI-16	VTAM	Logon to VTAM application	VIR0021U
CLI-90	applist	List of applications for appmenu.htm	VIR0021S
CLI-91	pwchange	Change password	\$NONE\$

At the bottom of the screen, there are several command keys: P1=Update, P2=Delete, P3=Return, P6=First page, P7=Previous, P8=Next, P12=View/Add, and a message: UPDATE OK. WILL BE ONLINE AFTER NEXT UPDATE OF THE ENTRY POINT.

Transaction Summary Display

Field Contents

Internal name Indicates the internal name of the transaction as it is known to the system. If a security tool is used and if the transaction is SECURED, this name must be defined as a resource. Only those users with the resource in one of their profiles can access this transaction.

Note: Note that on the Multi-Session Menu or in the Web Appmenu List, these transactions appear in alphanumeric order of their internal name.

External name Indicates the name of the transaction as it is known to the end user. This name appears in field [10] of the Multi-Session Menu, as shown in the chapter describing Multi-Session. This is also the name by which the transaction is referenced in an HTTP request.

Warning: The external name of a transaction must not start or contain any internal space or it cannot be used directly in a URL or from the Web Appmenu List.

Description Caption associated with the transaction. This caption appears on the Multi-Session Menu or in the Web Appmenu List.

Application Indicates the name of the application accessed via the transaction. This application can be:

- A VTAM application, such as, for example, TSO, IMS or CICS,
- A VIRTEL management module, such as the general administration menu,
- A VSAM directory containing WEB components (HTML, Javascript, Images ..) or a VIRTEL Scenario,

- A VIRTEL line,
- An external server.

Note: External servers being no longer used in modern environment, this type of transaction is no longer documented here. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

Navigation

There are several ways to navigate within this list:

Search Type the name, or the partial name, of the desired element in the first line of the first column and press [Enter].

[PF6] Return to the first page of the list.

[PF7] Display the previous page of the list.

[PF8] Display the next page of the list.

Modifying a transaction definition - To modify the details of a transaction, type the required changes in the appropriate fields and press [PF1]. You can change more than one definition at a time. To modify a field not shown on the summary screen, position the cursor on the transaction and press [PF12] to display the transaction detail screen. Important note: Changes do not take effect until you press [PF1].

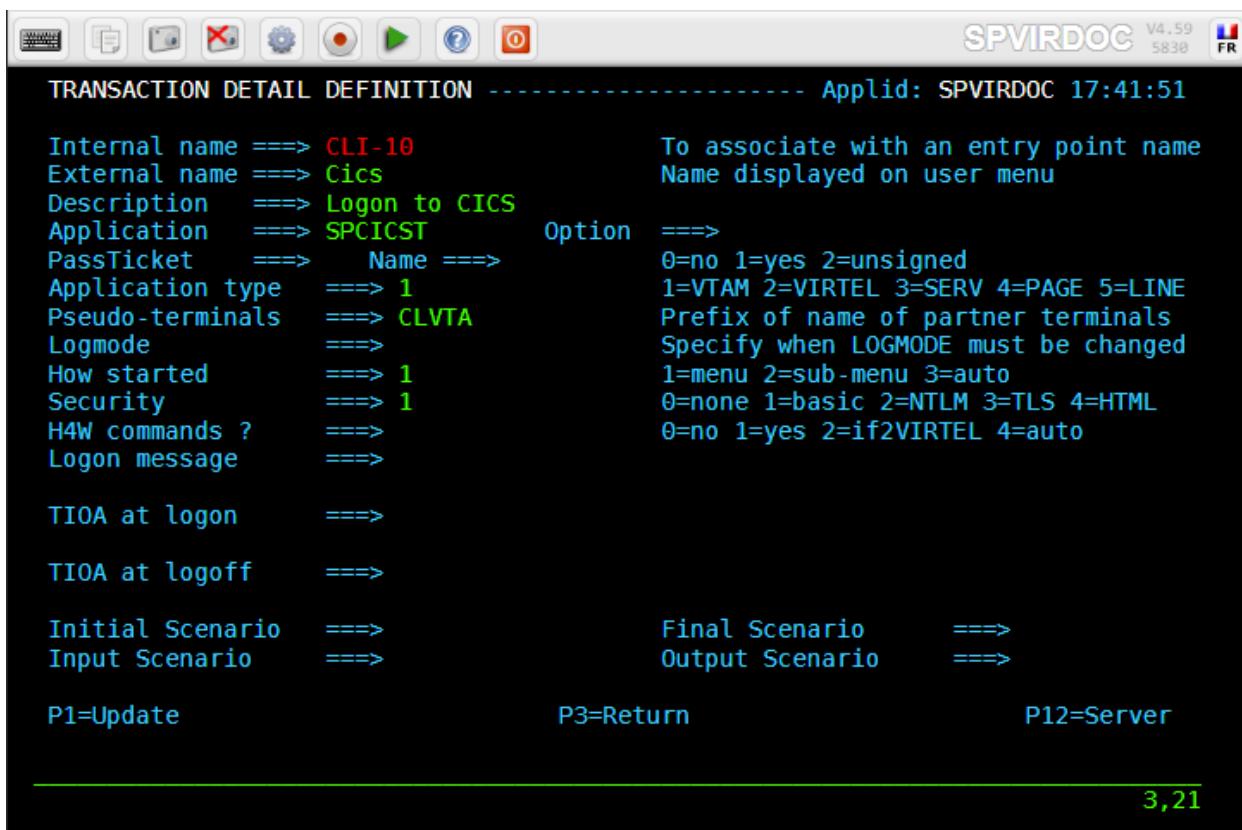
Deleting a transaction definition - To delete a definition, position the cursor on the name of the transaction to be deleted and press [PF2]. The line associated with the transaction to be deleted will appear highlighted with the message CONFIRM DELETE. Press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each transaction to be deleted.

Adding a transaction definition - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy certain of its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition. Complete all required fields and press [ENTER]. The message CREATE OK indicates that the operation completed successfully

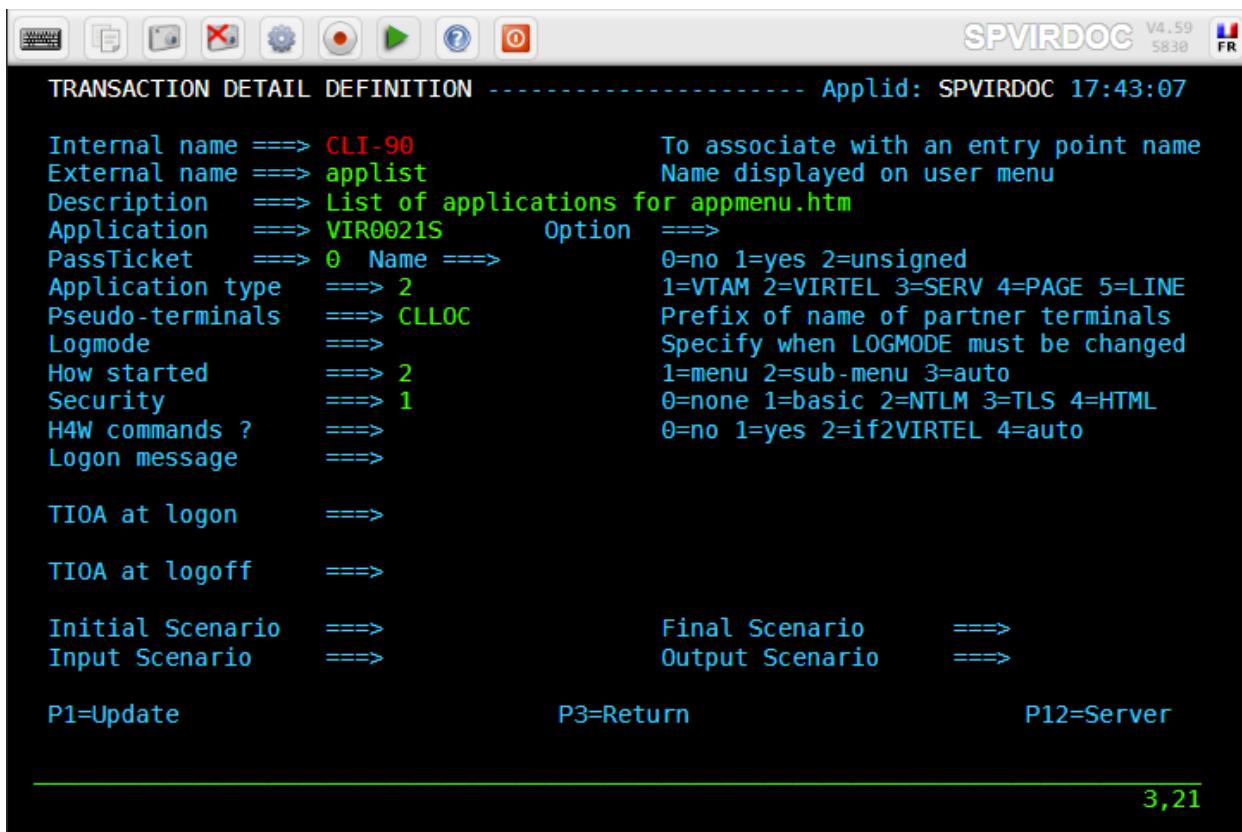
Warning: After creating, updating or deleting a transaction definition, you must also update the entry point(s) concerned by pressing [PF3] twice (to return to the list of entry points) then [PF1] to register the change(s) to the entry point(s) using the concerned transaction(s).

6.1.2 Detail Display

To access the detailed transaction definition, position the cursor on the desired transaction and press [PF12]. The transaction detail definition screen will then be displayed.



Transaction Detail Screen to access a VTAM application



Transaction Definition Screen to access a NON-VTAM application

6.1.3 Parameters

Internal name The name of the transaction as it is known to the system. The first “n” characters of this name are the prefix by which the transaction is linked to one or more entry points. Transaction security is based on this internal name. It should be noted that the transactions are placed on the Multi-Session Menu or Web Application List in alphanumeric order of the internal name.

External name The name of the transaction as it is presented to the user in the selection screen. This is also the name by which the transaction is referenced in an HTTP request (see “VIRTEL URL formats” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide).

The external name of a transaction must not start with or contain any spaces, else it cannot be used directly in a URL or from the Web Appmenu List.

Description The label associated with the transaction as it is presented to the user in the selection screen.

Application The name of the application associated with the transaction.

This application can be a VTAM application, a VIRTEL sub-application, a directory containing HTML pages.

For application type 4, you can press [PF12] to display the detailed definition of the HTML directory.

When the “Application Type” is 5, this field contains the internal or external name of a VIRTEL line. Application type 5 is used by the SEND\$ TO and SEND\$ VARIABLE-TO instructions (see “VIRTEL Scenarios” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide)

PassTicket Indicates whether VIRTEL should generate a PassTicket for this application. Possible values are:

- 0 (default value) indicates that VIRTEL should not generate PassTickets for this application.
- 1 specifies that VIRTEL should generate a PassTicket, using the specified RACF application name, if the user has signed on to VIRTEL.
- 2 specifies that VIRTEL should generate a PassTicket, even if the user has not signed on to VIRTEL.

Note: For value 1 or 2, the PASSTCK=YES parameter must also be specified in the VIRTCT. Passticket support is described in the “Virtel Security Reference Guide”. The value 2 implies that the user has supplied the userid in some other way, for example by means of a scenario containing the COPY\$ VARIABLE-TO-SYSTEM, FIELD=(NAME-OF,USER) instruction (see VIRTEL Web Access Guide)

Name The name of the application as known to RACF for generation of PassTickets. This may be different from the VTAM application name.

Application Type Defines the type of application described in the “Application” field. Permissible values for this field are:

- 1 for a VTAM application
- 2 for a VIRTEL sub-application or IMS-CONNECT application
- 3 for an external server (*No longer documented here*)
- 4 for a directory containing HTML pages
- 5 for a reference to a VIRTEL line

Pseudo Terminals Specifies the prefix of the name of the terminal which will be used to connect to the application. The value assigned to this field depends on the type of application being accessed.

For a type 1 application, must be the prefix associated with the group of relay terminals attached to the line.

Warning: For inbound HTTP calls, if the name of the relay terminal used to connect to the application is forced using the **FORCELUNAME=** URL parameter, then this field must be initialized with the conventional value **\$LINE\$**. (see “HTTP connections with nonpredefined LU names”).

For a type 2 application, must be left to blank.

Warning: If the Application field references the **VIR0021U** or **VIR0021W** module used for USSTAB support, then this field must contain the prefix associated with the group of relay terminals attached to the line.

For a type 3 application, (*No longer documented here*). For a type 4 application, must be the prefix associated with the group of **local terminals** attached to the line. For a type 5 application, TO BE DOCUMENTED.

Logmode

The name of the new LOGMODE that MUST be used to connect to the application.

This overrides any LOGMODE parameter specified in the URL or in an identification scenario.
(See :ref:`logmode-precedence-label`.)

How started Represents the desired startup mode for the transaction. Permissible values are as follows:

- 1 The transaction is integrated in the primary list. If authorised after security checking, it will appear in the primary Multi-Session menu. User intervention will be required to access this application, unless menu programs VIR0021B or VIR0021C are used.
- 2 The transaction is integrated in the secondary list. If authorised after security checking, it will appear in the Multi-Session sub-menu. User intervention will be required to access this application.
- 3 The transaction is integrated in the primary list with automatic startup when the terminal connects to VIRTEL. If several transactions defined with automatic startup appear in the primary list, only the last one in the hierarchy is activated at connection time.

Note: How started 3 does not apply to HTTP/SMTP inbound calls.

Security The type of security applied to the transaction.

- 0 Public transaction. A public transaction is always available whatever security tool is used.
- 1 Secure transaction (Basic security). A secure transaction is only available to a user if authorized by the active security tool. For HTTP access, the user is prompted, if necessary, for a userid and password.

Note: If passphrase support is not active then passwords will be truncated to the first 8 characters. Passphrase support is activated by the PASSPHRASE option of the

SECUR keyword in the TCT. See the Virtel Installation Guide for further details.

- 2** Secure transaction (NTLM security). For HTTP access only, security type 2 allows VIRTEL to obtain the Windows userid of the user, without prompting the user to signon again. The active security tool must recognize the userid and grant access to the transaction. This type of security should only be used on a LAN or on an encrypted session.
- 3** Secure transaction (Certificate security). A transaction with type 3 security must be accessed via HTTPS (secure session), and the client browser must present a certificate recognized by the active security tool (RACF). The userid associated with the certificate must be granted permission by the security tool to access the transaction. Type 3 security is only possible when running z/OS V1R7 or later, using a secure connection provided by AT-TLS
- 4** Secure transaction (HTML security). Used with HTTP access, security type 4 allows VIRTEL to obtain the userid and password of the user from fields supplied in the HTML page. The fields must be declared by means of the DECLARE-FIELD-AS tag in the page template. For more details, refer to the section “Creating HTML and XML template pages: Signon and password management” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

Translation(s) Type(s) of translation supported for MINITEL connections are not longer documented. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

H4W commands For HTTP connections, this field indicates under what conditions HOST4WEB commands should be processed. Specify one of the following values:

- 0** Never process HOST4WEB commands.
- 1** Always process HOST4WEB commands.
- 2** Process HOST4WEB commands only if the first field of the message begins with the characters “2VIRTEL”.
- 4** Process HOST4WEB commands if either (a) the entry point specifies emulation type HOST4WEB or H4W, or (b) the entry point specifies HTML and the first field of the message begins with the characters “2VIRTEL”. These values are meaningful only when the entry point specifies emulation type HTML, HOST4WEB, or H4W. For further details, refer to the “Programming Interfaces” section in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

Logon message Application type 1: Character string sent to the application as “Logon data” at connection time. This string may also contain certain script variables and orders as described below. Application type 3: (*No longer documented here*) Application type 4: For HTML directory definition transactions, the field “Logon message” is replaced by the field “Check URL Prefix”

Check URL Prefix Application type 4: If the pathname of a URL matches the character string specified in this field, then the pathname corresponds to the VIRTEL directory whose name is specified in the “Application” field. See “How the path name corresponds to a VIRTEL directory” in the “VIRTEL URL formats” section of the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

TIOA at logon Application type 1: Script to be run at application connection time. Scripts are described under the heading “Connection – Disconnection Scripts”. Application type 4: For type 4 (HTML directory definition) transactions having the same name as an entry point, the “TIOA at logon” field contains the default URL for the entry point. Refer to the “VIRTEL URL formats” section of the VIRTEL Web Access Guide for further details.

TIOA at logoff Application types 1: Script to be run before disconnecting from the application.

Initial Scenario

Final Scenario

Input Scenario

Output Scenario

Each of these fields may contain the name of a scenario. For each field which is non-blank, VIRTEL will call the corresponding scenario (INITIAL, FINAL, INPUT, or OUTPUT) in the named presentation module. An OUTPUT scenario may also be referenced by a VIRTEL Multi-Session transaction.

Note: Scenarios are described under the heading “Presentation modules” in the VIRTEL User Guide.

Warning: After adding, deleting or updating a transaction, it is essential to update the entry points used by this transaction by pressing [PF1] at the entry point summary screen.

6.1.4 LOGMODE precedence

LOGMODE reference can be present either in:

- VTAM appl card
- Transaction definition
- In the *LOGMODE=* URL parameter

If the VIRTEL transaction references a LOGMODE, this logmode will always take precedence over that present in the APPL card AND over that possibly passed in URL

If the VIRTEL transaction does not refer to LOGMODE, then the one possibly passed in URL will take precedence over that present in the APPL CARD

In all cases, the DISPLAY VTAM of the APPL card relates the definition of the APPL card, but never that of the LOGMODE used in the session.

ENTRY POINTS

7.1 Introduction

Entry points define the session context for a terminal or for certain types of lines. A terminal connecting to VIRTEL must connect via an entry point. This section describes the functions associated with entry point management, as well as the correlation with other elements of VIRTEL system administration, for example, line, transaction and terminal management.

An entry point is a named entity that groups certain information designed to authorise, personalise and protect access to the host site. Entry points define the type of emulation required, the type of security control, which sign-on screen must be sent to the user at log on time, what type of Multi-session menu must be used and what applications are to be made available to the user.

7.1.1 Entry Point Management Sub-Application

The Entry Point Management sub-application is accessed by pressing [PF3] in the Configuration Menu, or [PF13] in the Sub-Application Menu, or from the Multi-Session Menu via a transaction referencing module VIR0044. This sub-application is used to manage the parameters associated with each entry point.

7.1.2 Security

When security is active, access to entry point management from the Configuration Menu or the Sub-Application Menu is controlled by the resource \$\$GLOG\$\$. When accessed by a transaction, the rules governing the management of transaction security apply. Security management is described in chapter 4 of the VIRTEL Technical Documentation.

7.1.3 Selecting an Entry Point

The entry point used in the connection from a terminal may be specified in various ways:

3270 Terminals

The entry point to be used for a connection from a 3270 terminal can be specified:

- In the DATA parameter of a logon sequence. For example:

 :: LOGON APPLID(VIRTEL) DATA(PC)

- In the VIRTEL terminal definition (See terminal-parameter-entry-point-label <Parameter of terminal>).
- If no entry point is specified, the default entry point is the first value of the DEFENTR parameter in the VIRTCT. If this value does not exist, the terminal receives a signon screen compatible with the original Multi-Session VIRTEL (before version 3.0).

Incoming calls on HTTP or SMTP lines

For an incoming call on this type of line, the entry point is chosen:

- By the rules of the line, if a rule exists which matches the characteristics of the request.
- Otherwise the default entry point specified in the definition of the HTTP or SMTP line will be used.

Asynchronous terminals on X25 non-GATE lines

As X25 lines are no longer used, this part of the documentation has been removed. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

Incoming calls on X25 lines - GATE, FastC, XOT

As X25 lines are no longer used, this part of the documentation has been removed. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

Outgoing calls from an X25 application via a reverse X25 line - /GATE, /FASTC, or /PCNE

As X25 lines are no longer used, this part of the documentation has been removed. For more information, refer to the “Virtel459_Connectivity_Guide” documentation.

7.1.4 Summary Display

The entry point management application manages the entry points and their associated transactions. The first screen displayed shows a summary of existing entry points in alphanumeric order. A complete description of each field is presented in the following section.

LIST of ENTRY POINTS ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 15:50:40		
Name	Description	Transactions
\$STI	X25 native to \$ENTRANT	X25TCP
AM51	APPC connection from CICS	PC
AM51X25	X25 outgoing calls from CICS	X25-
CLIWHOST	HTTP entry point (CLIENT application)	CLI
EDSHOST	HTTP entry point (EDS application)	EDS
E01TX1	XOT Test	T01TX1
IPAHOST	IPAD entry point	IPA
PC	3270 connections	PC
PRTAPPL	Connect printers to host application	PRTA
SOAPVIRJ	Requests from IMS Connect	OTMA
SOAPVIRT	Requests from IMS Connect	OTMA
VSRWHOST	HTTP entry point (Virtel Screen Redesigner)	VSR
VTGWHOST	VTG entry point	VTG
WEB2HOST	HTTP entry point (SysperTec menu)	W2H

P1=Update	P2=Delete	P3=Return	P4=Transactions
P6=First page	P7=Previous	P8=Next	P12=View / Add

Entry Point Summary Display

Field Contents

Name: The name of the entry point.

Description: Description of the entry point.

Transaction: Prefix of the names of the transactions associated with this entry point (maximum 6 characters).

Modifying an entry point definition: - To modify the definition of an entry point, enter the required information in the field then press [PF1]. Several definitions may be modified simultaneously. If the field you wish to modify does not appear on the summary screen, position the cursor on the entry and press [PF12] to display the definition detail screen. Modifications do not take effect until you press [PF1]. Certain modifications, for instance a modification to an entry point used by a line, require a restart of VIRTEL.

Deleting an entry point definition: - To delete a definition, position the cursor on the name of the entry to be deleted and press [PF2]. The line associated with the entry to be deleted will appear highlighted with the message CONFIRM DELETE. Press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each entry to be deleted.

Adding an entry point definition: - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy certain of its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition.

7.1.5 Transaction Display

To access the list of transactions associated with an entry point, position the cursor on the desired entry point and press [PF4]. The transaction management menu will then appear.

7.1.6 Detail Display

To display the details of an entry point, position the cursor on the desired entry point in the summary screen and press [PF12].

```
ENTRY POINT DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 15:54:38

Name      ===> EDSHOST          Name this ENTRY POINT (LOGON DATA)
Description ===> HTTP entry point (EDS application)
Transactions ===> EDS           Prefix for associated transactions
Last page   ===>
Transparency ===>
Time out    ===> 0720      minutes Maximum inactive time
Do if timeout ===> 0           0=logoff 1=bip+logoff 2=anti pad
Emulation   ===> HTML          Type of terminal:
HOST4WEB   : program driven   HTML : Web Browser
SCENARIO   : script driven    EMAIL : SMTP client
Directory for scenarios ===> SCE-DIR If scenarios in VSAM, not LOADLIB
Signon program        ===> VIR0020H Controls user name and password
Menu program         ===> VIR0021A List of transactions
Identification scenario ===> SCENLOGM eg XML identification
Type 3 compression    ===>
Mandatory identification ===>
3270 swap key       ===> eg P24
Extended colors     ===> E      E: extended X: extended + DBCS

P1=Update          P3=Return          P4=Transactions
Enter=Add
```

Entry point detail display

7.1.7 Parameters

Name Represents the name of the entry point as specified in a logon sequence, or in the “Entry point” field of a terminal, line, or rule definition.

Description Describes the entry point.

Transactions Indicates the prefix (0 to 6 characters) of the transactions associated with this entry point.

Last page This field, which is used only for HTTP connections, indicates the name of the HTML page which will be displayed after the connection with the host application terminates. If blank, then the default page (whose name is equal to the entry point name) will be displayed.

Note: For Minitel entry points, the “Last page” field is not displayed, and the “Videotex key” field is displayed instead.

Videotex key This field, which is used only for Minitel connections, indicates the key word used to direct the request to the Minitel tree structure.

Note: If routing is not necessary, for example for STI or JOUTEL, the keyword \$NONE\$ may be used.

Transparency Indicates the type(s) of external server(s) where translation from ASCII to EBCDIC must not be used.

Time Out User inactivity timeout period (in minutes). If the user (or calling terminal) sends no messages during this period, the “Do if timeout” procedure is invoked. This timeout takes effect only for terminals using this entry point via HTTP, VIRTELPC, or X25 connections. It has no effect for 3270 connections. The default is 720 minutes. A value of 0 implies no timeout.

Do if timeout Action to be taken if the value specified in the “Time Out” field is exceeded.

- 0 Break the session.
- 1 Sound an alarm, then break the session if user takes no action.
- 2 Generate an inaudible alarm to avoid X25 PAD timeout.

Note: While the terminal is connected to an external server application, session outage can also occur if the timeouts specified in the external server definition are exceeded.

Emulation Indicates the type of emulation if the terminal using the entry point is not a 3270.

BORNE For Minitels without accentuated character support.

EBCDIC For asynchronous connections without ASCII / EBCDIC translation.

EMAIL For SMTP connections.

HTML For HTTP connections.

HOST4WEB or H4W For HTTP connections. Same as HTML, except that it also allows HOST4WEB commands to be embedded in 3270 screens (for details, refer to the “Programming Interfaces” section in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide).

MINITEL For Minitel connections in 40 or 80 column mode.

PC For connections via VIRTEL/PC.

VT For VT100 or VT200 type connections.

X25 For connections via Reverse-X25 or APPC2 lines.

\$NONE\$ For simple terminals in LUTYPE0 mode with ASCII translation. Even or odd parity, if required, can be specified at the line level.

\$NONE\$-E Same as \$NONE\$ but without ASCII translation.

Signon program Indicates the name of the program used to control user sign-on with the active security tool. If this field is not completed, no sign-on control is performed. Allowable values for this field are listed in section 1.4.4 117.

Menu program Indicates the name of the program which presents the list of transactions which the user is allowed to access. Permissible values are listed in section 1.4.5.

Identification scenario For emulation type MINITEL: Indicates the name of the program responsible for physical identification of Minitels connecting to VIRTEL. For all other emulation types: Indicates the name of the presentation module containing the identification scenario for this entry point.

Scenarios are described under the heading “Presentation modules” in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide.

Type 3 compression Indicates whether this entry point allows the use of level 3 compression. For more information on this subject, refer to “Parameters Of The Terminal”. An ‘X’ in this field activates support for level 3 compression.

Mandatory identification Indicates whether connections made via VIRTEL/PC must present a physical identification of the connecting PC. Refer to the chapter VIRTEL PC/VT100 for more information on this subject. An ‘X’ in this field activates the PC identification process.

3270 swap key Indicates the function key which allows the user to return from a transaction to the Multi-Session Menu. Permissible values are PF1 to PF24, PA1, PA2, PA3. If this field is blank, the swap key is specified by the SWAP parameter in the VIRTCT.

Extended colors An ‘E’ in this field indicates support for 3270 extended attributes and colors. An ‘X’ indicates support for 3270 extended attributes and colors together with support for DBCS (Double Byte Character Set).

7.1.8 Signon Programs

The Signon Program field of the entry point indicates the name of the program used to control user sign-on. The following signon programs are supplied with VIRTEL:

VIR0020A Standard program for sign-on processing by entry of USER/PASSWORD sequence via sign-on screen.

VIR0020B Program used to process a logon sequence containing USER and PASSWORD. The logon sequence must conform to the following format: LOGON APPLID(ACBVIRTEL) DATA(EP USER PASSWORD) or EP (where EP is the entry point name).

VIR0020C Program identical to VIR0020B, but without any validity check on the password.

VIR0020H Sign-on program with WINDOWS user interface for HTTP mode.

VIR0020M Standard sign-on program for 40-column Minitel.

VIR0020L Standard sign-on program for 40-column Minitel by entry of USER and PASSWORD. The sign-on screen is produced with the help of a Videotex overlay whose name is the same as the entry point used. The source of this screen is in the member MAPSIGN. After changing the source, the resultant phase or load module can be placed into a separate LOADLIB concatenated to DFHRPL.

VIR0020P Program similar to VIR0020L which allows access to public transactions (those defined with security = 0), if sign-on is rejected by the security system.

7.1.9 Menu Programs

The Menu Program field of the entry point indicates the name of the program which presents the list of transactions which the user is allowed to access. The following program names can be specified:

VIR0021A Standard menu program for VIRTEL Multi-Session and HTTP.

VIR0021B Program for connecting to a single transaction. This program only manages transactions defined in startup mode 1. The terminal is directly connected to the first transaction defined in startup mode 1.

VIR0021C Program for connecting in Flip-Flop mode to authorized transactions. This program only manages transactions defined in startup mode 1. The user is directly connected to the first transaction defined in startup mode 1. When the user exits this application, the user is automatically connected to the next one and so on. When the last transaction in the list is reached, the user is reconnected to the first one. The use of a transaction referencing the LOGOFF subapplication allows the user to exit from VIRTEL.

VIR0021D Program reserved for STI.

VIR0021E Program for connecting incoming X25 calls destined for an AntiPCNE line. This program emulates the function of a VTAM logon interpret table. It reads the first message and selects the transaction whose external name matches the first 8 characters of the message. If there is no matching transaction then message VIR2151E is issued and the call is cleared.

VIR0021F Program for connecting incoming X25 calls destined for an AntiPCNE line. This program emulates the function of a VTAM logon interpret table. It reads the first message sent by the partner (known as the pre-connexion message) and selects the transaction whose “Logon message” field matches the start of the pre-connection message. The “Logon message” field can contain an EBCDIC character string enclosed in apostrophes (case sensitive), or a hexadecimal string in the format X'hh...hh'. An empty string (two apostrophes) matches any message. The pre-connection message is passed on to the application. If there is no transaction whose “Logon message” matches the pre-connection message, then console message VIR2161E is issued and the call is cleared.

VIR0021G Program for connecting incoming X25 calls destined for an AntiPCNE line. This program is similar to VIR0021F except that (a) the pre-connection message is not passed on to the transaction, and (b) if the pre-connection message does not match any transaction, the program continues to read incoming messages until a match is found. The entry point may contain additional transactions whose external name is USSMSGnn. These transactions do not participate in the matching of pre-connection messages, but instead are used to generate responses to the terminal during the preconnection phase. If a transaction with external name USSMSG10 is present, the contents of its “Logon message” field are sent to the terminal upon receipt of the call packet. If a pre-connection message arrives from the terminal which does not match any transaction, then the program looks for a transaction whose external name is USSMSG01 and sends the contents of its “Logon message” field to the terminal; if there is no transaction named USSMSG01 then message VIR2172E is issued and the call is cleared. If a transaction with external name USSMSG00 is present, the contents of its “Logon message” field are sent to the terminal immediately before the call is connected to the target application.

VIR0021J Program for connecting to the first available transaction in a list. This program is similar to VIR0021B, but instead of connecting to the first transaction, it connects to the first transaction whose application is active. This allows VIRTEL to automatically select a backup application if the primary application is down.

VIR0021M Standard menu program for 40-column Minitel. Identical to VIR0021A, this program is not a Multi-Session program.

VIR0021O Program for connecting to a single transaction. Identical to VIR0021B, except that it does not disconnect the terminal when the application finishes.

CONNECTION / DISCONNECTION SCRIPTS

When connecting to an application, it may be useful, if desired, to automatically execute certain operations to direct the user to a defined point within the application. The most commonly used operations are application signon procedures. Similarly, when the user logs off from an application, it can be useful to run various commands to release application resources. These operations are called “connection and disconnection scripts”. Scripts are entered in the fields “TIOA at logon” and “TIOA at logoff” of a transaction, or in the “TIOA at start up” field of an external server, with the help of the language described below. A script can send data and 3270 attention keys to the application, send data to the terminal, and wait for specific data from the application.

8.1 Script Programming Language

A connection / disconnection script consists of a sequence of “clauses”. A clause consists of some data (which may contain embedded variables and orders) followed by a command. All commands, variables, and orders begin with the ‘&’ character.

8.1.1 Transmission and filter commands

The command acts upon the data which precedes it. The commands are as follows:-

Desired operation	Com- mand
Transmit the preceding data to the application	&/A
Transmit the preceding data to the terminal	&/T
Ignore and discard the current application message	&/I
Wait until the application sends a message containing the character string specified in the preceding data	&/W
Same as &/W except that messages are still sent to the terminal while being filtered	&/F
Kill the script (connection / disconnection)	&/K

Note: Any blanks immediately following a &/ command are ignored.

For compatibility with versions of VIRTEL prior to 4.31, the / (slash) in the above commands may also be coded as the EBCDIC character whose hexadecimal value is X'4F'. In the US, Canada, and UK codepages, X'4F' is represented by a vertical bar. In some European countries, X'4F' appears as an exclamation point.

8.1.2 System variables

System variables are information known only to VIRTEL at the time of accessing an application. These variables are in the format &n where “n” represents the desired variable. Available information Corresponding

variable:-

Available information	Corressponding variable
Transaction name	&T
VTAM terminal name	&L
Transaction external name	&X
Transaction description	&D
Application name	&A
Call User Data (12 bytes)	&C
Relay name	&R
User name	&U
User password	&P
Rerouting parameters	&1, &82, &83,..., &8F
URL parameter	&=paramn=
VIRTEL variable	&=varname=

Note 1 System variables may also be coded in the Logon Message field.

Note 2 The system variable &=name= is used to obtain the value of either a URL parameter or of a VIRTEL variable created by a scenario (described in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide). If both a URL parameter and a VIRTEL variable exist with the same name then the VIRTEL variable takes precedence.

8.1.3 Orders

Orders may be embedded in the clause data. Orders are used to set the 3270 (or Minitel) attention key to be sent by the following &/A command, to embed hexadecimal or special values in the data, or to cause the script to wait for the first message from the application, or to process a scenario.

Information to be sent	Corresponding order
Set the AID and cursor address for a 3270 read operation. See note 1	&*xxrrcc where xx is: F1-F9=PF1-PF9, 7A-7C=PF10-PF12, C1-C9=PF13-PF21, 4A-4C=PF22-24, 7D=Enter; rrcc is the cursor address in 3270 buffer address format
Set the AID for a 3270 short read operation (note 2)	&#yy or &*yy where yy is: 6C=PA1, 6E=PA2, 6B=PA3, 6D=Clear, FD=Attn
Minitel keys in external server	&*0Dxx40 where xx is: F1=Guide, F2=Repet, F3=Somm, F4=Annul, F7=Retour, F8=Suite, F9=Copier, 7B=EndPage, 7C=Corr, 7D=Envoi, 6D=Conn/Fin
Data in hexadecimal (note 4)	&'hhhhhhhhhh'
Ampersand character (note 4)	&&
Wait for first message (note 3)	&W
Write preceding character string to console and discard	&/M
Start of repeating script for service transaction (note 5)	&(
End of repeating script for service transaction (note 5)	&)
Execute scenario (note 6)	&/S
Use tab key to skip to next available input field (note 7)	&>

Note 1 If a function key occurs in the middle of a script, the transmission sequence for the function key must be &*xxrrcc&/A. Where the function key is at the end of the script, there is no need to add

&/A. If &/A or end of script occurs with no AID key specified, the default is &*7D4040 (Enter with cursor at row 1 col 1).

Note 2 Never use &/A to send PA keys or Clear to the application.

Note 3 The &W order is processed only if it appears at the start of the script; otherwise it is ignored.

Note 4 Orders &'hh...hh' and && may also be coded in the Logon Message field.

Note 5 &(and &) enclose a section of the script which will be repeated. When the script reaches the &) order, the transaction is converted into a "service transaction" and remains active waiting for similar requests from other users (see "Service transactions" in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide).

Note 6 The &/S order executes a scenario. If coded in the connexion script ("TIOA at logon"), it executes the INITIAL scenario of the presentation module named in the "Initial Scenario" field of the transaction. If coded in the disconnection script ("TIOA at logoff"), it executes the FINAL scenario of the presentation module named in the "Final Scenario" field of the transaction (see "Presentation modules" in the VIRTEL Web Access Guide). Any data preceding the &/S order is ignored. Any blanks immediately following the &/S order are ignored.

Note 7 The &> order does not transmit anything and must be completed with a transmission order. This order can be concatenated as many times as necessary before transmission. example : &>&> can be used to simulate two tab key usage.

8.1.4 Method of operation

If present, a script is first called when the initial connection is made to the application. VIRTEL examines the start of the script to see if it begins with the order &W (wait for first message from application). If so, then no further action is taken at this time, and script processing continues after the first message is received from the application. Otherwise, the first clause of the script is actioned according to its command code, as follows:

- &/W, &/F, &/I : no further action is taken at this time, the clause will be reprocessed when the first message arrives from the application
- &/T, &/A : the data preceding the command is transmitted to the terminal or application
- &/K : the connection is scheduled for termination

Subsequently, VIRTEL processes one clause of the script each time a message arrives from the application. Each clause is actioned according to its command code, as follows:

- &/W : VIRTEL tests whether the data preceding the &/W command appears in the message. If the data is not found, then the message is discarded, and the &/W clause is processed again when the next message arrives from the application. If the data is found, then the message is discarded and the next clause in the script is immediately processed.
- &/F : VIRTEL tests whether the data preceding the &/F command appears in the message. If the data is not found, then the message is sent to the terminal, and the &/F clause is processed again when the next message arrives from the application. If the data is found, then the message is discarded and the next clause in the script is immediately processed.
- &/I : the application message is discarded.
- &/T, &/A : the data preceding the command is transmitted to the terminal or application.
- &/K : VIRTEL will send the message and immediately disconnect the communication, without waiting for the response (asynchronous mode used with certain servers).

Data sent to the application by means of the &/A command must be constructed in the format expected by the application. In the case of a 3270 application, the message is in the form of a 3270 data stream. VIRTEL adds a standard 3-byte 3270 prefix (consisting of AID character and cursor SBA) which defaults

to default is 7D4040 but may be overridden by a &* or &£ order embedded in the preceding script data. In the case of a Minitel application, VIRTEL adds the appropriate suffix (0Dxx) as indicated by an &* order embedded in the preceding script data (see table of script orders below).

Data sent to the terminal by means of the &/T command must be constructed in the same format as the application would generate. In the case of a 3270 application, the message must be in the form of a 3270 data stream prefixed by a 3270 command code and WCC. VIRTEL will translate the message to the format required by the terminal (for example, HTML or Minitel) as appropriate.

8.2 Script Examples

Note: In these examples, script commands are introduced by the preferred sequence &/ (ampersand slash). For compatibility with existing scripts created before version 4.31 of VIRTEL, the slash may optionally be replaced by the EBCDIC character whose hexadecimal value is X'4F'.

8.2.1 Connect to CICS (no sign-on) with automatic start of a transaction

In the simplest case, the CICS transaction code is entered in the field “TIOA at logon”. The script below simply sends the ABC1 transaction code to CICS at connection time:

Internal name ===> W2H-10	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Cics	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS	
Application ===> ACBCCICS	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Pseudo-terminals ===> DEVT	Prefix of name of partner terminals
Security ===> 0	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===> ABC1	

Connection script to start a CICS transaction

This example works only if the CICS TYPETERM definition specifies LOGONMSG(NO). If CICS is configured to send an initial message to the terminal at logon, by means of the LOGONMSG(YES) parameter, then a bracket error would occur when the above script is executed. To avoid this, the transaction code must be prefixed by &W to wait for the initial message to be delivered, as shown in the next example.

8.2.2 Connect to CICS and start transaction CESN with transmission of credentials

The variables &U and &P can be used to pass the current VIRTEL userid and password to the CICS signon transaction:-

Internal name ===> W2H-11	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Cics2	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS	
Application ===> ACBCCICS2	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Security ===> 1	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===> &WCESN&/ASignon&/F&*&7D4EC9&'114BE9'&U&'114CF9'&P&/A	

Connection script with automatic signon to CICS

This script waits for the initial message from CICS, then enters the transaction code CESN. It waits for the “Signon” prompt to be displayed, then enters the userid and password in two separate fields and sends the

completed screen to the host. Security=1 is specified to ensure that the user is signed on to VIRTEL. The SBA orders 11xxxx identify the position of the userid and password fields in the CESN signon panel and may vary as a function of the site.

8.2.3 Connect to CICS VSE with ICCF sign-on and start transaction CEMT

The following script illustrates the use of a PF key:

Internal name ===> W2H-12	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> ICCF	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS VSE	
Application ===> DBDCCICS	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Security ===> 1	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===> REMOTE&/W&'11E35C'&U&'11E560'&P&/AESCAPE&/W&*F64040&/ACEMT&/A	

Connection script with automatic signon to ICCF

This script waits for the ICCF signon screen (recognized by the word ‘REMOTE’), then enters the userid and password in two separate fields and sends the completed screen to the host. It waits for the ICCF main menu (recognized by the word “Escape”) and presses F6. It then enters the transaction code CEMT. The SBA orders 11xxxx identify the position of the userid and password fields in the ICCF signon panel and may vary as a function of the site.

8.2.4 Connect to TSO with USER and PASSWORD and await start of ISPF

This is an example of an HTTP transaction which uses the “Logon Message” field to pass the userid to TSO, followed by a script to complete the TSO/ISPF logon process:

Internal name ===> W2H-13	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Tso	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to Tso	
Application ===> TSO	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Security ===> 1	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===> &U	
TIOA at logon ===> TSO/E LOGON&/W&'11C9C3'&P&/A***&/W&/A	

Connection script with automatic logon to TSO/ISPF

The script waits for the TSO/E LOGON panel for the specified userid, then enters the password into the appropriate field. It waits for the *** prompt to appear, and presses enter. Security=1 is specified to ensure that the user is already signed on to VIRTEL. The SBA order 11C9C3 identifies the password field (at row 8 col 20) in the TSO/E LOGON panel and may vary as a function of the site.

8.2.5 Connect to CICS and navigate a user application

Internal name ===> W2H-14	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Cics4	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS	
Application ===> ACBCICCS2	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Security ===> 1	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===> &'F5C21140401D4013'&/TWELCOME&/W&*7D40C1	
TIOA at logoff ===> BCESF LOGOFF&/A	

Connection script with message to terminal

This script sends an initial 3270 message to the terminal to format the screen and position the cursor. The data in this initial message consists of a 3270 Write-Erase command (F5), a Write Control Character (C2), a Set Buffer Address order (114040), a Start Field order (1D40) and an Insert Cursor order (13). Having sent this message, the script waits for the CICS application to send a message containing the string “WELCOME”, then it sends the “Enter” key to the CICS application. When the terminal user disconnects, the logoff script sends the “Clear” key to CICS followed by CESF LOGOFF.

8.2.6 Service Transaction

This example shows a script which connects to CICS and repeatedly issues an enquiry transaction whose parameters are supplied in the URL of an HTTP request:

Internal name ===> W2H-15	To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Cics5	Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> CICS Service Transaction	
Application ===> ACBCICSS2	Application to be called
Application type ===> 1	1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Security ===> 1	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===>	Signon to CICS&/W&*F34BE9&/A&(TRA1&=MYPARAM=&/A&)

Connection script for service transaction

The first part of this script signs on to CICS using the default CICS userid. This part of the script is executed once only when the VIRTEL transaction is called for the first time. The remainder of the script, bracketed by the &(` and &(` orders, is executed repeatedly. Because the script has a repeating part, this transaction is known as a “Service Transaction”. Each time an HTTP request arrives in the form <http://ipaddr:port/pagename+cics5?myparam=xyz123> it is dispatched to the service transaction, if one is available, and the script executes the CICS transaction TRA1xyz123 where xyz123 is the value of the URL parameter “myparam=” specified in the HTTP request. The result of this CICS transaction is returned to the requester using pagename as a page template. The request is then terminated, but the session between VIRTEL and CICS remains connected waiting for the next request.

EXTERNAL SERVERS

9.1 Introduction

The external server management sub-application allows the administrator to maintain the call parameters relating to the various servers available for outgoing calls. External server definitions allow users at 3270 terminals to access Videotex servers via an X25 network. Additionally, starting with VIRTEL version 4.14, the concept of an external server is extended to handle the routing of incoming and outgoing calls to and from X25 GATE/PCNE applications such as CFT and Inter.PEL. Starting with VIRTEL version 4.42, the external server may also be used to define the parameters for outbound calls to a PESIT/IP file transfer server via a VIRPESIT line.

9.1.1 External Server Management Sub-Application

The external server management sub-application is accessed by pressing [PF7] in the Configuration Menu, or [PF11] in the Sub-Application Menu, or from the Multi-Session Menu via a transaction referencing module VIR0031. This subapplication allows management of the parameters associated with each external server.

9.1.2 Security

When security is active, access to external server management from the Configuration Menu or the Sub-Application Menu is controlled by the resource \$\$SERV\$\$. When accessed by a transaction, the rules governing the management of transaction security apply. Security management is described in chapter 4 of the VIRTEL Technical Documentation.

9.1.3 Summary Display

The first screen displayed by the external server management sub-application shows a summary of existing definitions in alphanumeric order:

LIST of EXTERNAL SERVERS ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 18:36:10			
Server	Description	Server address	Parameter E L
\$ENTRANT	X25 incoming calls (\$NATIF3)	1111	0 9
\$SORTANT	X25 outgoing		0 4
TEXAGRI	TEXAGRI from 3270 terminal	72372	= 2 L

P1=Update P2=Delete P3=Return
P7=Previous P8=Next P12=Add P6=1st page

External Server Summary Display

Navigation

In browse, alter, or delete mode, it is possible to scroll the list of external servers under the control of VIRTEL.

Search Type the name (or partial name) of the required entity on the first line under the heading “Service”, then press [Enter].

[PF6] Return to the first page of the list.

[PF7] Display the previous page.

[PF8] Display the next page.

Modifying an external server definition - Type the desired modifications into the appropriate fields then press [PF1]. Multiple definitions can be modified at the same time. The message UPDATE OK indicates that the modifications have been accepted. If the modification affects a field not displayed on the summary screen, first position the cursor on the definition concerned, then press [PF12] to access the definition detail screen.

Deleting an external server definition - To delete a definition, position the cursor on the name of the service to be deleted and press [PF2]. The line associated with the service to be deleted will appear highlighted with the message CONFIRM DELETE. Press [PF2] again to confirm deletion. The message DELETE OK confirms successful completion of the operation. Repeat the procedure for each external server to be deleted.

Adding an external server definition - To add a new definition, press [PF12] at the summary screen, either with the cursor on an existing definition to copy its attributes, or on an empty line to create a new definition.

9.1.4 Detail Display

To access the detailed definition of an external server, position the cursor on the desired service in the summary screen and press [PF12]. The external server detail definition screen will then be displayed. To

return to the configuration menu, press [PF3] or [Clear].

```
EXTERNAL SERVER DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 18:39:27

Name      ===> $ENTRANT          Name of this server
Description ===> X25 incoming calls ($NATIF3)
Number    ===> 1111            Number to call
Data      ===>                Data to complete call packet
Line number ===> 9-XMPASS        Line for OUT calls (*=auto)
Backup line ===>              Used when first line is unavailable
Caller    ===> *              Caller id number (*=auto)
Emulation ===> 0              0=none 1=VirTELPc 2=Minitel 3=M80
                               4=VT100 5=3174 6=VT200 7=LECAM 8=Bull
                               1= ASCII-7 2= ASCII-8 3= EBCDIC
Character set ===> 3           Maximum inactivity time for server
Server time out ===> 0000 seconds
User time out   ===> 0000 minutes
Cut off warning ===> 0           Maximum idle time for user
Price level     ===>
Secret         ===> 1           0=none      1=bell      2=message
Facilities      ===>
CUD0 (hex)      ===>
TIOA at start up ===>

P1=Update       P3=Return      Enter=Add
```

External Server Detail display

9.1.5 Parameters

Name Contains the name of the service as displayed to the user in the “Call External Server” screen. This name may also be referenced in the “Application” field of a type 3 transaction.

Description Description of the service as displayed to the user in the “Call External Server” screen.

Number For outbound calls via an X25 line:

The X25 call number required to access the service.

If the service is invoked by an X25 incoming call, the called number can be defined as “=”. In this case, the called number for the outgoing call will be copied from the incoming call packet. In the case of an external server which processes outgoing calls originating from an application linked to VIRTEL via an AntiGATE line (CFT, Pelican), the value “=” indicates that the called number will be supplied by the application. In the case of an external server which processes outgoing calls originating from a VIRKIX application, the “Number” field must be blank, which indicates to VIRTEL that the called number and the caller number, as well as the data, facilities, and CUD0 (if applicable), will all be supplied by application. However, if the “Caller” field of the external server is non-blank, then this value will override the caller number supplied by the application. For this type of external server, the entry point must contain a transaction whose external name is “Mirror” as the first transaction.

For outbound calls via a VIRPESIT line:

The IP address of the partner in the form nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn

Data For outbound calls via an X25 line:

User data. The contents of this field will be converted to ASCII and placed in the outgoing call packet immediately following the contents of the CUD0 field. If the service is invoked by an X25 incoming call, the data can be defined as “=”. In this case, the Call User Data for the outgoing call (Data and

CUD0 fields) will be copied from the incoming call packet. In the case of an external server invoked by an HTTP request, for example:

```
GET /PUBLIC/WEB3270.htm+videotex+SERVICE1
```

the value “=” indicates that the parameter (SERVICE1 in this example) will be placed in ASCII in the outgoing call packet immediately following the CUD0 field.

For outbound calls via a VIRPESIT line:

The TCP port number of the partner.

Line number Specifies the internal name of the line on which the outgoing call will be made. The line type may be either X25 (GATE, FASTC, XOT, AntiGATE, AntiPCNE, AntiFC) or TCP with protocol VIRPESIT. “*” indicates that the first available line will be used.

Note: For users of VIRTEL prior to version 4.20:

External server definitions which were created using a version of VIRTEL prior to 4.20 refer to the line using a single character name. When processing these definitions, VIRTEL selects the first line whose internal name begins with the character specified, and VIRTEL displays the complete name of the selected line in this field on the external server definition detail screen. When the external server definition is updated for the first time under VIRTEL 4.20 or later, the single character reference is replaced in the external server definition by the complete line name. Prior to VIRTEL version 4.20, if the “Line number” field of the external server was blank, the line selected for the outgoing call was the first line whose internal name began with the figure 1. From VIRTEL version 4.20 onwards, it will be necessary to update any such external server definitions, by specifying explicitly the full internal name of the required line.

Backup line The internal name of the backup line which will be used for the outgoing call if the primary line is not available. Following an error on the primary line, VIRTEL uses the backup line for all subsequent calls. Similarly, following an error on the backup line, VIRTEL switches back to the primary line for all subsequent calls. From version 4.24 onwards, if both the primary and backup lines are available and operational, both will be used for outgoing calls. For each line, VIRTEL maintains a counter of outgoing calls which have been made but which have not yet received a response. Before making each call, VIRTEL compares the counters of each of the two lines, and selects the line with the lowest number of calls awaiting response. This procedure has the effect of balancing the load between the two lines, and bypasses possible blockages caused by router errors. The rules for specifying the backup line are the same as for the primary line.

Caller Optional caller number to be placed in the outgoing call packet. If the service is invoked by an X25 incoming call, the caller number can be defined as “*” or “=”. In this case, the caller number for the outgoing call will be copied from the incoming call packet.

Emulation Type of emulation required. Possible values are:

- 0 no emulation (Called by FA25 API)
- 1 VIRTELPC emulation
- 2 Minitel 40 column emulation, reverse X25, or VIRPESIT
- 3 Minitel 80 column emulation
- 4 VT100 emulation
- 5 3174 switched node
- 6 VT200 emulation

7 Minitel emulation with LECAM via VIRNT

8 BULL emulation

Character set Type of characters expected by the external server.

1 ASCII 7 bits

2 ASCII 8 bits

3 EBCDIC

Server time out Timeout period (in seconds) for the server. VIRTEL will disconnect the call if the server sends no messages during this period. 0 indicates that there is no timeout.

User time out Timeout period (in minutes) for the caller. VIRTEL will disconnect the call if the caller sends no messages during this period. If 0 is specified, the value of the TIMEOUT parameter in the VIRTCT is used instead.

Cut off warning Type of message sent to the user before disconnection occurs due to user time out. Possible values are:

0 User receives no warning of disconnection

1 User is warned by an audible ‘bip’ 30 seconds before disconnection

2 User is warned by a message 30 seconds before disconnection or if the server does not respond

Price level The tariff for this service. Possible values are:

0 Cost is not calculated for this service

n (n is a value from 1 to Z), the cost of the call is calculated and presented to the user at the end of the connection. The values of n are defined in VIRTEL exit 7 (see VIRTEL Installation Guide).

Secret 1 indicates that this service will not appear in the list of servers shown to the user in the “Call External Server” screen. This value is typically used in external server definitions which are intended to be called only by a type 3 transaction.

Facilities Optional facilities (in hexadecimal) to be placed in the X25 call packet.

If the service is invoked by an X25 incoming call, the facilities can be defined as “=”. In this case, the facilities for the outgoing call will be copied from the incoming call packet.

If neither packet size (42) nor window size (43) appears in the facilities specified here or copied from the incoming call packet, then VIRTEL will generate packet size and window size facilities fields in the outgoing call packet according to the values specified in the outbound line definition.

CUD0 (hex) Protocol indicator (2 to 8 hexadecimal characters) to be placed in the outgoing call packet before the user data. If this field is blank, the default value is 01000000 (indicating PAD protocol). If the value of the “Data” field is “=” then the “Data” and “CUD0” will be copied from the incoming call packet.

TIOA at start up Contains a connection script to be run immediately after connection to the server. For more information, see “Connection – Disconnection Scripts”.

AT-TLS SECURE SESSION

10.1 Introduction

This section provides details on how to implement AT-TLS security. To provide secure HTTP (https) sessions to client browsers, VIRTEL uses the Application Transparent Transport Layer Security (AT-TLS) feature of z/OS Communication Server. AT-TLS is included with z/OS V1R7 and later releases.

AT-TLS allows socket applications to access encrypted sessions by invoking system SSL within the transport layer of the TCP/IP stack. A Policy Agent task decides which connections are to use AT-TLS, and provides system SSL configuration for those connections. Virtel continues to send and receive clear text over the socket, but data sent over the network is encrypted and protected by system SSL.

Warning: Higher CPU usage will result in the TCP/IP address space if this feature is used without the services of a hardware Crypto Card.

10.2 Installation

10.2.1 Install Policy Agent procedure

If you do not already have the Communications Server Policy Agent (PAGENT) active in your z/OS system, copy the cataloged procedure EZAPAGSP from TCPIP.SEZAINST into your proclib, renaming it as PAGENT.

10.2.2 Create the Policy Agent configuration file

If you do not already run the Policy Agent, you will need to create a configuration file /etc/pagent.conf using z/OS Unix System Services. If you already run Policy Agent, you will need to find the existing configuration file and add the TTLS definitions to it to support Virtel. Sample jobs are provided in the Virtel SAMPLIB library to assist in performing this step.

Member SSLSETUP

Step PCONFIG in the SSLSETUP sample job contains a starter configuration. The following changes should be made:

- Replace %virtjob% by the name of your VIRTEL started task (SSLSETUP line 70)
- Replace 41000-41002 by 41002 in the LocalPortRange parameter (SSLSETUP line 71) to activate AT-TLS for VIRTEL line C-HTTP
- Replace *ServerWithClientAuth* by *Server* in the HandshakeRole parameter (SSLSETUP line 82) as we will not be using Client Certificates in the initial setup.

10.2.3 Allow the Policy Agent to run during TCP/IP initialization

The Policy Agent must be given READ access to the resource EZB.INITSTACK.* in RACF class SERVAUTH. See step EZBAUTH in the SSLSETUP sample job (delivered in VIRTEL SAMPLIB).

10.2.4 Create the server certificate

A server certificate for VIRTEL must be created, signed by a certificate authority, and stored in the RACF database. In the SSLSETUP sample job we create a signing certificate and use RACF itself as the certificate authority. Alternatively, you may use an external certificate authority such as Verisign to create and sign the certificate, then import it into RACF.

At SSLSETUP line 228, replace %virtssl% by the DNS name assigned to the VIRTEL host (for example, virtssl.syspertec.com)

10.2.5 Add the certificate to the keyring

The server certificate must be added to the Virtel keyring - VIRTRING. See step CCERTIF in the SSLSETUP sample job.

10.2.6 Allow VIRTEL to access its own certificate

To allow VIRTEL to access its own keyring and server certificate, the VIRTEL started task must have READ access to the resource IRR.DIGTCERT.LISTRING in the RACF class FACILITY. See step IRRAUTH in the SSLSETUP sample job.

10.2.7 Activate AT-TLS

To activate AT-TLS, add the following statements to TCPIP PROFILE:

```
TCPCONFIG TTLS  
AUTOLOG 5 PAGENT ENDAUTOLOG
```

Stop and restart TCP/IP to activate the TCPCONFIG TTLS profile statement. The AUTOLOG statement will cause the PAGENT procedure to be started automatically during TCP/IP initialization.

10.3 Operations

10.3.1 Starting the Policy Agent

The AUTOLOG statement in the TCP/IP profile will start the PAGENT procedure automatically at TCP/IP initialization. Alternatively you can issue the MVS command **S PAGENT**.

Note: if this is the first time you have activated the SERVAUTH class, you are likely to see RACF failure messages during TCP/IP initialization indicating that other applications are unable to access the resource EZB.INITSTACK. This is normal, because Communications Server uses this mechanism to prevent applications from accessing TCP/IP before the Policy Agent is started. Do not be tempted to authorize applications to use this RACF resource. Either ignore the messages (they will go away once PAGENT has started), or ensure that PAGENT starts before all other applications.

10.3.2 Altering the Policy Agent configuration

To make changes to the Policy Agent configuration file, either edit and resubmit the PCONFIG step of the SSLSETUP sample job, or use the TSO ISHELL command to edit the file /etc/pagent.conf directly from ISPF.

After you make changes to the Policy Agent configuration, use the MVS command **F PAGENT,REFRESH** to force PAGENT to reread the file.

10.3.3 Logon to VIRTEL using secure session

To access VIRTEL line C-HTTP you must now use URL

https://n.n.n.n:41002 instead of *http://n.n.n.n:41002*

(where n.n.n.n is the IP address of the z/OS host running VIRTEL).

10.4 Problem determination

10.4.1 Policy Agent log file

Policy Agent startup messages are written to the /tmp/pagent.log file of z/OS Unix System Services. You can use the TSO ISHELL command to browse this file from ISPF.

10.4.2 Common error messages

Error messages relating to session setup are written to the MVS SYSLOG. The most common error message is:

EZD1287I TTLS Error RC: nnn event

where nnn represents a return code. Return codes under 5000 are generated by System SSL and are defined in the System SSL Programming manual. Return codes over 5000 are generated by AT-TLS and are defined in the IP Diagnosis Guide. Some commonly encountered return codes are:

- 7 No certificate
- 8 Certificate not trusted
- 109 No certification authority certificates
- 202 Keyring does not exist
- 401 Certificate expired or not yet valid
- 402 or 412 Client and server cannot agree on cipher suite
- 416 VIRTEL does not have permission to list the keyring
- 431 Certificate is revoked
- 434 Certificate key not compatible with cipher suite
- 435 Certificate authority unknown
- 5003 Browser sent clear text (http instead of https)
- 5006 SSL failed to initialize. Check job SSLSETUP.

VIRHT57E LINE IS NOT SET UP FOR HTTPS

Means that the browser sent an https request, but it has not been decrypted by AT-TLS before being sent to VIRTEL, and VIRTEL has received the message in encrypted format. Normally this means the AT-TLS rules did not match the incoming request. This is not a Virtel configuration issue.

EZD1287I TTLS Error RC: 5003

This is the opposite situation. It means that the AT-TLS rules matched the incoming request, and so AT-TLS was expecting to receive an https request, but it received an http request instead.

Normally AT-TLS is transparent to VIRTEL. AT-TLS performs the decryption and transforms the https request into an http request before passing it to VIRTEL. The only case where VIRTEL is AT-TLS aware is when the VIRTEL transaction definition specifies SECURITY=3 (TLS) and in this case VIRTEL will check that the session has been processed by AT-TLS and will issue an IOCTL to obtain the userid associated with the certificate. In the normal case, you should specify HandshakeRole Server, ClientAuthType Full, and ApplicationControlled Off in the AT-TLS rules, as in the example in VIRT447.SAMPLIB(SSLSETUP).

VIRTEL does not issue an IOCTL to turn decryption on and off, so if you specified ApplicationControlled On then you would get VIRHT57E because AT-TLS has not been instructed to start decryption.

If you still get an error when you have ApplicationControlled Off then we will need to see the SYSLOG (for the EZD TTLS messages), the JESMSGLG from the VIRTEL started task, and the SYSPRINT resulting from a z/OS command F VIRTEL,SNAP immediately after the error occurs. We would also like to see the exact URL which was entered at the browser, as well as the AT-TLS pagent.conf file.

10.4.3 Verifying AT-TLS is active

To verify that AT-TLS is still activated, you can submit this MVS command:

```
D TCPIP,,N,TTLS
```

The response is:

```
EZD0101I NETSTAT CS V1R12 TCPIP 378 TTLSGRPACTON GROUP ID CONNS VIRTELGROUP 00000002
↪0 1 OF 1 RECORDS DISPLAYED END OF THE REPORT
```

The UNIX command

```
pasearch
```

displays the parameters used by PAGENT from /etc/pagent.conf

The TSO command:-

```
netstat conn
```

displays active connexions for the VIRTEL STC.

Once a connexion has been established between a client and a Virtel port, the TSO command:-

```
netstat ttls conn nnnn detail
```

where nnnn is the identification of the connexion will display the AT-TLS parameters used in the Virtel connexion.

10.5 The Cipher suites

The client and server cipher specifications must contain at least one value in common. The TTLSEnvironmentAdvancedParms parameter of the Policy Agent configuration file allows you to turn on or off the SSLv2, SSLv3, and TLSv1 protocols at the server end. The list of supported cipher suites for each protocol is in the TTLSCipherParms parameter. Check the /tmp/pagent.log file to determine whether any cipher suites were discarded at startup time.

In Microsoft Internet Explorer, follow the menu *Tools – Internet Options – Advanced*. Under the security heading there are three options which allow you to enable or disable the SSL 2.0, SSL 3.0, and TLS 1.0 protocols. You cannot enable or disable individual cipher suites.

In Firefox the cipher specifications are accessed by typing *about:config* in the address bar and typing *security* in the filter box. By default, ssl2 is disabled, and ssl3 and tls are enabled. By default, all weak encryption cipher suites are disabled, and 128-bit or higher cipher suites are enabled.

10.6 Client certificates

Virtel can extract the userid of a user from a client certificate presented to Virtel during the SSL handshake. For this to occur the following must be true:-

- The HTTP session is secured using AT-TLS. URL = <https://...>.
- The Policy Agent TTLSConnectionAction or TTLSEnvironmentAction statement contains the parameter “HandShakeRole ServerWithClientAuth”
- The client has provided a valid certificate.
- The security subsystem has validate the certificate as belonging to a user.
- The Virtel transaction has Security = 3 defined.

If these conditions are met then the userid contained within the clients digital certificate can be extracted by Virtel and used in the signon process. In this process it is normal that a PASS Ticket is generated and associated with the extracted userid.

See the SAMPLIB members SSLSETUP and SSLUCERT for examples on setting up AT-TLS and client certificates.

10.7 Resources

10.7.1 IBM Manuals

- SA22-7683-07 z/OS V1R7 Security Server: RACF Security Administrator's Guide
 - ↳ Chapter 21. RACF and Digital Certificates
- SC24-5901-04 z/OS V1R6 Cryptographic Services: System SSL Programming Chapter 12.
 - ↳ Messages and Codes
- SC31-8775-07 z/OS V1R7 Communications Server: IP Configuration Guide
 - Chapter 14. Policy-based networking
 - Chapter 18. Application Transparent Transport Layer Security (AT-TLS) data protection
 - ↳ protection Configuration Reference
 - Chapter 21. Policy Agent and policy applications
- GC31-8782-06 z/OS V1R7 Communications Server: IP Diagnosis Guide
 - Chapter 28. Diagnosing Application Transparent Transport Layer Security (AT-TLS)
- SC31-8784-05 z/OS V1R7 Communications Server: IP Messages: Volume 2 (EZB, EZD)
 - Chapter 10. EZD1xxxx messages

10.7.2 Virtel Material

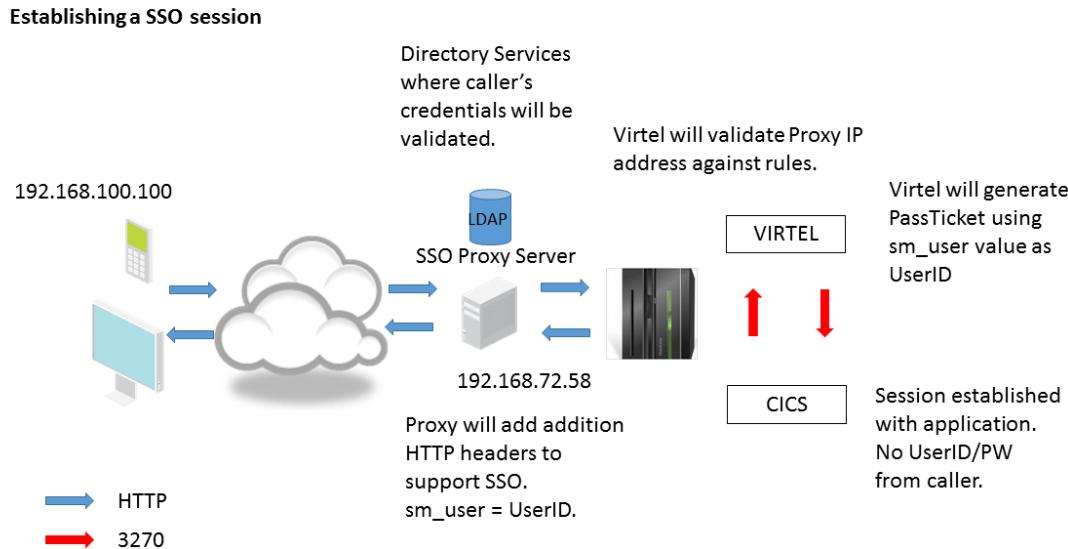
- TN201407 Pass tickets and supporting Proxy Servers – CA-SiteMinder® & IBM Tivoli WebSeal®
- TN201416 Virtel TLS/SSL Security: Signing on using server and client certificates

SSO, PASTICKETS AND PROXY SERVERS

11.1 Introduction

Many businesses now implement products which provide a centralized enterprise-class secure single sign-on (SSO) and authentication system. The products tend to run on a server(s) and provides access to a business's assets like web enabled applications or portals. The basic process is to trap the incoming HTTP call request and establish some user credentials before allowing access to an asset. For example, the user credentials can be extracted from the callers request or determined by the callers IP address. The credentials will be validated against a LDAP or similar active directory server. The result of the validation will either allow or deny the caller access to the requested asset. Security and asset control is managed by the SSO server which as a central server can validate credentials to all business assets, be it on the mainframe or other platforms. Userid and password administration for all assets can be controlled through the functions of the SSO software employed. Virtel will integrate within this SSO infrastructure and process sign on request once they have passed validation. Virtel provides its own validation of the SSO server through the use of rules.

In the example that follows we are using CA-Site Minder as an example SSO Server and we will document how to define Virtel to interface with the SSO Server and RACF. Our target asset is a CICS application called SPCICSH. The caller will provide no userid or password data.



Data flow of an SSO session setup

The initial request is passed through the SSO server. The server will trap and validate the caller. If the validation is successful a session will be established between the SSO server and Virtel. Two things to note at this point. One, the IP address presented to Virtel will be that of the SSO Proxy Server and two, that the server will modify the HTTP headers to provide additional information, that being the source IP address and the user id.

A Virtel line trace will reveal these additional headers.

```
GET /w2h/WEB2SUB.HTML++VirtelSession=AFo0JQAAAAMeuCAo+disconnect=1?pf=DISCONNECT HTTP/
→1.1
Host: 192.168.170.30:41002
User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.1; WOW64; rv:27.0) Gecko/20100101 Firefox/27.0
Accept: text/html,application/xhtml+xml,application/xml;q=0.9,*/*;q=0.8
Accept-Language: en-gb,en;q=0.5
Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate
Referer: http://192.168.170.30:41002/w2h/WEB2AJAX.htm+CICS
Cookie: SYSLANG=en; SYSSTYL=BLUE; SYSPAGE=auto
**SM_User: sptholt <<**
**X-Forwarded-For: 192.168.100.100 <<**
Connection: keep-alive

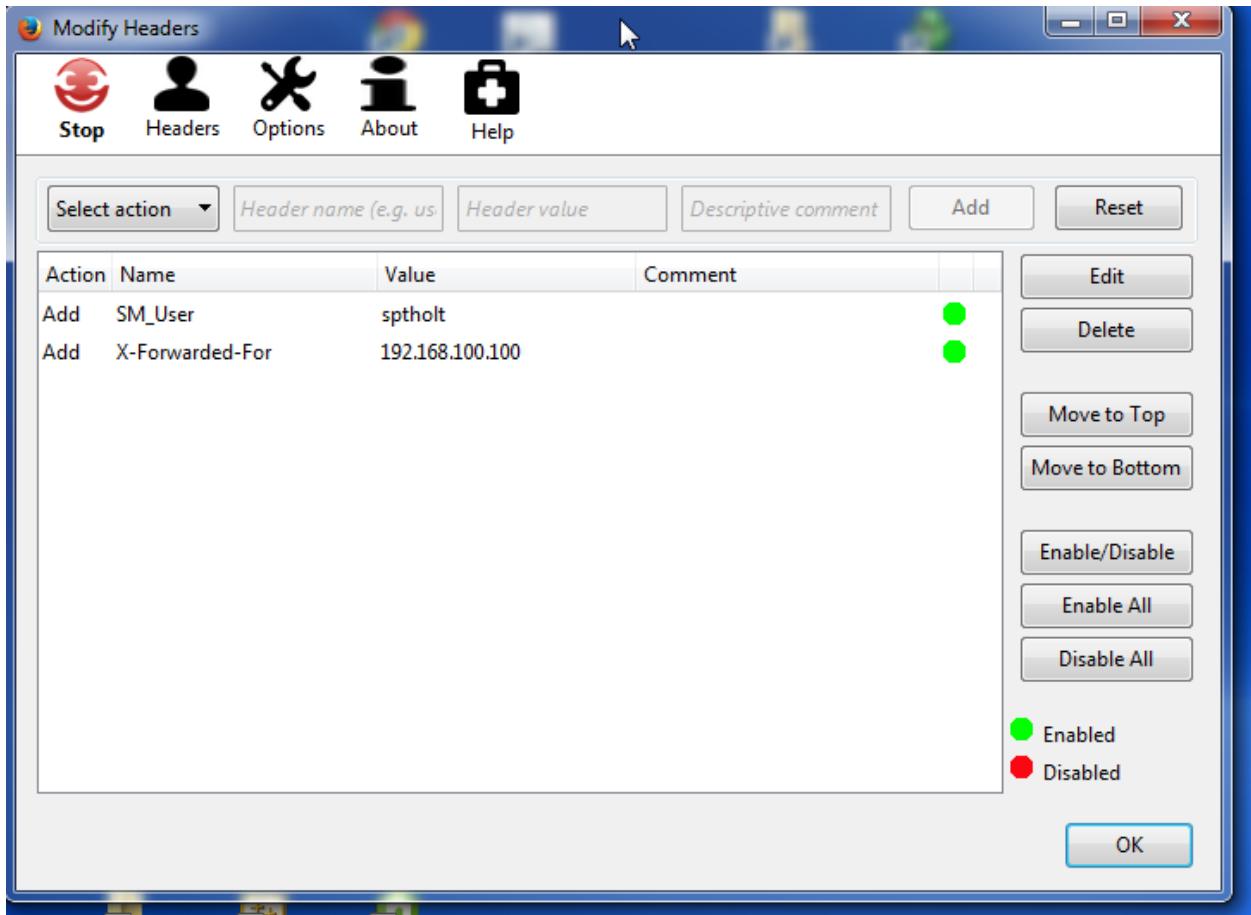
HTTP/1.1 200 Ok
Server: Virtel/4.53
Date: Wed, 26 Mar 2014 15:31:12 GMT
Content-type: text/html
Content-length: 00000125

<html><head><Meta HTTP-EQUIV="refresh" CONTENT="1; URL=LASTPAGE.HTML"></head>
<body bgcolor="black"><br>
<br>
</body></html>
HTTP/1.0 205 Reset Content
Server: Virtel/4.53
```

In the above trace the CA-SiteMinder specific header “SM_User” can be seen as identifying the userid and the X-Forwarded-For;, a standard HTTP header, identifies the source IP address. For security reasons this proxy IP address must be tested for in a VIRTEL rule before the session can be established between the caller and the asset. There is no password associated with this logon – this will be generated via a passTicket request on behalf of the userid identified in the “SM_User” header. The PassTicket will be created as part of the session setup between Virtel and the asset and on behalf of the caller.

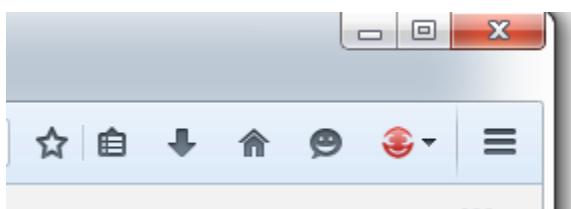
11.2 Adding headers to the HTTP request

Access the CICS application using FireFox. Use the FireFox “AddIn” Modify Headers to add the headers to the HTTP request. After adding the headers you will need to “START” the addIn to get the headers added.



Using the Firefox “Modify Headers” addin.

When access the CICS system make sure the “Modify Headers” has started. The ICON should be red.



Modify Header active - red ICON

The following definitions define what needs to be done to enable a user to log on without specifying a userid/password to an asset supported by the SSO server. In our example Virtel will logon to a CICS asset on behalf of the caller using a userid passed by the SSO Proxy and a generated PassTicket. The caller provides no userid/password information. Once the SSO has validated the callers credential the caller will be logged on to CICS and will be presented with the following screen:-

```
-  
  
DFHCE3549 Sign-on is complete (Language ENU).  
H:73ms J:6ms          REHVT001 REHIM001 1.1
```

Accessing CICS using a callers credentials. No LOGON required.

11.3 RACF Passtickets

Pass tickets are an alternative to passwords and can greatly improve the security surrounding SSO and multiple applications access. Passtickets are a dynamically generated password that lasts for approximately 10 minutes. Further information on RACF Passtickets can be found on the web. For the purpose of this newsletter we will look at the Virtel requirements needed to access our target CICS asset whose RACF APPL is SPCICSH. Our Virtel task runs under the RACF userid of SPVIRSTC. Here are the RACF definitions required to support the generation of PassTickets for the target application APPL SPCICSH.

11.3.1 Define Pass Ticket RACF profiles

This job will have to be modified to a customer's RACF setup. Some profiles may already be defined! If the PERMIT statements do not run then that probably means that some of the RDEFINE entries already exist in the RACF database - these need to be removed, or an RDELETE added to delete the profile entry, in order for the job to complete successfully. It should produce a RC=0. See the output in SDSF.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT1A,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
      SETROPTS CLASSACT(APPL)
      SETROPTS CLASSACT(PTKTDATA)
      SETROPTS RACLIST(PTKTDATA)
      SETROPTS GENERIC(PTKTDATA)
      RDEFINE FACILITY IRR.RTICKETSERV
      RDEFINE PTKTDATA IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.\* UACC(NONE)
      RDEFINE PTKTDATA SPCICSH SSIGNON(KEYMASKED(998A654FEBCDA123)) +
          UACC(NONE)
      PERMIT IRR.RTICKETSERV CL(FACILITY) ID(SPVIRSTC) ACC(READ)
      PERMIT IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.\* CL(PTKTDATA) ID(SPVIRSTC) ACC(UPDATE)
      SETROPTS REFRESH RACLIST(PTKTDATA)
      SETROPTS REFRESH RACLIST(FACILITY)
```

Three distinct RACF profiles are required to use RACF pass tickets:-

FACILITY IRR.RTICKETSERV	* Can use PassTickets *
PTKTDATA IRRPTAUTH.passTicketName.	* Let's VIRETL generate PassTickets on behalf of <input type="checkbox"/>
↳ an application for all users.	* or *userid*
PTKTDATA profile_name	* APPLNAME used by RACROUTE REQUEST=VERIFY *

Virtel Name correlation

- passTicketName must equal the PassTicket Name defined in the VIRTEL transaction.
- profile_name must equal the VTAM application name defined in the VIRTEL transaction.

These names are normally the same, but they do not have to be.

Note: If you are running separate RACF databases across LPARS the KEYMASKED must be the same in each RACF database or else the wrong password will be generated and the logon will fail.

11.3.2 RACF Profiles related to Virtel and Pass Tickets

As mentioned RACF needs to have some profiles set up to allow Virtel to use Pass Tickets. The first profile is the FACILITY Class profile with the IRR.RTICKETSERV name. The Virtel STC userid must have READ access to this profile.

```
BROWSE RACF COMMANDS BY CLASS          LINE  00000000  COL  001 000
COMMAND ==> -
***** Top of Data *****
CLASS      NAME
-----
FACILITY   IRR.RTICKETSERV

LEVEL     OWNER      UNIVERSAL ACCESS  YOUR ACCESS  WARNING
-----  -----
00       SPTBOWL    NONE             NONE        NO

INSTALLATION DATA
-----
NONE

APPLICATION DATA
-----
NONE

SECLEVEL
-----
NO SECLEVEL

CATEGORIES
-----
NO CATEGORIES

SECLABEL
-----
NO SECLABEL

AUDITING
-----
FAILURES(READ)

NOTIFY
-----
NO USER TO BE NOTIFIED

USER      ACCESS      ACCESS COUNT
-----  -----
SPTBOWL   ALTER       000000
SPTSABY   READ        000000
SPVIRSTC  READ        000000

ID      ACCESS      ACCESS COUNT  CLASS           ENTITY  NAME
-----  -----
SCROLL ==> CSR
```

█

USERID associated with the VIRTEL task has READ access to the RACF Pass Ticket Service

RACF profile to allow Virtel to use Pass Tickets

```
RDEFINE FACILITY IRR.RTICKETSERV
PERMIT IRR.RTICKETSERV CL(FACILITY) ID(SPVIRSTC) ACC(READ)
```

To allow Virtel to generate Pass Tickets for a particular application we must define any entry in the PTKT-DATA class. This entry has the name “IRRPTAUTH.passTicketName.*” and is a Group Entry. The Virtel USERID should have update authority to this profile.

```
***** Top of Data *****
CLASS      NAME
----      -----
PTKTDATA   IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.* (G)
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
LEVEL     OWNER      UNIVERSAL ACCESS YOUR ACCESS WARNING
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
00       SPTHOLT    NONE                 ALTER        NO
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
INSTALLATION DATA
-----+-----+
NONE
-----+-----+
APPLICATION DATA
-----+-----+
NONE
-----+-----+
SECLEVEL
-----+-----+
NO SECLEVEL
-----+-----+
CATEGORIES
-----+-----+
NO CATEGORIES
-----+-----+
SECLABEL
-----+-----+
NO SECLABEL
-----+-----+
AUDITING
-----+-----+
FAILURES(READ)
-----+-----+
NOTIFY
-----+-----+
NO USER TO BE NOTIFIED
-----+-----+
USER      ACCESS
-----+-----+
SPTHOLT   ALTER
SPVIRSTC  UPDATE
-----+-----+-----+-----+
ID          ACCESS CLASS           ENTITY NAME
-----+-----+-----+-----+
NO ENTRIES IN CONDITIONAL ACCESS LIST
```

This is the same name that is defined in the transaction as the PassTicket name. In our example we have defined a CICS transaction in VIRTEL which connects to a CICS application whose APPLID = SPCICSH and uses a PassTicket name of SPCICSH.

Allow USERID SPVIRSTC to generate pass tickets for this application.

Setting Virtel up with RACF access to PTKTDATA class.

```
RDEFINE PTKTDATA IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.\* UACC(NONE)
PERMIT IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.\* CL(PTKTDATA) ID(SPVIRSTC) ACC(UPDATE)
SSIGNON(KEYMASKED(998A654FEBCDA123)) UACC(NONE)
```

The name in IRRPTAUTH.passTicketName.* profile must match the name in the Virtel Transaction definition. The PassTicket Name is the name of the application as known to RACF for the generation of Passtickets. This may be different to the VTAM application name.

Finally, define a PTKTDATA profile entry that matches the Virtel Transaction **APPLICATION** name. In this case it is SPCICSH. Virtel passes this APPLNAME to RACF via a RACROUTE REQUEST=VERIFY.

TRANSACTION DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 8:51:24	
Internal name ===> CLI-10	Name must match PTKTDATA discrete profile_name
External name ===> Cics	To associate with an entry point name Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS	
Application ===> SPCICSH	Application to be called 0=no 1=yes 2=unsigned 1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
PassTicket ===> 2 Name ===> SPCICSH	Prefix of name of partner terminals Specify when LOGMODE must be changed
Application type ===> 1	1=menu 2=sub-menu 3=auto
Pseudo-terminals ===> CLVTA	0=none 1=basic 2=NTLM 3=TLS 4=HTML
Logmode ===>	0=no 1=yes 2;if2VIRTEL 4=auto
How started ===> 1	
Security ===> 1	
H4W commands ? ===>	
Logon message ===>	
TIOA at logon ===> Signon&/F&*7D4EC9&'114BE9'&U&'114CF9'&P&/A	
TIOA at logoff ===>	
Initial Scenario ===>	Final Scenario ===>
Input Scenario ===>	Output Scenario ===>
P1=Update	P3=Return
	P12=Server

Setting the Pass Ticket name in the Virtel transaction.

```
RDEFINE PTKTDATA SPCICSH SSIGNON(KEYMASKED(998A654FEBCDA123)) +
UACC(NONE)
```

The key thing here is that the PassTicket name must tie up with the generic IRRPTAUTH.SPCICSH.* entry and the VIRTEL application name must match the discrete PTKTDATA.SPCICSH profile. They can be the same but needn't be!

11.4 Virtel Requirements

11.4.1 Transaction requirements

The Virtel Transaction, under the Entry Point CLIWHOST, will be used to access the CICS asset. It has a Virtel external name of “CICS”. We modify our transaction to use pass tickets and add a TIOA to logon to our CICS transaction. The transaction details now look like:-

```

TRANSACTION DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 17:58:05

Internal name ===> CLI-10           To associate with an entry point name
External name ===> Cics              Name displayed on user menu
Description ===> Logon to CICS
Application ===> SPCICSH            Application to be called
PassTicket ===> 2 Name ===> SPCICSH 0=no 1=yes 2=unsigned
Application type ===> 1             1=VTAM 2=VIRTEL 3=SERV 4=PAGE 5=LINE
Pseudo-terminals ===> CLVTA        Prefix of name of partner terminals
Logmode               ===>
How started            ===> 1           Specify when LOGMODE must be changed
Security              ===> 0           1=menu 2=sub-menu 3=auto
H4W commands ?        ===>
Logon message          ===>

TIOA at logon          ===> Signon&/F8*7D4EC9&'114BE9'&U&'114CF9'&P&/A
TIOA at logoff         ===>

Initial Scenario       ===>
Input Scenario          ===>           Final Scenario      ===>
                                         Output Scenario     ===>

P1=Update               P3=Return           P12=Server

```

Modified CICS Virtel transaction to support Pass Tickets.

The PassTicket option is set to 2 and uses the APPL name associated with CICS transaction. Using option 2 means that we do not have to sign onto Virtel first before generating a PassTicket. Virtel will expect the Virtel System variable USER to be established. This will be accomplished in an identification scenario where we have access to the SM_User header value.

The TIOA sign on field waits for the initial CICS sign on screen to appear and then plugs in the userid (&U) and PassTicket generated password (&P) into their respective locations. The screen is then “forwarded” to the CICS application with the USERID and PASSWORDS fields completed.

11.4.2 Identification Scenario

To obtain the “SM_User” value and set the userid in the VirTEL System USER variable an identification scenario is used. The following is an example of such a scenario:-

```
SCENSITE SCREENS APPL=SCENSITE,EXEC=NO
*
* SCENARIO for SiteMinder
*
* The purpose of this scenario is to retrieve the contents of
* the identification headers inserted by the SiteMinder Proxy
*
SCENARIO IDENTIFICATION
*
    COPY$ SYSTEM-TO-VARIABLE,VAR='USER', -
          FIELD=(TCT-HTTP-HEADER,SM\_USER)
    IF$ NOT-FOUND,THEN=NOUSER1
    COPY$ VARIABLE-TO-SYSTEM,VAR='USER', -
          FIELD=(NAME-OF,USER)
*
EXIT1 DS 0H
    SCENARIO END
*
NOUSER1 DS 0H
    ERROR$ 0,'SCENSITE ERROR: NO USER VARIABLE'
    GOTO$ EXIT1
    SCREND
    END
```

This SCENARIO has to be set in the Entry Point definition for the line being used. In our case this is the default Entry Point, CLIWHOST, associated with the external line HTTP-CLI. The following is a snapshot of the entry point definition:-

ENTRY POINT DETAIL DEFINITION ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 18:29:08	
Name	====> CLIWHOST Name this ENTRY POINT (LOGON DATA)
Description	====> HTTP entry point (CLIENT application)
Transactions	====> CLI Prefix for associated transactions
Last page	====> LASTPAGE.HTML Displayed at end of session
Transparency	====> Server types NOT to emulate
Time out	====> 0720 minutes Maximum inactive time
Do if timeout	====> 0 0=logoff 1=bip+logoff 2=anti pad
Emulation	====> HTML Type of terminal:
HOST4WEB	: program driven HTML : Web Browser
SCENARIO	: script driven EMAIL : SMTP client
Directory for scenarios	====> If scenarios in VSAM, not LOADLIB
Signon program	====> VIR0020H Controls user name and password
Menu program	====> VIR0021A List of transactions
Identification scenario	====> SCENSITE eg XML identification
Type 3 compression	====> Discover typical screens (Virtel/PC)
Mandatory identification	====> (PC or minitel)
3270 swap key	====> eg P24
Extended colors	====> E E: extended X: extended + DBCS
P1=Update	P3=Return
Enter=Add	P4=Transactions

Defining an Identification Scenario in the Virtel Entry Point.

The Identification Scenario field is filled in with the name of our scenario SCENSITE. This scenario is called when the inbound call is assigned to an entry point and before any transactions are invoked. The scenario sets the Virtel system USER variable which will be used in the PassTicket generation.

11.4.3 TCT Considerations

The TCT has to include the following parameters if HTTP User Headers and PassTicket generation is required. The parameters are:-

HTHEADR=(SM_USER),	*
VIRSECU=YES,SECUR=(RACROUTE,RACF),	*
RAPPL=FACILITY,RNODE=FACILITY,PRFSECU=SPVIREH,	*
PASSTCK=YES,	*

The HTHEADR identifies the "SM_USER" as a non standard header and one that Virtel must process. The PASSTCK keyword enables Virtel to generate PassTickets.

11.4.4 Line Rules

To ensure that the source SSO proxy IP address is valid we can code some rules and associate them with the line. In our example we have coded two sets of rules. The first one will test the calling proxy IP address. If that is successful the connection will continue and establish an association with the named Virtel entry point. If the first rule fails because the IP address doesn't match what we expect, the second rule will be called. This does no more than establish an entry point with a default transaction. The default transaction will just return an error page to the browser. Here are the two rules that we have associated with our Virtel line:-

File Edit Font Transfer Macro Options Window Help			
LIST of RULES in RULE SET: C-HTTP			Applid: APPLHOLT 12:43:35
Name	Status	Description	Entry Point
C100PROX	ACTIVE	Test incoming IP address	CLIWHOST
C999REJ	ACTIVE	Reject all other callers	EPREREJECT
P1=Update P6=1st page	P2=Suppress P7=Page-1	P3=Return P8=Page+1	P12>Edit
Ma	0.0 03/27/14.086	12:47PM 192.168.92.162	a 6,2

List of rules associated with the Virtel line

The second rule is coded as follows:-

File Edit Font Transfer Macro Options Window Help

DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP Applid: APPLHOLT 12:34:49

Name	==> C100PROX	Rule priority is per name
Status	==> ACTIVE	26 Mar 2014 15:05:36 SPTHOLT
Description	==> Test incoming IP address	
Entry point	==> CLIWHOST	Target Entry Point
Parameter	==>	&1 value or LUNAME
Trace	==>	1=commands 2=data 3=partner

C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT

0 IP Subnet	==> 000.000.000.000	Mask ==> 255.255.255.255
0 Host	==>	
0 eMail	==>	
3 Calling DTE	==> 192.168.092.058	Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called	==>	Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex)	==>	First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data	==>	

0 Days	==> M:	T:	W:	T:	F:	S:	S:
0 Start time	==> H:	M:	S:	End time ==> H:	M:	S:	

P1=Update P3=Return Enter=Add
P4=Activate P5=Inactivate P12=Entry P.

Ma 0.0 03/27/14.086 12:41PM 192.168.92.162 a 3,21

Rule C100PROX to test Proxy IP Address

If the IP address of the SSO Proxy matches the Caller DTE address we have specified in the rule than the Entry Point CLIWHOST will be associated with line and the transactions defined under that entry point, CLIWHOST in this case, can be invoked. If the address match fails then the next rule will be called. In our case this will be rule C999REJ which will invoke transaction EPREJECT, the default transaction for Entry Point EPREJECT.

Warning: It is important that you use option 3 “STARTS WITH” when defining the Calling DTE option.

```

File Edit Font Transfer Macro Options Window Help
DETAIL of RULE from RULE SET: C-HTTP ----- Applid: APPLHOLT 12:48:49
Name      ===> C999REJ          Rule priority is per name
Status     ===> ACTIVE          26 Mar 2014 14:31:04      SPTHOLT
Description ===> Reject all other callers
Entry point ===> EPREJECT        Target Entry Point
Parameter   ===>               &1 value or LUNAME
Trace       ===>               1=commands 2=data 3=partner

C : 0=IGNORE 1=IS 2=IS NOT 3=STARTS WITH 4=DOES NOT 5=ENDS WITH 6=DOES NOT
0 IP Subnet  ===> 000.000.000.000      Mask      ===> 255.255.255.255
0 Host      ===>
0 eMail     ===>
0 Calling DTE ===>                Calling DTE address or proxy
0 Called     ===>                Called DTE address
0 CUD0 (Hex) ===>               First 4 bytes of CUD (X25 protocol)
0 User Data  ===>

0 Days      ===> M:    T:    W:    T:    F:    S:    S:
0 Start time ===> H:    M:    S:    End time ===> H:    M:    S:

P1=Update          P3=Return          Enter=Add
P4=Activate        P5=Inactivate     P12=Entry P.

```

Ma 0.0 03/27/14.086 12:52PM 192.168.92.162 a 3,21

Rule C999REJ to reject the session request

This rule does no more than to establish the entry point EPREJECT. EPREJECT will have a default transaction which just returns an error page to the caller.

11.5 Common Errors

Message VIR1502E

VIRTEL does not have sufficient access rights to create or validate a passticket allowing user userid at terminal termed to access application applname. This message is usually preceded by message ICH408I which shows the name of the resource to which VIRTEL must be granted access.

Action

Examine the SAF and RACF return codes and the RACF reason code to determine the cause. Check that VIRTEL has access to resource IRR.RTICKETSERV in the FACILITY class, and also to resource IRRPTAUTH.applname.userid in the PTKTDATA class. The generic resource IRRPTAUTH.** may be used to permit VIRTEL to generate passtickets for all applications.

For an explanation of the return codes and reason codes, see z/OS Security Server RACF Callable Services Chapter 2 “R_ticketserv”. Some common codes are:

SAF RC	RACF RETC	RACF Reason	Description
8	8	4	Paramlist error. Ensure that the SCENSITE scenario is available to process the sm_header.
8	8	16	VIRTEL is not authorized to generate passtickets, or is not authorized to generate passtickets for this application. See preceding ICH408I message in the log.
8	16	28	There is no profile in the PTKTDATA class for this application or the PTKTDATA class is not active.

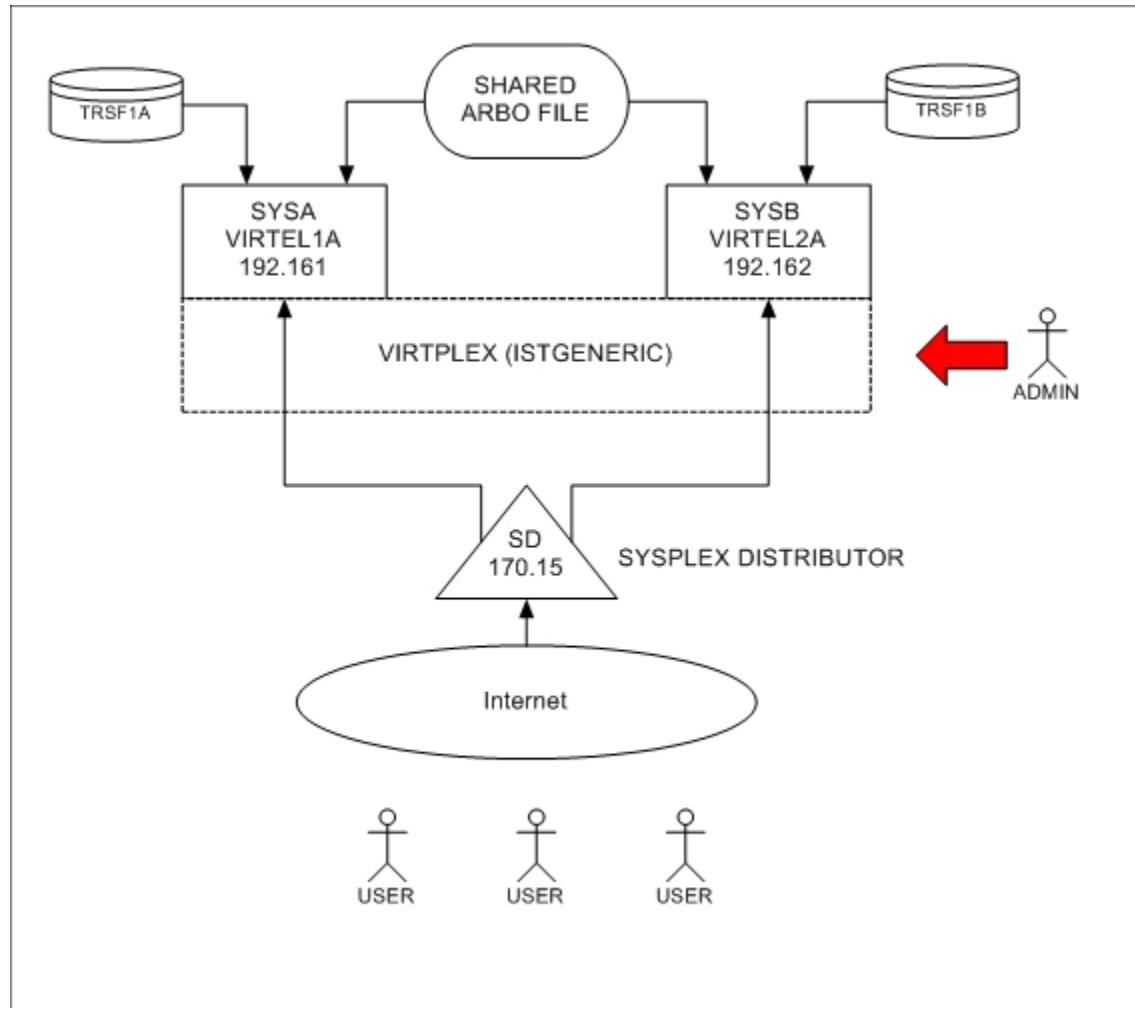
11.6 Related material

Technical newsletter - *TN201416 Virtel Security. Using server and client certificates*

RUNNING MULTIPLE INSTANCES OF VIRTEL

12.1 Introduction

For High Availability and performance reasons it is often necessary to run multiple copies of Virtel, preferably within separate LPARs on separate physical machines. This newsletter discusses the issues raised when implementing such a setup and how Virtel can exploit the IBM Sysplex technologies. In the following example there are two instances of Virtel running on separate physical machines sharing the same ARBO configuration file. The configuration looks like this:-



Virtel is using several Sysplex technologies to achieve this configuration. For example, Virtel is using VTAM

Generic Resources to facilitate access to the Virtel Administration functions from either instance of Virtel. VTAM generic resources can be used to distribute workloads across applications that perform the same task or function. Administration of the ARBO file is through the Virtel Administrator who can logon on to Virtel using the generic Virtel ACB name VIRTPLEX. This generic ACB enables management of the ARBO file through either VIRTEL1A or VIRTEL2A. This can be useful, for example, If SYSA was down for maintenance. VIRTEL administration could still be conducted via VIRTEL2A access. No change would be necessary to any session management tools.

Here are the relevant definitions required to support the VTAM generic resource within Virtel.

12.1.1 VIRTEL TCT Settings

GRNAME=VIRTPLEX, VTAM GENERIC RESOURCE NAME

12.1.2 SYSPLEX definitions

The ISTGENERIC structure will have to be allocated before you can use VTAM generic resources. See the IBM Network Implementation Guide for further information on configuring the CFRM.

Use the following command to display coupling allocation details for ISTGENERIC.

```
D XCF,STR,STRNM=ISTGENERIC
```

VTAM display of the generic resource

The results from the D NET, ID=VTAMPLEX, E identifies the two Virtel instances which are grouped into the generic resource name VIRTPLEX. The example below shows VIRTEL1A and VIRTEL2A as participating in the VIRTPLEX resource name group.

```
D NET, ID=VIRTPLEX, E

IST097I DISPLAY ACCEPTED
IST075I NAME = VIRTPLEX, TYPE = GENERIC RESOURCE 917
IST1359I MEMBER NAME OWNING CP SELECTABLE APPC
IST1360I SPNET.VIRTEL1A ZAM1SSCP YES NO
IST1360I SPNET.VIRTEL2A ZAM2SSCP YES NO
IST2210I GR PREFERENCE TABLE ENTRY = **DEFAULT**
IST2202I GREXIT = NO WLM = YES LOCLU = YES
IST2204I LOCAPPL = YES PASSOLU = NO
IST314I END
```

When the VIRTEL*A application is displayed in VTAM the following messages are written to the console log:-

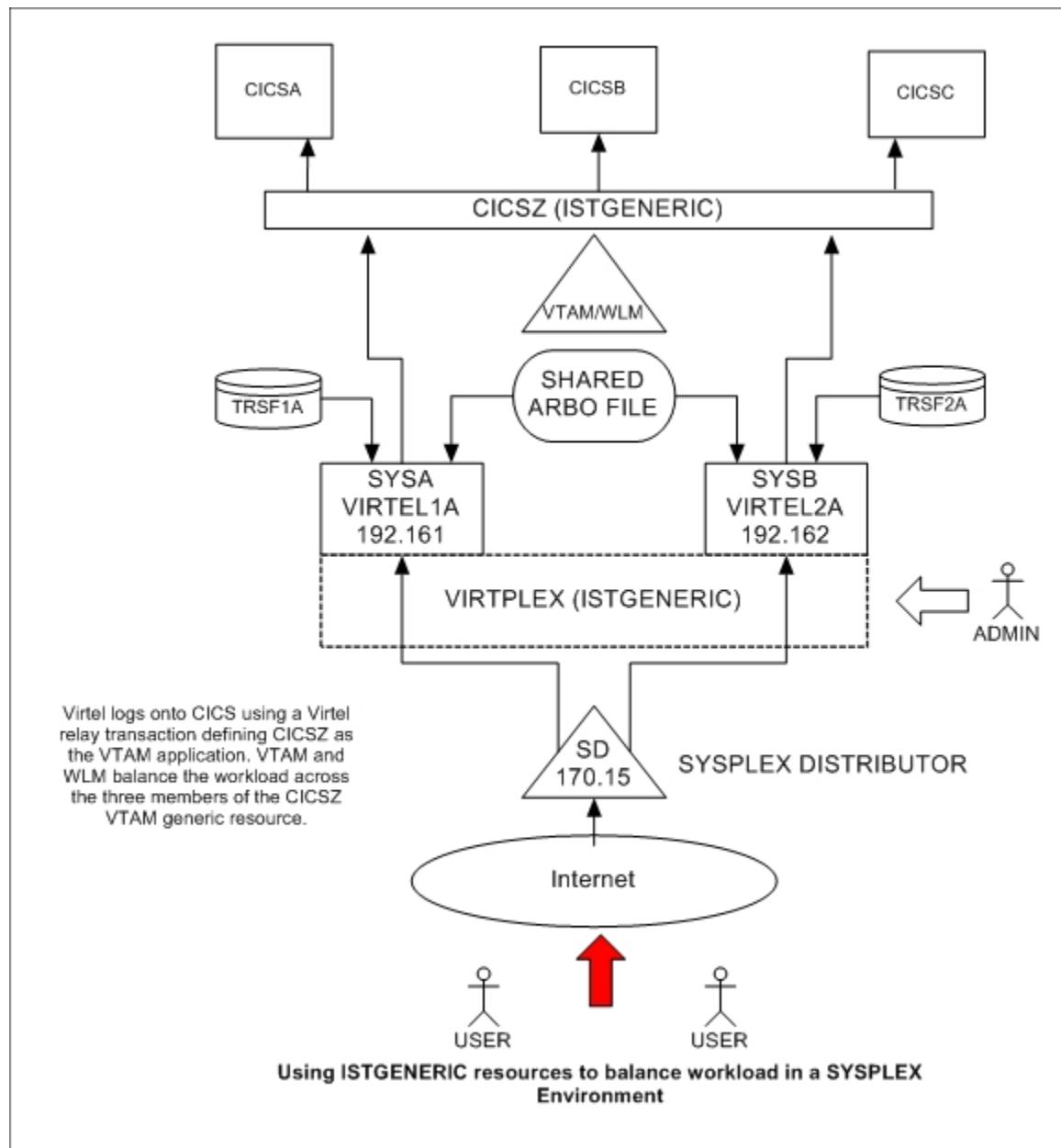
```
D NET, ID=VIRTEL1A, E
IST097I DISPLAY ACCEPTED
IST075I NAME = SPNET.VIRTEL1A, TYPE = APPL 925
IST486I STATUS= ACT/S, DESIRED STATE= ACTIV
IST1447I REGISTRATION TYPE = CDSERVR
IST1363I GENERIC RESOURCE NAME VIRTPLEX REPRESENTS SPNET.VIRTEL1A
IST977I MDLTAB=***NA*** ASLTAB=***NA***
IST861I MODETAB=***NA*** USSTAB=***NA***LOGTAB=***NA***
IST934I DLOGMOD=***NA*** USS LANGTAB=***NA***
IST1632I VPACING = 7
IST1938I APPC = NO
IST597I CAPABILITY-PLU ENABLED ,SLU ENABLED ,SESSION LIMIT NONE
IST231I APPL MAJOR NODE = APPLVIPX
IST654I I/O TRACE = OFF, BUFFER TRACE = OFF
IST1500I STATE TRACE = OFF
```

```
IST271I JOBNAME = SPVIR1A, STEPNAME = SPVIR1A, DSPNAME = ISTEBBDB
IST228I ENCRYPTION = OPTIONAL , TYPE = DES
IST1563I CKEYNAME = VIRTEL1A CKEY = PRIMARY CERTIFY = NO
IST1552I MAC = NONE MACTYPE = NONE
IST1050I MAXIMUM COMPRESSION LEVEL - INPUT = 0, OUTPUT = 0
IST1633I ASRCVLM = 1000000
IST1634I DATA SPACE USAGE: CURRENT = 0 MAXIMUM = 1280
IST171I ACTIVE SESSIONS = 0000000001, SESSION REQUESTS = 0000000000
IST206I SESSIONS:
IST634I NAME STATUS SID SEND RECV VR TP NETID
IST635I SC0TCP13 ACTIV-S CA7B8B52D125F31F 0003 0001 SPNET
IST314I END
```

Message IST1363I confirms that VIRTEL operating under the ACB of VIRTEL1A is associated with the VTAM resource name VIRTPLEX.

12.1.3 Workload balancing in a SYSPLEX environment

In the following configuration we can see how the VTAM generic resource facility can also be used to distribute workloads across applications. In this example there are several CICS TOR regions within CICSA, CICSB and CICSC that are accessed through a VTAM generic resource name or CICSPELX group name. VIRTEL uses this name to access the CICS application. The WLM and/or VTAM will distribute sessions across the members of the CICS generic resource name.



From a High Availability aspect both CICSA and CICSB could both be down and service would still be provided by CICSC either through VIRTEL1A or VIRTEL2A. In this configuration VIRTEL exploits SYSPLEX technologies to provide a HA solution. The only VIRTEL requirement is to define a VIRTEL transaction which targets CICSZ as the VTAM application, i.e. the VTAM Generic Resource or CICSPELX group name.

12.1.4 Sharing the ARBO and other VSAM files

In a SYSPLEX or sharing environment the VSAM files, like the ARBO and TRSF files, must be shared only in READ mode. To support this the following TCT parameter should be coded:-

```
VSAMTYP=READONLY
```

This VIRTCT parameter allows the setup of ‘READ-ONLY’ Virtels, to be used in production or in a Sysplex. Almost all Virtel VSAM files may be set to read-only mode. (But note that the VIRSWAP file; being a work file it cannot be read-only.)

If this TCT value is coded then the following changes should also be made to the TCT.

- The MACRF statements should be amended from MACRF=(SEQ,DIR,OUT,LSR) to MACRF=(SEQ,DIR,LSR).
- The UFILE parameter string should also be changed from 0,10,01 to 0,10,05. For example:-

```
HTMLTRSF,ACBH2,0,10,01 becomes HTMLTRSF,ACBH2,0,10,05
```

This will ensure the integrity of the VSAM files across a SYSPLEX or shared environment. When Virtel is started the following messages will be issued:-

```
VIR0093I VTAM GENERIC RESOURCE NAME IS VIRPLEX
VIR0024I OPENING FILE VIRARBO
VIR0024I READ ONLY
VIR0024I OPENING FILE VIRSWAP
VIR0024I OPENING FILE VIRHTML
VIR0024I READ ONLY
VIR0024I OPENING FILE SAMPTRSF
VIR0024I READ ONLY
VIR0024I OPENING FILE HTMLTRSF
VIR0024I READ ONLY
VIR0024I ATTACHING SUBTASKS
```

Danger: Do not set the SHROPTIONS to (4,3) as this will have undesirable results!

Using a READ only environment enables you to not only share the ARBO file but also the SAMP and HTML TRSF files.

12.1.5 READ ONLY Restrictions

If you share the VSAM files (SAMP.TRSF, ARBO, HTML.TRSF) in READ only mode Virtel Administration is not possible. For example uploading web updates to the SAMP.TRSF or adding macros to the DDI repositories. In this configuration you will have to have a maintenance instance of Virtel which can write to the VSAM files. This can be brought up during a maintenance slot when the READ ONLY instances are down. An alternative to this method is to maintain a copy of the VSAM files and use these for maintenance and updates then copy these VSAM files to the READ ONLY versions during a maintenance slot.

In Virtel V4.59 this restriction has been removed with the introduction of the VIRPLEX feature. VIRPLEX enables a nominated “WRITER” Virtel task to participate in the Virtel infrastructure. Only administrators would have access to this “WRITER” instance. Maintenance and centralized entities, such as macros, could be uploaded using the “WRITER” instance. The “writer” instance, which has “write access” to the Virtel files would then populate the files with the new updates. Virtel “READ” instances would detect the changes and automatically refresh the “cache” instances. See the “*VIRPLEX section*”, for more information.

12.1.6 Virtel naming conventions

When running more than one VIRTEL STC care must be taken when defining the VTAM relay names that each VIRTEL tasks will use. In the above configuration each Virtel instance is running on a different LPAR, and for the HA reasons, probably on a different physical machine; however, the VTAM names employed must be unique. With Virtel you can define a single configuration within the ARBO and TCT which contains a unique pool of Virtel relays for each Virtel instance.

Here are two possible ways to define the relay pools for multiple Virtel instances:

The first way is to include the SYSCLONE value as part of the LU name. The relay definitions utilize the system symbolic SYSCLONE value in the IEASYMxx member of PARMLIB. The clone value is taken from the system symbolic &SYSCLONE and is identified in the VIRTEL definitions through the + (plus) character:

LIST of TERMINALS ----- Applid: VIRTEL1A 15:11:01								
Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd	Relay
CLLOC000	0050			3	3			
CLVTA000	0080	*	W2HPOOL	3	3			
DELOC000	0010			3	3			
DEVTA000	0016	*	W2HPOOL	3	3			
W2HIM000	0080	R+IM000		1	1			
W2HTP000	0080	R+VT000		3	3	*W2HPOOL R+IM000		

12.1.7 TCT definition

In the configuration above there are two Virtel STCs running on different LPARS whose &SYSCLONE values are 1A and 2A. With the same TCT being used for both VIRTEL1A and VIRTEL2A the following is specified in the common TCT:-

```
APPLID=VIRTEL+,
SYSPLUS=YES,
```

This will mean that the two Virtels STCs will have a VTAM APPLID of ^VIRTEL1A and VIRTEL2A. The Virtel relay LU names are R1AVT000-079 for LPAR 1A, and R2AVT000-079 for LPAR 2A. The VTAM definition to support this configuration would like:-

```
APPLVIPX VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* Product : VIRTEL
* Description : APPL for VIRTEL SYSPLEX (SPVIR1A and SPVIR2A)
* -----
VIRTEL&SYSCLONE APPL EAS=160, AUTH=(ACQ,BLOCK,PASS,SPO),
      ACBNAME=VIRTEL&SYSCLONE
*
* -----
* R&SYSCLONEVTxxx : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access
* -----
R&SYSCLONE.VT??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS), MODETAB=ISTINCLM,
      DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
*
* -----
* R&SYSCLONEIMxxx : Printer relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals
* -----
R&SYSCLONE.IM??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS), MODETAB=ISTINCLM,
      DLOGMOD=SCS,EAS=1
R&SYSCLONE.IP??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS), MODETAB=ISTINCLM,
      DLOGMOD=DSILGMOD,EAS=1
```

Because this naming convention could be constraining if you want to use 4-character LU names, there is a

second method which allows you to freely choose the LU names without the need to include the SYSCLONE characters as part of the LU name. In the next example two pools are defined. Pool *W1APOOL has relay names J000-J999, K000-K999, L000-L999 for LPAR 1 (with printer names Pnnn,Qnnn,Rnnn), and pool *W2APOOL has relay names M000-M999, N000-N999, O000-O999 (with printer names Snnn,Tnnn,Unnn) for LPAR 2:-

Terminal	Repeated	Relay	Entry	Type	I/O	Pool	2nd	Relay
CLLOC000	0500			3	3			
CLVTA000	1000	*W+POOL		3	3			
CLVTB000	1000	*W+POOL		3	3			
CLVTC000	1000	*W+POOL		3	3			
DELOC000	0010			3	3			
DEVTA000	0016	*W+POOL		3	3			
W2HIP000	1000	P000		1	1			
W2HIQ000	1000	Q000		1	1			
W2HIR000	1000	R000		1	1			
W2HIS000	1000	S000		1	1			
W2HIT000	1000	T000		1	1			
W2HIU000	1000	U000		1	1			
W2HTJ000	1000	J000		3	3	*W1APOOL	P000	
W2HTK000	1000	K000		3	3	*W1APOOL	Q000	
W2HTL000	1000	L000		3	3	*W1APOOL	R000	
W2HTM000	1000	M000		3	3	*W2APOOL	S000	
W2HTN000	1000	N000		3	3	*W2APOOL	T000	
W2HTO000	1000	O000		3	3	*W2APOOL	U000	

The VTAM definitions would be similar to those from the previous example except the &SYSCLONE would be replaced by the relay characters.

```
APVIRT&SYSCLONE. VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* Product      : VIRTEL
* Description  : Main ACB for VIRTEL application
* -----
VIRTEL&SYSCLONE APPL AUTH=(ACQ,BLOCK,PASS,SPO),EAS=160,
                  ACBNAME=VIRTEL&SYSCLONE
* -----
* Jxxx,Kxxx    : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access*
* Lxxx,Mxxx    : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access *
* Nxxx,Oxxx    : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access*
* -----
J??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
K??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
L??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
M??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
N??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
O??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
* -----
* Pxxx,Qxxx    : Printer relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals   *
* Rxxx,Sxxx    : Printer relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals   *
* Txxx,Uxxx    : Printer relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals   *
* -----
P??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
Q??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
R??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
S??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
T??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
U??? APPL AUTH=NVPACE,EAS=1,PARSESS=NO,MODETAB=ISTINCLM,SESSLIM=YES
```

12.2 Using a Distributed VIPA to load balance

Using a Dynamic VIPA with IBM's SYSPLEX Distributor (SD) you can balance Virtel session workload across more than one Virtel STC. The distributing TCPIP stack will balance workload across the participating target TCPIP stacks. Allocation of new sessions on the IP side will depend on the selected SD/WLM algorithm. For example this can be a Round Robin policy or WLM policy workload algorithm. Access to the Virtel tasks is through using distributed VIPA address which is defined in a TCPIP profile. In the configuration above it is defined as 192.168.170.15. The relevant PROFILE definitions for TCPIP would look like:-

```
VIPADYNAMIC
VIPARANGE DEFINE MOVEABLE NONDISRUPTIVE 255.255.255.0 192.168.170.20
VIPADEFINE MOVE IMMED 255.255.255.0 192.168.170.15
VIPADISTRIBUTE DEFINE TIMEDAFF 60 DISTMETHOD ROUNDROBIN 192.168.170.15
DESTIP ALL
ENDVIPADYNAMIC
```

12.2.1 Session Affinity

It is essential to include the TIMEDAFF parameter in the VIPA definition as this maintains session affinity. The TIMEDAFF facility ensures that a user will always connect to the same VIRTEL while a session is open. Also, it is recommended that the Virtel line W-HTTP (port 41001) is used for Virtel Administration and line C-HTTP (port 41002) for user access to applications.

Line W-HTTP should be defined using the base address of the LPAR (i.e.the home address of the default interface) by specifying only the port number. For example:

Local ident ==> :41001

Line C-HTTP should be defined using the distributed VIPA address and port number if you are using a dynamic VIPA:

Local ident ==> 192.168.170.15:41002

If you are not using a dynamic VIPA to point to your Virtel then the port address must be prefixed with 0 or 0.0.0.0. For example:-

Local ident ==> 0:41002

This will ensure the Virtel doesn't associate itself with a particular IP address.

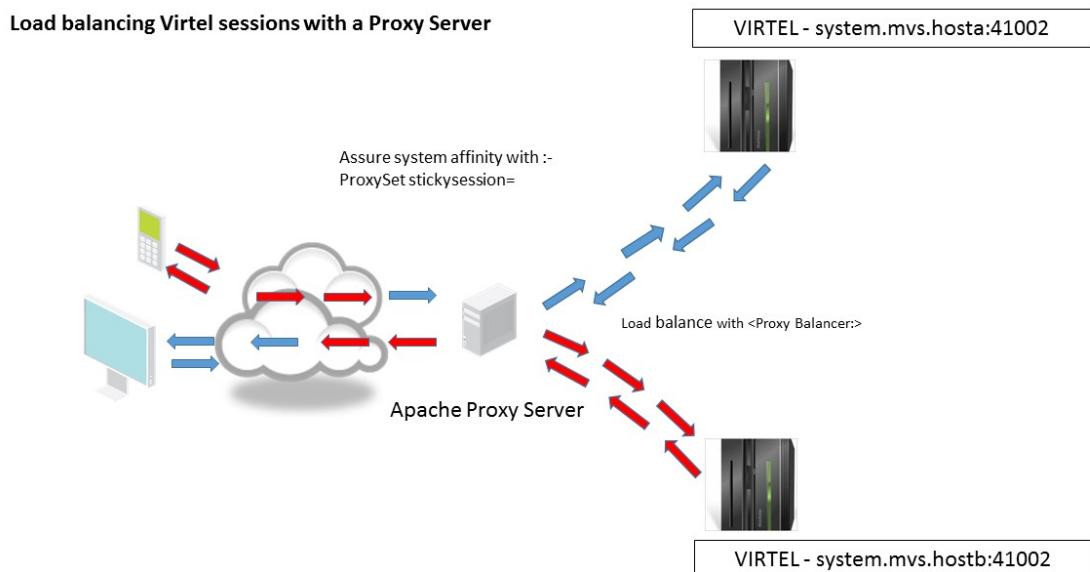
The Virtel Line display command displays this configuration:

```
F SPVIR1A,LINES
VIR0200I LINES
VIR0201I VIRTEL 4.54 APPLID=VIRTEL1A LINES
VIR0202I INT.NAME EXT.NAME TYPE ACB OR IP
VIR0202I -----
VIR0202I C-HTTP HTTP-CLI TCP1 192.168.170.15:41002
VIR0202I W-HTTP HTTP-W2H TCP1 :41001
VIR0202I ---END OF LIST---
```

In this way the administrator can access a specific Virtel using port 41001 of the appropriate LPAR's IP address, while the users can access both Virtels using port 41002 on the DVIPA address.

12.3 Using an Apache Proxy to load balance

Another way of balancing workloads across multiple Virtel instances is through an Apache Reverse Proxy Server. In this setup the proxy server load balances IP sessions across the known TCPIP stacks, very much like IBM's Sysplex Distributor.



Again, to maintain session affinity the correct load balancing parameters must be used. An example from the http.conf looks like this:-

```
#  
# Virtel  
#  
ProxyPass / balancer://hostcluster/  
ProxyPassReverse / balancer://hostcluster/  
<Proxy balancer://hostcluster>  
BalancerMember http://syt00101.gzaop.local:41002 retry=5  
BalancerMember http://syt00101.gzaop.local:51002 retry=5  
ProxySet lbmethod=byrequests  
</Proxy>
```

For more information on setting up an Apache Proxy Server visit http://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_proxy_balancer.html

To use Apache as a Proxy Server it is essential that the correct configuration modules are loaded at startup. Here is an example:-

```
#LoadModule foo_module modules/mod_foo.so  
LoadModule authz_host_module modules/mod_authz_host.so  
LoadModule auth_basic_module modules/mod_auth_basic.so  
LoadModule authn_file_module modules/mod_authn_file.so  
LoadModule authz_user_module modules/mod_authz_user.so  
#LoadModule authz_groupfile_module modules/mod_authz_groupfile.so  
LoadModule include_module modules/mod_include.so  
LoadModule log_config_module modules/mod_log_config.so
```

```
LoadModule env_module modules/mod_env.so
#LoadModule mime_magic_module modules/mod_mime_magic.so
#LoadModule expires_module modules/mod_expires.so
LoadModule headers_module modules/mod_headers.so
LoadModule unique_id_module modules/mod_unique_id.so
LoadModule setenvif_module modules/mod_setenvif.so
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so
#LoadModule proxy_ftp_module modules/mod_proxy_ftp.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so
LoadModule mime_module modules/mod_mime.so
#LoadModule dav_module modules/mod_dav.so
#LoadModule dav_fs_module modules/mod_dav_fs.so
LoadModule autoindex_module modules/mod_autoindex.so
#LoadModule asis_module modules/mod_asis.so
#LoadModule info_module modules/mod_info.so
LoadModule cgi_module modules/mod_cgi.so
LoadModule dir_module modules/mod_dir.so
LoadModule actions_module modules/mod_actions.so
#LoadModule spelng_module modules/mod_spelng.so
#LoadModule userdir_module modules/mod_userdir.so
LoadModule alias_module modules/mod_alias.so
#LoadModule rewrite_module modules/mod_rewrite.so
#LoadModule deflate_module modules/mod_deflate.so
LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
```

Some other Apache configuration recommendations are:-

```
* Timeouts
SSLDisable
SSLV3Timeout 18010
* Format log with router information
LogFormat "%h %l %u %t\"%r\" %>s %b \"%{Referer}i\" \"%{User-Agent}i\" \"%{BALANCER_
→WORKER_ROUTE}e\"" combined
* set Max-Age to 12h (doesn't work with IE) or
* enable mod_expires and set: (this should be checked)
ExpiresActive On
ExpiresDefault "access plus 16 h"
```

See https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/mod/mod_expires.html for more information.

CHAPTER
THIRTEEN

VIRPLEX

Virplex

The new Virplex communication feature of Virtel provides the ability for multiple virtel instances to communicate with each other. This global knowledge of participating Virtel instances is referred to as a Virplex and enables Virtel instances to share the same ARBO and TRSF files. In a Virplex there is a number of Virtel “READ ONLY” instances and one “WRITER” instance. These instances all share the same ARBO and TRSF files, including any user defined TRSF files, with the read only instances only have a “READ” capability on the shared VSAM files and the “WRITER” instance having a standard standard read/write capability to all files. The ability to share files amongst participating Virtels provides support for the following functions:

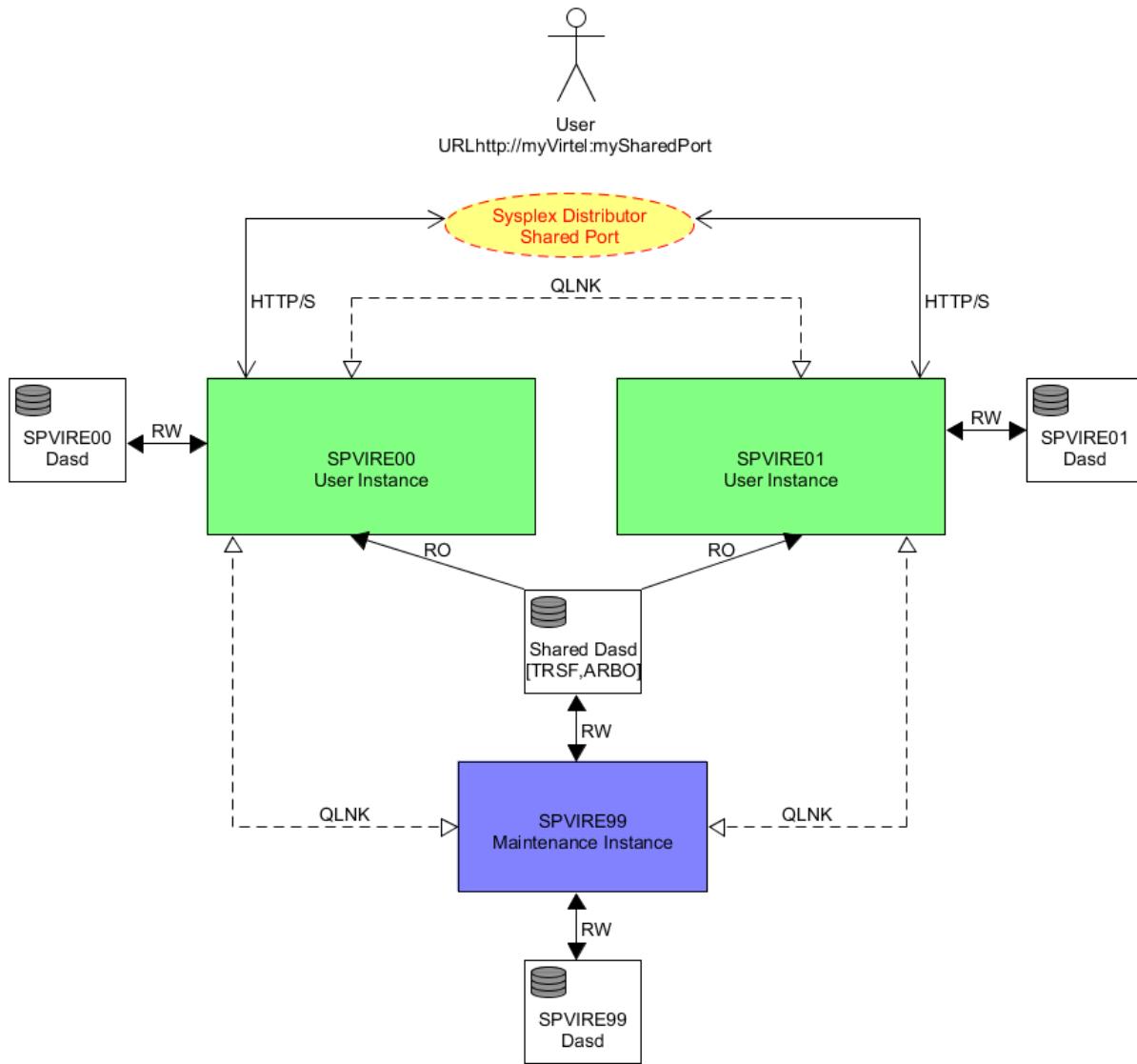
Dynamic Message Routing Removes the dependency of external “Timed Affinity” technologies to support session affinity between a Virtel instance and browser session. Changes in the URL format now enable participating Virtels within the Virplex to determine whether they are the target of the URL or if the URL belongs to another Virtel instance. In the latter case the URL is forwarded onto the target Virtel destination. A unique Virplex token is attached to each URL request which provides the affinity between a Virtel instance and browser session. This feature provides additional support in customer’s High Availability scenarios/implementations.

Dynamic Cache Updates Within a Virplex environment maintenance can now be distributed to all participating instances through the “WRITER” instance. This feature enables maintenance updates to be populated to each Virtel’s internal cache system without the need to recycle a Virtel instance. The sequence of events would be as follows:-

- Virtel maintenance is uploaded, via the “Writer” task, to the SAMP.TRSF VSAM file.
- The “WRITER” tasks then contacts each participating “READER” tasks to inform them that their internal cache is no longer in sync.
- The “Reader” instance resynchronizes their “internal cache” with the TRSF file thereby dynamically refreshing the browsers cache and introducing the new maintenance.

Central User Parameter Repository Using the features of Virplex users can now maintain a centralized repository for user’s VWA settings across multiple instances of Virtel. This repository keeps each users settings so that when a new browser session is initiated the same settings will be used. Previously settings were only maintained in local storage and were lost when moving to a different browser or device. Now the local storage is synchronized with the central repository enabling the user to maintain the same settings across different environments.

13.1 Setting up a Virplex



13.2 TCT definitions

Setting up a Virplex involves two TCTs, one for the ‘READER’ instances and another for the ‘WRITER’ instance. There can be multiple ‘READER’ instances but only one ‘WRITER’ instance.

13.2.1 TCT for ‘READER’ tasks.

The TCT for ‘READER’ tasks must have the following TCT definitions:-

<code>VSAMTYP=READONLY,</code>	Set Read only. Default = Read/Write
<code>IGNLU=W-HTTP,</code>	Disable the Admin line
<code>...</code>	
<code>UFILE1=(SAMPTRSF,ACBH1,<u>0,10,05</u>),</code>	ACBHx fields <code>set</code> accordingly. Note <code>05</code>
<code>UFILE2=(HTMLTRSF,ACBH2,<u>0,10,05</u>),</code>	and not <code>01</code> .

```
    . . .
ACBH1    ACB    AM=VSAM, DDNAME=SAMPTRSF, MACRF=(SEQ,DIR),          *
          STRNO=3           OUT option removed
ACBH2    ACB    AM=VSAM, DDNAME=HTMLTRSF, MACRF=(SEQ,DIR),          *
          STRNO=3           OUT option removed
```

13.2.2 TCT for 'WRITER' task

The TCT for a 'WRITER' task must have the following definitions in the TCT.

```
VSAMTYP=WRITER,                                Set Writer Instance
IGNLU=C-HTTP,                                    Disable any user line
. . .
UFILE1=(SAMPTRSF,ACBH1,0,10,05),             ACBHx fields set to 05 and not 01.
UFILE2=(HTMLTRSF,ACBH2,0,10,05),
. . .
ACBH1    ACB    AM=VSAM, DDNAME=SAMPTRSF, MACRF=(SEQ,DIR),          *
          STRNO=3
ACBH2    ACB    AM=VSAM, DDNAME=HTMLTRSF, MACRF=(SEQ,DIR),          *
          STRNO=3
```

13.3 ARBO definitions

To support a Virplex each Virtel instance must be aware of all instances within the Virplex. This internal communication is provided by defining Virtel lines between each instance. These lines are defined in a common ARBO file shared by all members of a Virplex. The communications protocol used between Virplex members is the proprietary QUICKLNK protocol. In the following sample definitions the W-HTTP line is the administration port only available to the 'WRITER' task and the common user line, V-HTTP provides the common port for the Virtel instances within the Virplex.

QLNK Line definitions for 'READER' instances.~

```
* QLNU Lines for Virplex Reader tasks.
LINE     ID=SPVIRE00,
         NAME=SPVIRE00,
         LOCADDR=192.168.170.81:41030,
         DESC='Virplex READ ONLY instance - SPVIRE00',
         TYPE=TCP1,
         INOUT=3,
         PROTOCOL=QUICKLNK,
         TIMEOUT=0000,
         ACTION=0,
         WINSZ=0000,
         PKTSZ=0000,
         RETRY=0000
```

The ID and Name keywords must refer to the instances VTAM ACB name. The address in the LOCADDR must be unique within the Virplex.

QLNK Line definition for 'WRITER' instance.

```
* QLNU Lines for Virplex Writer tasks
LINE     ID=SPVIRE99,
         NAME=SPVIRE99,
         LOCADDR=192.168.170.81:41099,  SHARED PORT
         DESC='Virplex READ/WRITE instance - SPVIRE99',
```

```

TERMINAL=VX,
TYPE=TCP1,
INOUT=3,
PROTOCOL=QUICKLNK,
TIMEOUT=0000,
ACTION=0,
WINSZ=0000,
PKTSZ=0000,
RETRY=0000

```

The ID and Name keywords must refer to the WRITER's VTAM ACB name. The address in the LOCADDR must be unique within the Virplex. The WRITER task also requires additional terminal definitions – TERMINAL=VX.

Terminal definitions for 'WRITER' instance.

```

TERMINAL ID=VXLOC000,
DESC='HTTP terminals (no relay)',
TYPE=3,
COMPRESS=2,
INOUT=3,
STATS=26,
REPEAT=0010

```

Modifications to existing lines will also be required. Assuming that the 'WRITER' line will be using line W-HTTP to communicate with the 'READER' instances, and the C-HTTP line will be associated with the 'READER' instances serving incoming calls, the following changes are required.

VirTEL lines for Administration (W-HTTP) and user access (V-HTTP).

In both the V-HTTP and W-HTTP line definitions, the COND='VIRPLEX-LINE(=VIRTEL=)' parameter must be added. Here is an example of the revised definition for W-HTTP.

Administration line associated with the 'WRITER' task.

```

* UPDATE W-HTTP WITH COND=
LINE    ID=W-HTTP,
NAME=HTTP-W2H,
LOCADDR=:41001,
DESC='HTTP line (entry point WEB2HOST)',
TERMINAL=DE,
ENTRY=WEB2HOST,
TYPE=TCP1,
INOUT=1,
COND='VIRPLEX-LINE (=VIRTEL=) ',
PROTOCOL=VIRHTTP,
TIMEOUT=0000,
ACTION=0,
WINSZ=0000,
PKTSZ=0000,
RETRY=0010

```

The user interface line definition, V-HTTP, looks like this:-

```

*
* User line associated with Virplex VIPA 15.41902
*
LINE    ID=V-HTTP,
NAME=HTTP-VPX,

```

```

LOCADDR=192.168.170.15:41902,
DESC='HTTP line (Entry point VPXWHOST) ',
TERMINAL=VP,
ENTRY=VPXWHOST,
COND='VIRPLEX-LINE (=VIRTEL=) ',
TYPE=TCP1,
INOUT=1,
PROTOCOL=VIRHTTP,
TIMEOUT=0000,
ACTION=0,
WINSZ=0000,
PKTSZ=0000,
RETRY=0010
*
```

Terminal definitions to support user interface on common port 41902.

```

*
TERMINAL ID=VPLOC000,
DESC='HTTP terminals (no relay) - V-HTTP',
TYPE=3,
COMPRESS=2,
INOUT=3,
STATS=26,
REPEAT=0080
```

Entry point definition for VPXHOST

```

*
ENTRY    ID=VPXWHOST,
DESC='HTTP entry point for Virplex line) ',
TRANSACT=VPX,
TIMEOUT=0720,
ACTION=0,
EMUL=HTML,
SIGNON=VIR0020H,
MENU=VIR0021A,
IDENT=SCENLOGM,
EXTCOLOR=E
```

Pool definitions

```

*
TERMINAL ID=VPXIM000,
RELAY=R+IM000,
DESC='SCS printers (LUTYPE1) for HTTP',
TYPE=S,
COMPRESS=2,
INOUT=1,
STATS=26,
REPEAT=0010
TERMINAL ID=VPXTP000,
RELAY=R+VT000,
POOL=*VPXPOOL,
DESC='Relay pool for HTTP',
RELAY2=R+IM000,
TYPE=3,
COMPRESS=2,
```

```
INOUT=3,
STATS=26,
REPEAT=0010
```

Terminal relay definitions

```
*
```

TERMINAL ID=VPVTA000,	-
RELAY=*VPXPOOL,	-
DESC='HTTP terminals (with relay)',	-
TYPE=3,	-
COMPRESS=2,	-
INOUT=3,	-
STATS=26,	-
REPEAT=0010	-

Note the use of the + in the relay names. This will be overwritten with the clone parameter in the startup JCL for the 'READER' tasks.

Transaction definitions

These transactions are required to support Virtel and Applications in a Virplex.

```
* Virtel Internal transactions
TRANSACT ID=VPX-00,
    NAME=VPXWHOST,
    DESC='Default directory = entry point name',
    APPL=VPX-DIR,
    TYPE=4,
    TERMINAL=VPLOC,
    STARTUP=2,
    SECURITY=0,
    TIOASTA='/w2h/appmenu.htm+applist'
TRANSACT ID=VPX-03W,
    NAME='w2h',
    DESC='W2H toolkit directory (/w2h)',
    APPL=W2H-DIR,
    TYPE=4,
    STARTUP=2,
    SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=VPX-03X,
    NAME='vpx',
    DESC='VPX directory (/vpx)',
    APPL=VPX-DIR,
    TYPE=4,
    STARTUP=2,
    SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=VPX-03Y,
    NAME='yui',
    DESC='YUI toolkit directory (/yui)',
    APPL=YUI-DIR,
    TYPE=4,
    STARTUP=2,
    SECURITY=0
TRANSACT ID=VPX-90,
    NAME='applist',
    DESC='List of applications for appmenu.htm',
    APPL=VIR0021S,
    TYPE=2,
```

```

TERMINAL=VPLOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=1
TRANSACT ID=W2H-80X,
NAME='uplvpox',
DESC='Upload macros (VPX-DIR directory)',
APPL=VIR0041C,
TYPE=2,
TERMINAL=DELOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=1,
LOGMSG=VPX-DIR

```

These transactions define the 3270 applications.

TRANSACT ID=VPX-14, NAME=TSO, DESC='Logon to TSO', APPL=TSO, TYPE=1,
 TERMINAL=VPVTA, STARTUP=1, SECURITY=1

TRANSACT ID=VPX-15, NAME=CICS, DESC='Logon to CICS', APPL=SP-CICST,
 TYPE=1, TERMINAL=VPVTA, STARTUP=1, SECURITY=1,
 TIOASTA="Signon&F&*7D4EC9&'114BE9'&U&'114CF9'&P&/A"

Sub directory definition for VIR-DIR

```

*
SUBDIR   ID=VPX-DIR,
          DESC='Pages for VPXWHOST',
          DDNAME=HTMLTRSF,
          KEY=VPX-KEY,
          NAMELEN=0064,
          AUTHUP=X,
          AUTHDOWN=X,
          AUTHDEL=X

```

Virplex JCL examples

JCL Procedure for Virplex.

```

//*****
//** DEFAULT PROCEDURE FOR A VIRPLEX TASK *
//*****
//VIRPLEX  PROC QUAL=&HLQ..VIRT&REL,
//          TCT=00,                      READ ONLY TCT (99 = R/W)
//          PROG=VIR6000,                PROGRAM TO CALL
//          CLONE=00,                   APPLID=SPVIRE&CLONE
//          IP=192.168.170.48           Not Used
//VIRTEL   EXEC PGM=&PROG,
//          TIME=1440,REGION=0M,
//          PARM='&TCT,SPVIRE&CLONE,,&IP,&CLONE'
//STEPLIB  DD DSN=&QUAL..LOADLIB,DISP=SHR
//DFHRPL   DD DSN=&QUAL..LOADLIB,DISP=SHR
//SERVLIB   DD DSN=&QUAL..SERVLIB,DISP=SHR
//* VSAM FILES SHARED
//VIRARBO  DD DSN=&QUAL..VIRPLEX.ARBO,DISP=SHR
//SAMPTRSF DD DSN=&QUAL..VIRPLEX.SAMP.TRSF,DISP=SHR
//HTMLTRSF DD DSN=&QUAL..VIRPLEX.HTML.TRSF,DISP=SHR
//* VSAM FILES UNIQUE
//VIRHTML  DD DSN=&QUAL..VIRTEL&CLONE..HTML,DISP=SHR
//VIRSWAP  DD DSN=&QUAL..VIRTEL&CLONE..SWAP,DISP=SHR

```

```
/* NVSAM
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRLOG DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRTRACE DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
```

JCL example for Virtel ‘READER’ task 0

```
//SPTHOLTO JOB 9000, 'VIRTEL', CLASS=A, MSGCLASS=X, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PROLIB JCLLIB ORDER=SPTHOLT.VIRT459.CNTL
//S01 EXEC VIRTELZ, TCT=00, HLQ=SPTHOLT, REL=459, CLONE=00
```

JCL example for Virtel ‘READER’ task 1

```
//SPTHOLT1 JOB 9000, 'VIRTEL', CLASS=A, MSGCLASS=X, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PROLIB JCLLIB ORDER=SPTHOLT.VIRT459.CNTL
//S01 EXEC VIRTELZ, TCT=00, HLQ=SPTHOLT, REL=459, CLONE=01,
// IP=192.168.170.47
```

JCL example for Virtel ‘WRITER’ task

```
//SPTHOLT9 JOB 9000, 'VIRTEL', CLASS=A, MSGCLASS=X, NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//PROLIB JCLLIB ORDER=SPTHOLT.VIRT459.CNTL
//S01 EXEC VIRTELZ, TCT=99, HLQ=SPTHOLT, REL=459, CLONE=99,
// IP=192.168.170.39
```

VTAM Definitions

VTAM definitions required for Virtel ‘Reader’ task 0. In this example, a separate VTAMLST member would be required for each Virtel instance within the Virplex to support clone values of 00(RO) , 01(RO) and 99(RW). These VTAM definitions could be merged into one member.

```
VIRTEH00 VBUILD TYPE=APPL
* -----
* Product      : VIRTEL
* Description   : Definitions for a VIRTEL VIRPLEX instance
* -----
SPVIRE00 APPL EAS=160,AUTH=(ACQ,BLOCK,PASS,SPO),ACBNAME=SPVIRE00
* -----
* R00VTxxx     : VTAM application relays for VIRTEL Web Access
* -----
R00VT??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SNX32702,EAS=1
* -----
* R00IMxxx     : Printer relays for VIRTEL Web Access terminals
* -----
R00IM??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=SCS,EAS=1
R00IP??? APPL AUTH=(ACQ,PASS),MODETAB=ISTINCLM,DLOGMOD=DSILGMOD,EAS=1
```

TCPIP Changes The TCPIP profile definition requirements for a VIRPLEX are a shared Port address and a common VIPA for the Sysplex Distributor.

```
Shared Port Example
; SPVIRExx User Range for Virplex
41902 TCP SPVIRE00 SHAREPORT ; Virtel Portshare
41902 TCP SPVIRE01           ; Virtel Portshare
```

Common VIPA address

```
; 192.168.170.15 VIPA for SPVIREXX distribution tests
VIPADYNAMIC
    VIPARANGE DEFINE MOVEABLE NONDISRUPTIVE 255.255.255.0 192.168.170.20
    VIPADEFINE MOVE IMMED 255.255.255.0 192.168.170.15
    VIPADISTRIBUTE DEFINE TIMEDAFF 300 DISTMETHOD ROUNDROBIN 192.168.170.15
    DESTIP ALL
ENDVIPADYNAMIC
```

Installation overview to get Virplex up and running.

The following guide is based upon the examples given in this document. Here the objective is to set up three Virtel batch instances, two reader instances (SPTHOLT0 and SPTHOLT1), and one writer instance, SPHTHOLT9. The examples used are maintained in the VIRTEL.SAMPLIB. The instances are runs as batch jobs - SPHTHOLT0(SPVIRE00), SPHTHOLT1(SPVIRE01) and SPHTHOLT9(SPVIRE99).

Install Virtel and get base product up and running before attempting any Virplex changes.

SAMPLIB Members:	VIRPLEX, VIRTCT00, VIRTCT99, VIRTELZ, VIRTEL00, VIRTEL01, □ ↳ VIRTEL99
------------------	---

- Allocate common VSAM libraries and copy the SAMP, ARBO and HTML from existing/installation libraries.
- Allocate unique libraries for VIRHTML and VIRSWAP. If you are collecting statistics then VIRSTAT also has to be allocated as is unique to each Virtel instance.
- Updated your VTAMLST library to support each instance. Each instance will use VTAM resource names based upon the CLONE= keyword in the startup JCL. Activate VTAMLST members.
- Customize TCT VIRTCT00 (Reader TCT). Update license and other details.
- Customize TCT VIRTCT99 (Writer TCT). Update license and other details.
- Customize the JCL members VIRPLEX, VIRTELZ, VIRTEL00, VIRTEL01 and VIRTEL99
- Activate TCPIP changes – V TCPIP „O,DSN=TCPIP.TCPPARMS(VIRTPROF)
- Update the sample VIRPLEX definitions to support your environment.
- Run the VIRPLEX job. This will perform the following steps:- Allocate unique VSAM files Allocate shared VSAM files Copy VSAM files from install or “existing” user files. Update the VIRPLEX ARBO with the definitions required to support a Virplex. Assemble to ‘READER’ and ‘WRITER’ TCT’s
- Start the ‘WRITER’ task by submitting Job VIRTEL99.

You should see the following messages as the Administration line is activated:-

VIRHT01I HTTP INITIALISATION FOR HTTP-W2H (W-HTTP), VERSION 4.59 VIRT905I HTTP-W2H SOCKET 00000000 LISTENING 192.168.170.039:41001 VIRHT02I LINE HTTP-W2H (W-HTTP) HAS URL http://192.168.170.39:41001 VIRHT03I HTTP LINE HTTP-W2H (W-HTTP), IS A VIRPLEX SERVER WITH VSAMTYP=WRITER
--

The Administration portal can be accessed via URL 192.168.170.39:41001. Ignore any CONNECT error messages. This is normal at this stage.

- Start the ‘READER’ tasks by submitting jobs VIRTEL00 and VIRTEL01

In the ‘WRITER’ task you should see evidence that the ‘WRITER’ has connected to the ‘READER’ tasks:-

VIRB17AI LINE SPVIRE00 (SPVIRE00), RESTARTED TO ALLOW CONNECTION TO SPVIRE00 VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE00 (SPVIRE00), VERSION 4.59 VIRT907I SPVIRE00 SOCKET 00000000 CALLING 192.168.170.081:41030
--

```

VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE00 (SPVIRE00) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE00
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), VERSION 4.59
. . .
VIRB17AI LINE SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), RESTARTED TO ALLOW CONNECTION TO SPVIRE01
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), VERSION 4.59
VIRT907I SPVIRE01 SOCKET 00000000 CALLING 192.168.170.081:41031
VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE01

```

In the ‘READER’ tasks you should see evidence that the ‘READER’ has connected to the ‘WRITER’ tasks:-
 SPTHOLT0 Connecting to the ‘WRITER’ task SPTHOLT9 and the other ‘READER’ tasks SPTHOLT1

```

VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE99 (SPVIRE99), VERSION 4.59
VIRT907I SPVIRE99 SOCKET 00000000 CALLING 192.168.170.081:41099
VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE99 (SPVIRE99) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE99
. . .
VIRT905I HTTP-VPX SOCKET 00000000 LISTENING 192.168.170.015:41902
VIRHT02I LINE HTTP-VPX (V-HTTP ) HAS URL http://192.168.170.15:41902
VIRHT03I HTTP LINE HTTP-VPX (V-HTTP ), IS A VIRPLEX SERVER WITH VSAMTYP=READONLY
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), VERSION 4.59
. . .
VIRB17AI LINE SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), RESTARTED TO ALLOW CONNECTION TO SPVIRE01
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), VERSION 4.59
VIRT907I SPVIRE01 SOCKET 00000000 CALLING 192.168.170.081:41031
VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE01

```

SPTHOLT1 Connecting to the ‘WRITER’ task SPTHOLT9 and the other ‘READER’ tasks SPTHOLT0

```

VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE00 (SPVIRE00) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE00
VIRT903W LINE SPVIRE01 HAS A SESSION STARTED WITH TCP/IP TCPIP HIGHEST SOCKET
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE01 (SPVIRE01), VERSION 4.59
VIRT905I SPVIRE01 SOCKET 00000000 LISTENING 192.168.170.081:41031
VIRT903W LINE SPVIRE99 HAS A SESSION STARTED WITH TCP/IP TCPIP HIGHEST SOCKET
VIRQLK9I INITIALISATION FOR SPVIRE99 (SPVIRE99), VERSION 4.59
VIRT907I SPVIRE99 SOCKET 00000000 CALLING 192.168.170.081:41099
VIRQLK8I LOCAL LINE SPVIRE99 (SPVIRE99) IS CONNECTED TO REMOTE VIRTEL : SPVIRE99
VIRT903W LINE HTTP-VPX HAS A SESSION STARTED WITH TCP/IP TCPIP HIGHEST SOCKET

```

Once the three tasks have initiated you should see no more “CONNECT” error messages. You can test that the tree tasks are communicating by doing a “Line” display:-

```

F SPTHOLT0,LINES
VIR0200I LINES
VIR0201I VIRTEL 4.59 APPLID=SPVIRE00 LINES
VIR0202I INT.NAME EXT.NAME TYPE ACB OR IP
VIR0202I ----- -----
VIR0202I W-HTTP *GATE
VIR0202I C-HTTP *GATE
VIR0202I SPVIRE00 SPVIRE00 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41030
VIR0202I SPVIRE01 SPVIRE01 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41031
VIR0202I SPVIRE99 SPVIRE99 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41099
VIR0202I V-HTTP HTTP-VPX TCP1 192.168.170.15:41902
VIR0202I ---END OF LIST---


```

```

F SPTHOLT1,LINES
VIR0200I LINES
VIR0201I VIRTEL 4.59 APPLID=SPVIRE01 LINES
VIR0202I INT.NAME EXT.NAME TYPE ACB OR IP

```

```

VIR0202I -----
VIR0202I W-HTTP          *GATE
VIR0202I C-HTTP          *GATE
VIR0202I SPVIRE00 SPVIRE00 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41030
VIR0202I SPVIRE01 SPVIRE01 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41031
VIR0202I SPVIRE99 SPVIRE99 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41099
VIR0202I V-HTTP    HTTP-VPX TCP1 192.168.170.15:41902
VIR0202I ---END OF LIST---

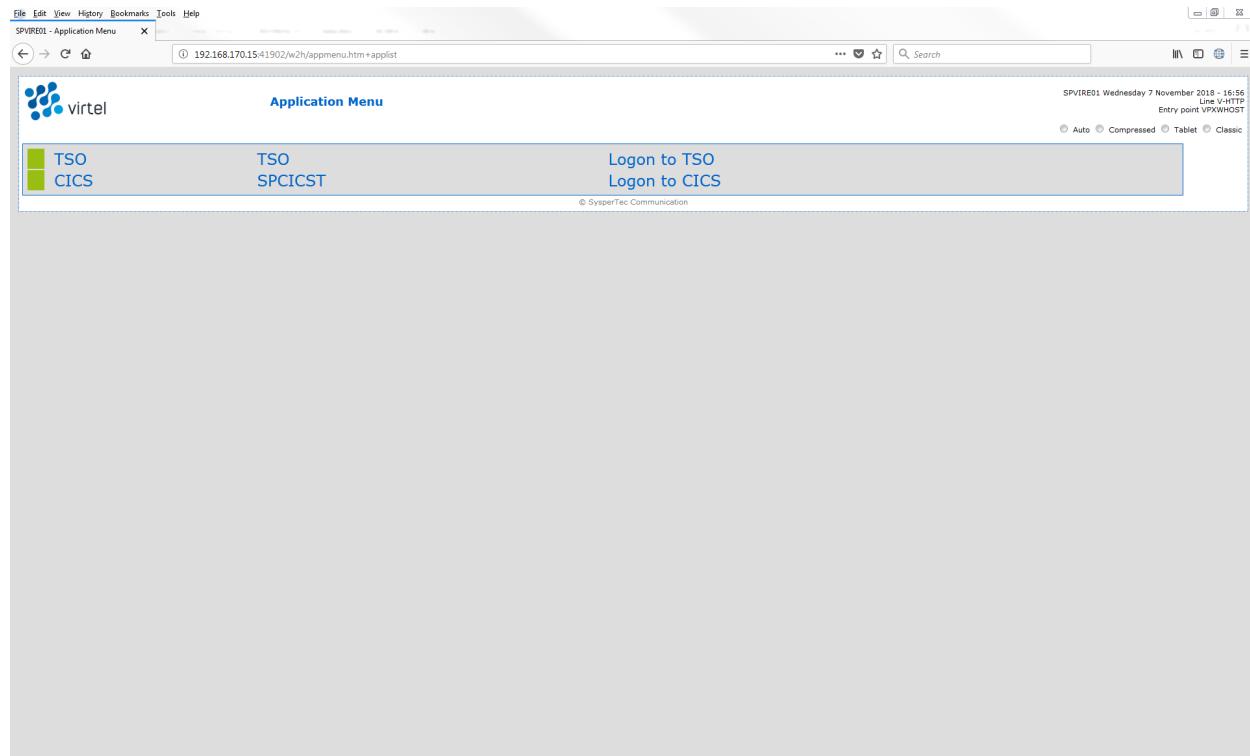
F SPTHOLT9,LINES
VIR0200I LINES
VIR0201I VIRTEL 4.59 APPLID=SPVIRE99 LINES
VIR0202I ALLOCATED IP ADDRESS = 192.168.170.39
VIR0202I INT.NAME EXT.NAME TYPE ACB OR IP
VIR0202I -----
VIR0202I C-HTTP          *GATE
VIR0202I V-HTTP          *GATE
VIR0202I SPVIRE00 SPVIRE00 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41030
VIR0202I SPVIRE01 SPVIRE01 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41031
VIR0202I SPVIRE99 SPVIRE99 TCP1 192.168.170.81:41099
VIR0202I W-HTTP    HTTP-W2H TCP1 :41001
VIR0202I ---END OF LIST---

```

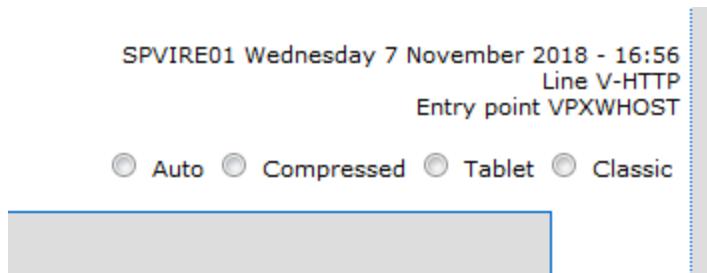
If the displays match those above then the VIRPLEX has initialized successfully.

Validating the Virplex

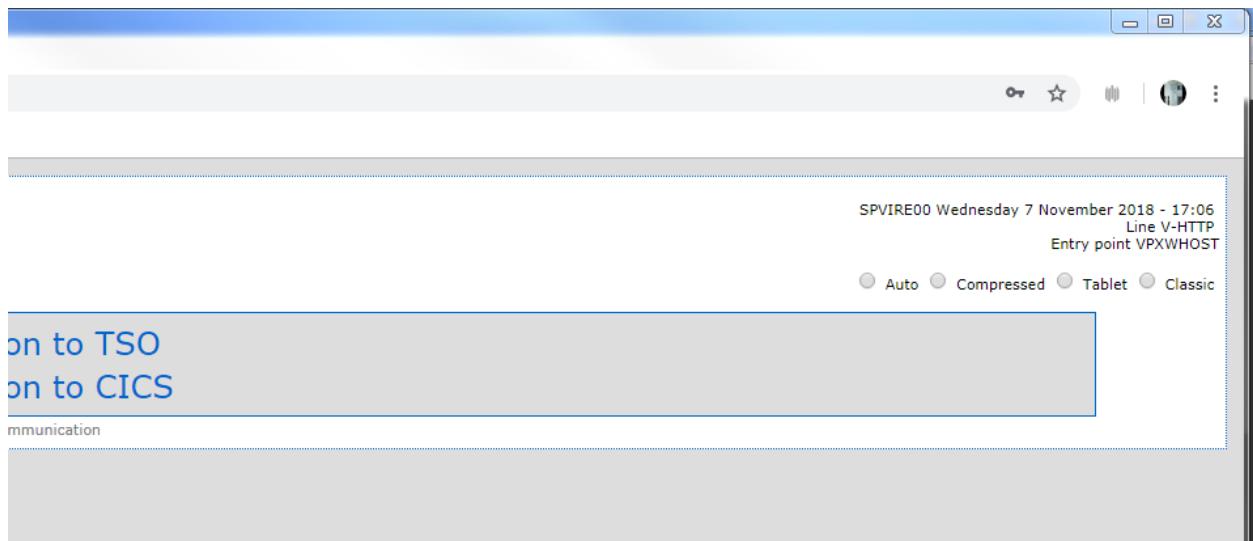
Logon to Virtel using the common URL 192.168.170.15:41902. You should be presented with the Applist screen showing the two 3270 applications defined in the common ARBO.



The top right hand corner will identify the 'READER' instance support this session. In this example this is Virtel instance SPTHOLT1 (SPVIRE01)



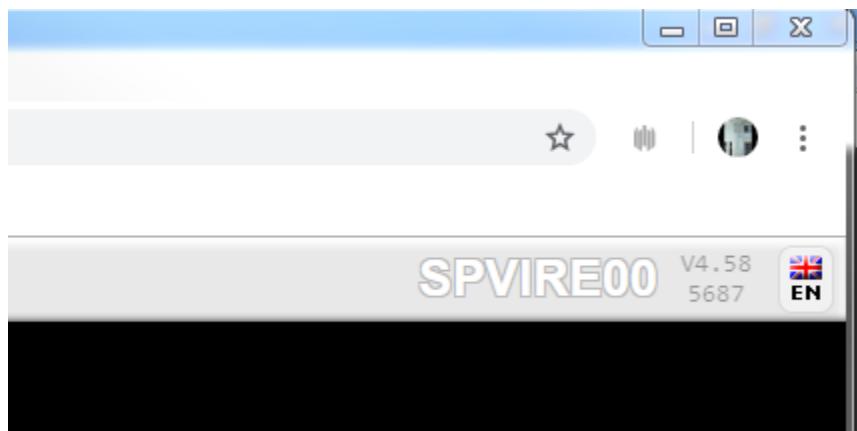
On a separate machine, one with a different IP address, logon again to Virtel using the same URL. This time, if the Sysplex Distributor is working in a “round robin” fashion, it will allocate a different ‘READER’ instance. Here is the sample of a second browser session, this time using Chrome, allocating a Virtel session on Virtel instance SPTHOLT0 (SPVIRE00).



At this point validation of the Virplex is confirmed.

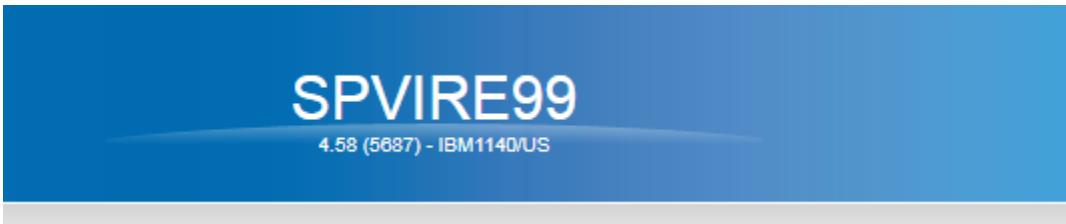
Testing QLNK communication.

To test that the Virtels are communicating, maintenance will be uploaded via the ‘WRITER’ task. The ‘WRITER’ task will distributed this to the two ‘READER’ tasks. Connect to the TSO application to determine the current maintenance level.



It shows as UPDT level V4.59 / 5687. Confirm this with the Administration Portal on the ‘WRITER’ task by accessing the ‘Admin Portal’ through the ‘WRITER’ URL 192.168.170.39:41001. The maintenance level

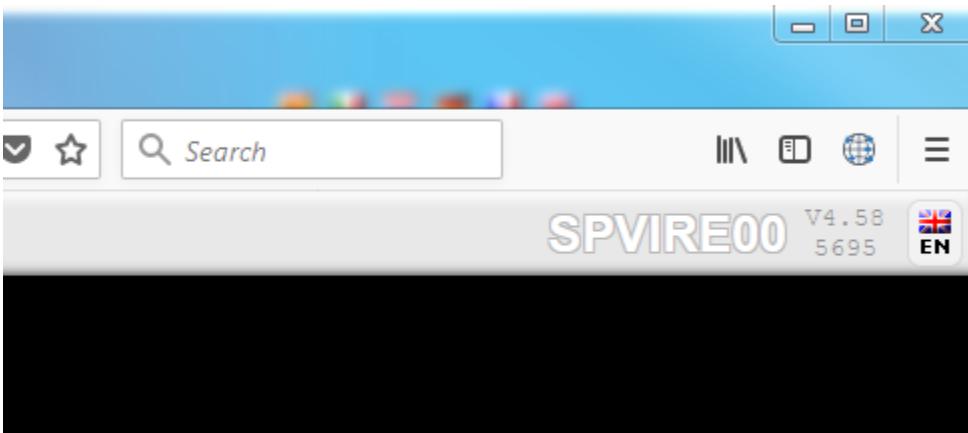
is shown in the Middle of the Tool Bar area on the screen:-



This confirms that both the 'WRITER' and 'READER' instances had loaded the SAMP TRSF file. Using the "Drag and Drop" feature upload some maintenance to the W2H-DIR file. In this example the maintenance level TP 5695 is uploaded via the 'WRITER' instance SPTHOLT9(SPVIRE99). A refresh of the browser (CTRL+UP+DEL + CTRL+R) now shows the maintenance level to be 4.59 (5695):-



If a new browser window is opened on another machine, and TSO is accessed through the common URL / APPLIST navigation, the maintenance level has changed to V4.59 UPDT 5695:-



This confirms that the 'WRITER' and 'READER' tasks are communicating and the automatic distribution of maintenance out to 'READER' task environments is working. The following traces on the 'WRITER' task show that the 'WRITER' is communicating with 'READER' tasks:-

```
*****TOP OF DATA*****  
SPVIRE00 QLNK REQUEST TO 192.168.170.081:41030 17:21:19.30  
00000 00000030 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F9F9 1EBFE740 5B5C9D9 D7D3C5E7 00000000 C109C5C1 * .SPVIRE99..X &VIRPLEX AREA*  
00020 00000000 00000000 000040F0 00000093 E2E805C3 C809D6F1 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F9F9 * (0 1SYNCHRO1SPVIRE99*  
00040 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F0F0 C3C1C3F1 E2C104D7 E3D9E2C6 E6F2C860 D2C5E840 000AE5C9 *SPVIRE00CAC1SAMPTR5FW2H-KEY .VI*  
00060 D9C1D1C1 E74B01E2 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 *RAJAX.JS *  
00080 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 * *W2*  
000A0 C860C4C9 D940E685 846B40F0 F740D596 A540F2F0 F1F840F1 F67AF2F1 7AF1F940 *H-DIR Wed, 07 Nov 2018 16:21:19 *  
000C0 C7D4E3 *GMT *  
  
*****TOP OF DATA*****  
SPVIRE00 QLNK REQUEST TO 192.168.170.081:41030 17:21:21.09  
00000 00000030 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F9F9 1EBFE740 5B5C9D9 D7D3C5E7 00000000 C109C5C1 * .SPVIRE99..X &VIRPLEX AREA*  
00020 00000000 00000000 000040F0 00000093 E2E805C3 C809D6F1 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F9F9 * (0 1SYNCHRO1SPVIRE99*  
00040 E2D7E5C9 D9C5F0F0 C3C1C3F1 E2C104D7 E3D9E2C6 E6F2C860 D2C5E840 000EE5E6 *SPVIRE00CAC1SAMPTR5FW2H-KEY .VW*  
00060 C160E5C5 D9E2C9D6 D54B01E2 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 *A-VERSION.JS *  
00080 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 * *W2*  
000A0 C860C4C9 D940E685 846B40F0 F740D596 A540F2F0 F1F840F1 F67AF2F1 7AF2F140 *H-DIR Wed, 07 Nov 2018 16:21:21 *  
000C0 C7D4E3 *GMT *
```

Diagnosing Virplex issues

1. Issue a trace command on the writer task to trace all QLNK lines. In this example the following commands would be issued:-

```
F SPTHOLT9,TRACE,L=SPVIRE00  
F SPTHOLT9,TRACE,L=SPVIRE01  
F SPTHOLT9,TRACE,L=SPVIRE99
```

2. Perform some Virplex activiving - upload some maintenance for example.

3. Issue a line display for each Virplex instance.

```
F SPTHOLTx,LINES
```

4. Take a Virtel SNAP of the 'Writer' task.

```
F SPTHOLT9,SNAP
```

5. Obtain the Virtel logs from the 'Writer' task and the one of the 'READER' tasks.

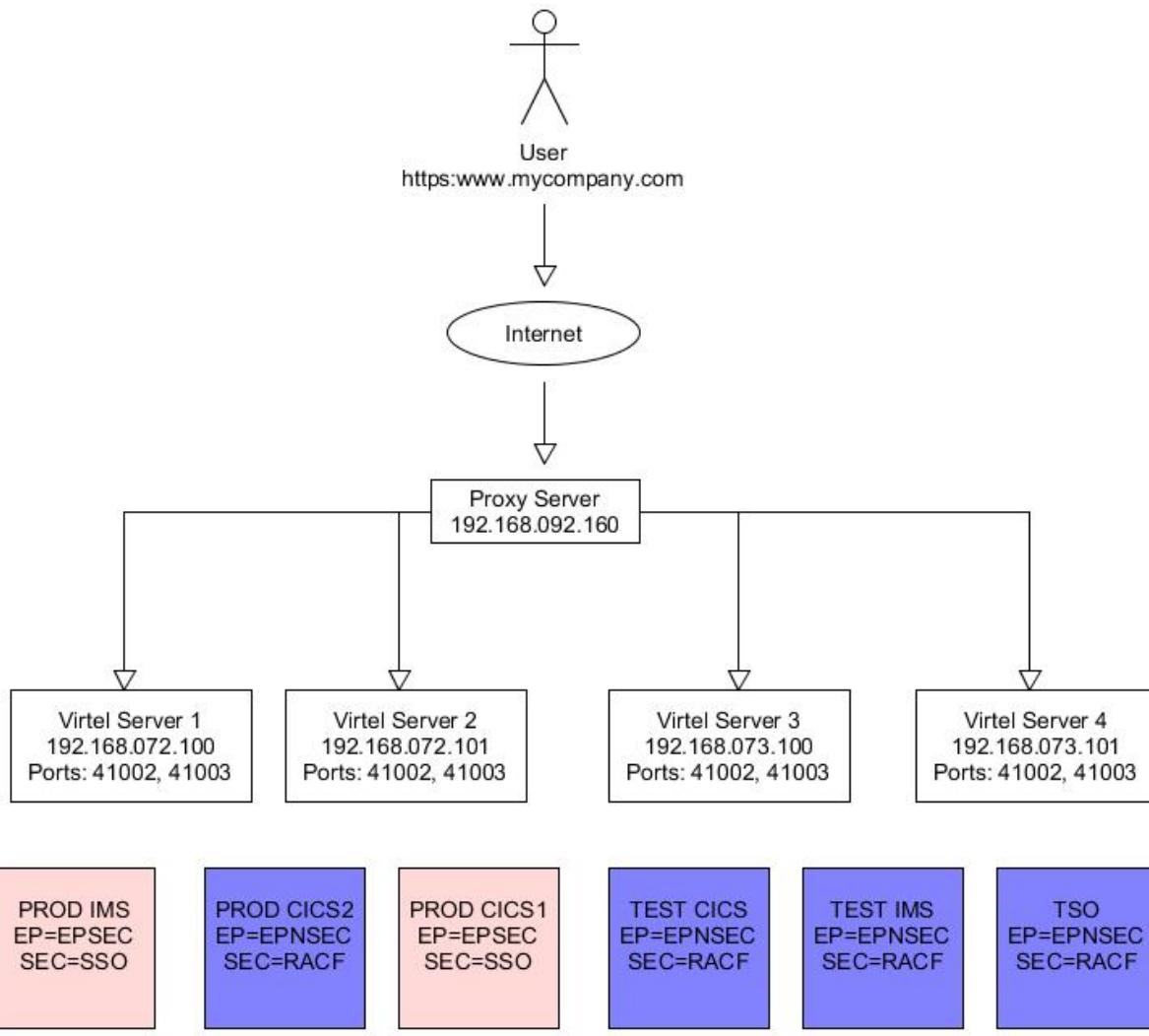
Open a problem with your local Syspertec Support Engineer and send them the output plus a description of the problem you experienced.

CHAPTER
FOURTEEN

PROTECTING BUSINESS ASSETS WITH VIRTEL RULES

14.1 Introduction

In this chapter we discuss how to protect access to business assets using Virtel rules. In this scenario we have two types of business assets or applications. The first type is the production assets which are protected by LDAP and use SSO to facilitate security and automatic logon without the user having to specify a userid and password. The other type of business asset is a standard application, like TSO or CICS, which requires the user to enter a userid and password when the application is accessed. LDAP and SSO are not discussed in this newsletter. There may be alternatives to this SSO setup but for our scenario we are assuming two types of asset – secure (requiring no application logon) and insecure (application logon required). The scenario utilizes a proxy server to load balance across the Virtel instances.



14.2 Virtel Setup

From a Virtel perspective it has been decided that secure assets are associated with port 41002, and non-secure through port 41003. Access to the assets should only be through the proxy server using a secure port, in our case the standard SSL port 443. Our goal is to protect the assets from being accessed internal, or external, using the assigned Virtel IP and port addresses. For example, users in the accounts department should be able to access PROD IMS/CICS. Other users, who work offsite or from home, and have access to the company VPN shouldn't be able to access PROD IMS/CICS. In this simplistic scenario, anyone could in theory access any one of the Virtel instances through their internal IP address – 192.168.07x.10x:4100x and attempt to logon. What is required is means to guarantee that access to any of the assets should only be via the proxy server and not through any other IP address.

14.2.1 Virtel Rules

Using Virtel Rules we can compare the calling IP address and if it doesn't match with the rule then the user will be re-directed to another Virtel entry point. To implement this protection we use the following ARBO statements for each line, 41002 and 41003:-

```

RULE ID=R0000100,
RULESET=C-HTTP,                                     < Our Line 41002
STATUS=ACTIVE,
DESC='HTTP access (Test calling address)', 
ENTRY=EPSEC,                                         < Associated Entry point
IPADDR=(EQUAL,192.168.092.160),                      < IP address of Proxy
NETMASK=255.255.255.255
*
RULE ID=R0000199,
RULESET=C-HTTP,                                     < Our Line 41002
STATUS=ACTIVE,
DESC='HTTP access (Calling IP address not valid)', 
ENTRY=EPREJECT
*
RULE ID=R0000200,
RULESET=R-HTTP,                                     < Our Line 41003
STATUS=ACTIVE,
DESC='HTTP access (Test calling address)', 
ENTRY=EPSEC,                                         < Associated Entry point
IPADDR=(EQUAL,192.168.092.160),                      < IP address of Proxy
NETMASK=255.255.255.255
*
RULE ID=R0000299,
RULESET=R-HTTP,                                     < Our Line 41003
STATUS=ACTIVE,
DESC='HTTP access (Calling IP address not valid)', 
ENTRY=EPREJECT
ENTRY ID=EPREJECT,
DESC='Entry point for unauthorized HTTP users',
TRANSACT=REJ,
TIMEOUT=0720,
ACTION=0,
EMUL=HTML,
SIGNON=VIR0020H,
MENU=VIR0021A,
EXTCOLOR=X
*
TRANSACT ID=REJ-00,
NAME=EPREJECT,
```

```

DESC="Default directory = entry point name",
APPL=CLI-DIR,                                     < User template directory
TYPE=4,
TERMINAL=CLLOC,
STARTUP=2,
SECURITY=0

```

So what is happening here? When a user attempts to establish a session Virtel will match the users calling IP address against the IPADDR in rule R0000x00. If it matches then they will be able to access the entry point defined in the rule – in this case EPSEC or EPNSEC. For line 41002 this Entry Point will contain a list of the W2H applications using SSO. For line 41003, using Entry Point EPNSEC, this will contain a list of W2H transactions which use standard RACF protection.

Now, if the calling IP addressed is not matched, the RULE fails and the next rule in the ruleset is tested, in this case rule R0000x99. This is a catch all rule. Any user falling into this rule will be directed to entry point EPREJECT. The Entry Point EPREJECT only has one transaction, its default transaction, and this will invoke the template page EPREJECT.HTM.

To protect the business assets the calling IP address can only be that of the proxy server - 192.168.092.160. Any other calling IP address will be rejected by the Virtel ruleset. By default, the ruleset associated with a line is normally the internal name of the line – C-HTTP for example. How the rejected session is handled depends on how Virtel has been setup.

14.2.2 Default Rule Template

In the following example, the default template EPREJECT.HTM, which is associated with the entry point EPREJECT, looks like this:-

```

<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd">
<!--VIRTEL start="{{{" end="}}}" -->
<html>
<script>
// customization for reject
window.location.replace("http://www.mycompany.com");
</script>
</html>

```

This template must exist in the CLI-DIR directory as this is where the Entry Point EPREJECT expects to find them. When the template is served it will display the companies “public” web site.

To upload the ARBO statements to your ARBO use the following JCL:-

```

/*
// SET LOAD=SPTHOLT.VIRT456.LOADLIB
// SET ARBO=SP000.SPVIREH0.ARBO1A
/*
//DELETE EXEC PGM=VIRCONF, PARM='LOAD, NOREPL', REGION=2M
//STEPLIB DD DSN=&LOAD, DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRARBO DD DSN=&ARBO, DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
DELETE TYPE=RULE, ID=R0000100 Delete rule
DELETE TYPE=RULE, ID=R0000199 Delete rule
DELETE TYPE=RULE, ID=R0000200 Delete rule
DELETE TYPE=RULE, ID=R0000299 Delete rule
DELETE TYPE=ENTRY, ID=EPREJECT Entry point

```

```
DELETE TYPE=TRANSACT, ID=REJ-00 Delete transaction
*
//CONFIG EXEC PGM=VIRCONF, PARM='LOAD,NOREPL', REGION=2M
//STEPLIB DD DSN=&LOAD, DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//VIRARBO DD DSN=&ARBO, DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
      RULE Definitions
/*
*/
```

**CHAPTER
FIFTEEN**

APPENDIX

15.1 Trademarks

SysperTec, the SysperTec logo, syspertec.com and VIRTEL are trademarks or registered trademarks of SysperTec Communication Group, registered in France and other countries.

IBM, VTAM, CICS, IMS, RACF, DB2, MVS, WebSphere, MQSeries, System z are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in United States and other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, PostScript and all Adobe-based trademarks are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries. Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service names of others.

INDEX

- Adding headers to the HTTP request
 - SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 171
- Administration, 28
 - Configuration Menu, 32
 - Screen Navigation, 33
 - Sub-Application Menu, 33
- Arbo definitions
 - Virplex, 197
- AT-TLS Secure Session, 159
 - Client certificates, 166
 - Installation, 161
 - Operations, 163
 - Problem determination, 164
 - Resources, 167
 - The Cipher suites, 166
- Batch Line
 - Lines, 63
 - Parameters, 63
 - Terminal Definitions, 64
- CICS Definitions
 - HTTP Inbound Line, 49
 - HTTP Outbound SMTP Line, 54
 - Native Gateway Line, 67
- Client certificates
 - AT-TLS Secure Session, 166
- Common Errors
 - SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 183
- Comparison table
 - Controlling LUNAMES, 133
- Configuration Menu
 - Administration, 32
- Connect to CICS and autostart transaction
 - Scripts Examples, 152
- Connect to CICS and navigation of user application
 - Scripts Examples, 153
- Connect to CICS and transmission of credentials
 - Scripts Examples, 152
- Connect to CICS VSE with ICCF signon and start of CEMT transaction
 - Scripts Examples, 153
- Connect to TSO and start of ISPF
- Scripts Examples, 153
- Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 148
 - Method of Operation, 151
 - Orders, 150
 - Script Programming Language, 149
 - System Variables, 149
 - Transmission and filter commands, 149
- Connection Modes, 97
 - Dynamic Terminal Pools, 101
 - Physical Terminal Pools, 100
 - Relay Mode, 98
 - Terminal Pool Selection, 111
 - Welcome Mode, 97
- Controlling LUNAMES, 113, 159
 - Comparison table, 133
 - LU Nailing by cookie, 130
 - UserData example using a constant, 118
 - UserData example using a LU Name, 126
 - Using an IP address, 131
 - Using an LU Name with no predefined terminal, 127
- Debugging and diagnosing
 - Virplex, 207
- Default Rule Template
 - Protecting business assets with Virtel Rules, 212
- Detail Display
 - Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 145
 - External Server Management Sub-Application, 156
 - Line Management Sub-Application, 37
 - Terminal Management Sub-Application, 91
 - Transactions, 137
 - Virtel Rules, 79
- Dynamic Terminal Pools
 - Connection Modes, 101
- Entry Point
 - IMS Connect, 57
- Entry Point Management Sub-Application
 - Detail Display, 145
 - Entry Points, 143
 - Menu Programs, 147

- Parameters, 145
- Security, 143
- Selection an Entry Point, 143
- Signon Programs, 147
- Transaction list Display, 145
- Entry Point Sub-Application
 - Summary Display, 144
- Entry Points, 142
 - Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 143
- Example Rules
 - Protecting business assets with Virtel Rules, 211
- External Server Management Sub-Application
 - Detail Display, 156
 - External Servers, 155
 - Parameters, 157
 - Security, 155
 - Summary Display, 155
- External Servers, 154
 - External Server Management Sub-Application, 155
- HTTP Inbound Line
 - CICS Definitions, 49
 - Lines, 44
 - Parameters, 44
 - Terminal Definitions, 45
 - VTAM Terminal Definitions, 49
- HTTP Outbound Line
 - Parameters, 51
- HTTP Outbound line
 - Lines, 51
- HTTP Outbound SMTP Line
 - Parameters, 52
 - Terminal Definitions, 54
 - VTAM Terminal Definitions, 54
- HTTP Outbound SMTP line
 - Lines, 52
- HTTP Outbound SMTP Line
 - CICS Definitions, 54
- IMS Connect
 - Entry Point, 57
 - Terminal Definitions, 56
 - Transactions, 58
- IMS Connect Line
 - Lines, 56
- Installation
 - AT-TLS Secure Session, 161
- Installation Overview
 - Virplex, 203
- JCL Examples
 - Virplex, 201
- Line Management Sub-Application
- Detail Display, 37
- Lines, 35
- Parameters, 37
- Summary Display, 35
- Line Overview Sub-Application
 - Lines, 42
- Line terminals
 - Native Gateway Line, 66
- Lines, 34
 - Batch Line, 63
 - HTTP Inbound Line, 44
 - HTTP Outbound line, 51
 - HTTP Outbound SMTP line, 52
 - IMS Connect Line, 56
 - Line Management Sub-Application, 35
 - Line Overview Sub-Application, 42
 - MQ Line, 61
 - Native TCP/IP Gateway line, 65
 - VIRPASS TCP line (VIRKIX), 69
 - VIRPASS TCP line (VIRNT), 71
- Load balancing with a Distributed VIPA
 - Running multiple instances of Virtel, 192
- Load balancing with Apache Proxy
 - Running multiple instances of Virtel, 193
- LU Nailing by cookie
 - Controlling LUNAMEs, 130
- Menu Programs
 - Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 147
- Message Format
 - Native Gateway Line, 68
- Message format
 - IMS Connect, 60
- Method of Operation
 - Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 151
- MQ Line
 - Lines, 61
 - MQ Line parameters, 61
 - Terminals Parameters, 62
- MQ Line parameters
 - MQ Line, 61
- Native Gateway Line
 - CICS Definitions, 67
 - Line terminals, 66
 - Message Format, 68
 - Native TCP/IP Gateway line parameters, 65
 - Relay Pool, 67
 - Terminal Parameters, 66
 - VTAM Terminal Definitions, 67
- Native TCP/IP Gateway line
 - Lines, 65
- Native TCP/IP Gateway line parameters
 - Native Gateway Line, 65

Navigation
 Terminal Management Sub-Application, 90

Operations
 AT-TLS Secure Session, 163

Orders
 Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 150

Parameters
 Batch Line, 63
 Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 145
 External Server Management Sub-Application, 157
 HTTP Inbound Line, 44
 HTTP Outbound Line, 51
 HTTP Outbound SMTP Line, 52
 Line Management Sub-Application, 37
 Terminal Management Sub-Application, 94
 Transactions, 139
 VIRPASS (VIRKIX) line, 69
 VIRPASS XM Line (VIRKIX), 72
 Virtel Rules, 79

Pattern Characters
 Terminal Management Sub-Application, 95

Physical Terminal Pools
 Connection Modes, 100

Problem determination
 AT-TLS Secure Session, 164

Protecting business assets with Virtel Rules, 208
 Default Rule Template, 212
 Example Rules, 211
 Virtel Setup, 211

QLNK communications
 Virplex, 206

RACF Passtickets
 SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 173

Related material
 SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 184

Relay Mode
 Connection Modes, 98

Relay Pool
 Native Gateway Line, 67

Resources
 AT-TLS Secure Session, 167

Running multiple instances of Virtel, 184
 Load balancing with a Distributed VIPA, 192
 Load balancing with Apache Proxy, 193
 Session Affinity with Apache, 193
 Session Affinity with DVIPA, 192
 SYSPLEX definitions, 186
 Virtel TCT Settings, 186
 Workload balancing, 188

Scenarios
 IMS Connect, 59

Screen Navigation
 Administration, 33

Script Programming Language
 Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 149

Scripts Examples, 152
 Connect to CICS and autostart transaction, 152
 Connect to CICS and navigation of user application, 153
 Connect to CICS and transmission of credentials, 152
 Connect to CICS VSE with ICCF signon and start of CEMT transaction, 153
 Connect to TSO and start of ISPF, 153
 Service Transactions, 154

Security
 Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 143
 External Server Management Sub-Application, 155
 Terminal Sub-Application, 89

Selection an Entry Point
 Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 143

Service Transactions
 Scripts Examples, 154

Session Affinity with Apache
 Running multiple instances of Virtel, 193

Session Affinity with DVIPA
 Running multiple instances of Virtel, 192

Signon Programs
 Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 147

SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 167
 Adding headers to the HTTP request, 171
 Common Errors, 183
 RACF Passtickets, 173
 Related material, 184
 Virtel Requirements, 177

Sub-Application Menu
 Administration, 33

Summary Display
 Entry Point Sub-Application, 144
 External Server Management Sub-Application, 155
 Line Management Sub-Application, 35
 Terminal Management Sub-Application, 89
 Transactions, 135
 Virtel Rules, 77

SYSPLEX definitions
 Running multiple instances of Virtel, 186

System Variables
 Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 149

TCPIP definitions
 Virplex, 202

- TCT definitions
 - Virplex, 196
- Terminal Definitions
 - Batch Line, 64
 - HTTP Inbound Line, 45
 - HTTP Outbound SMTP Line, 54
 - IMS Connect, 56
 - VIRPASS (VIRKIX) line, 70
 - VIRPASS XM Line (VIRKIX), 72
- Terminal Management Sub-Application
 - Detail Display, 91
 - Navigation, 90
 - Parameters, 94
 - Pattern Characters, 95
 - Summary Display, 89
 - Terminals, 89
- Terminal Parameters
 - Native Gateway Line, 66
- Terminal Pool Selection
 - Connection Modes, 111
- Terminal Sub-Application
 - Security, 89
- Terminals, 88
 - Terminal Management Sub-Application, 89
- Terminals Parameters
 - MQ Line, 62
- The Cipher suites
 - AT-TLS Secure Session, 166
- Transaction list Display
 - Entry Point Management Sub-Application, 145
- Transactions, 134, 148
 - Detail Display, 137
 - IMS Connect, 58
 - Parameters, 139
 - Summary Display, 135
- Transmission and filter commands
 - Connection / Disconnection Scripts, 149
- UserData example using a constant
 - Controlling LUNAMES, 118
- UserData example using a LU Name
 - Controlling LUNAMES, 126
- Using an IP address
 - Controlling LUNAMES, 131
- Using an LU Name with no predefined terminal
 - Controlling LUNAMES, 127
- Validation
 - Virplex, 205
- VIRPASS (VIRKIX) line
 - Parameters, 69
 - Terminal Definitions, 70
- VIRPASS TCP line (VIRKIX)
 - Lines, 69
- VIRPASS TCP line (VIRNT)
 - Lines, 71
- VIRPASS XM Line (VIRKIX)
 - Parameters, 72
 - Terminal Definitions, 72
- VIRPLEX, 194
- Virplex
 - Arbo definitions, 197
 - Debugging and diagnosing, 207
 - Installation Overview, 203
 - JCL Examples, 201
 - QLNK communications, 206
 - TCPIP definitions, 202
 - TCT definitions, 196
 - Validation, 205
 - VTAM definitions, 202
- Virtel Requirements
 - SSO, Passtickets and Proxy Servers, 177
- Virtel Rules
 - Detail Display, 79
 - Parameters, 79
 - Summary Display, 77
- Virtel Setup
 - Protecting business assets with Virtel Rules, 211
- Virtel TCT Settings
 - Running multiple instances of Virtel, 186
- VTAM definitions
 - Virplex, 202
- VTAM Terminal Definitions
 - HTTP Inbound Line, 49
 - HTTP Outbound SMTP Line, 54
 - Native Gateway Line, 67
- Welcome Mode
 - Connection Modes, 97
- Workload balancing
 - Running multiple instances of Virtel, 188
- IMS Connect
 - Message format, 60
 - Scenarios, 59